

FORD **TOURNEO CUSTOM** / **TRANSIT CUSTOM** Owner's Manual



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2023

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3964en-202307-20231024102400

Table of Contents

Introduction

About This Publication	21
Using This Publication	21
Warnings and Notes Used in This Publication	21
Special Notices - Turkey	22

Data Privacy

Data Privacy	24
Service Data	25
Event Data	25
Settings Data	26
Connected Vehicle Data	26
Mobile Device Data	26
Emergency Call System Data	27

Environment

Protecting the Environment	28
----------------------------------	----

Visual Search

Steering Wheel	29
Instrument Panel - Automatic Transmission, LHD	30
Instrument Panel - Automatic Transmission, RHD	31
Instrument Panel - Manual Transmission, LHD	32
Instrument Panel - Manual Transmission, RHD	33

Child Safety

Child Safety Precautions	34
Child Restraint Anchor Points	35
Child Restraints	48
Booster Seats	57
Child Safety Locks - Excluding: Van	58

Seatbelts

Seatbelt Precautions	59
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts	59

Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy	59
Adjusting the Seatbelt Height	60
Seatbelt Reminder	60
Seatbelts – Troubleshooting	61

Airbags

How Do the Front Airbags Work	62
How Do the Side Airbags Work	62
How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work	63
Airbag Precautions	63
Passenger Airbag Indicators	64
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off	64
Airbags – Troubleshooting	65

Pedestrian Alert System

What Is the Pedestrian Alert System	66
Pedestrian Alert System – Troubleshooting	66

eCall

What Is eCall	67
How Does eCall Work	67
Emergency Call Requirements	67
Emergency Call Limitations	67
Manually Making an Emergency Call	67
Emergency Call Indicators	68
Changing the Backup Battery	69
eCall – Troubleshooting	69

Keys and Remote Controls

Remote Control Limitations	70
Removing the Key Blade	70
Locating Your Vehicle	70
Changing the Remote Control Battery	70

Table of Contents

Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control	72
Programming the Remote Control	72
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting	72

Doors and Locks

Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle	74
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle	76
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function	77
Autounlock	78
Autolock	78
Mislock	79
Autorelock	79
Door Lock Indicators	79
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings	79
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting	79

Sliding Door - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Sliding Door/ Power Sliding Door

Sliding Door Precautions	81
Opening the Sliding Door	81
Closing the Sliding Door	83
Stopping the Sliding Door Movement	84
Resetting the Power Sliding Door	84
Sliding Door – Troubleshooting	85

Sliding Door - Vehicles With: Manual Sliding Door

Sliding Door Precautions	87
Opening the Sliding Door	87
Closing the Sliding Door	88

Keyless Entry

What Is Keyless Entry	89
-----------------------------	----

Keyless Entry Limitations	89
Keyless Entry Settings	89
Using Keyless Entry	89
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting	90

Liftgate

Liftgate Precautions	91
Opening the Liftgate	91
Closing the Liftgate	92
Liftgate – Troubleshooting	93

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System	94
Anti-Theft Alarm System	94
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings	95
Security – Troubleshooting	96

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel	98
Locking the Steering Wheel - Manual Transmission, RHD, Vehicles Without: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet	98
Locking the Steering Wheel - Manual Transmission, RHD, Vehicles With: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet	99
Heated Steering Wheel	99
Using the Steering Wheel as a Table	99

Wipers and Washers

Wipers	103
Autowipers	103
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off	104
Reverse Wipe	104
Checking the Wiper Blades	105
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades	105
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades	105
Washers	106
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting	107

Table of Contents

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lighting Control	108
Headlamps	108
Headlamps – Troubleshooting	109
Autolamps	110
Exterior Lamps	110
Automatic High Beam Control	112
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting	114
Glare Free High Beam Control	114
Glare Free High Beam Control – Troubleshooting	117
Adaptive Front Lighting	117
Adaptive Front Lighting – Troubleshooting	119

Interior Lighting

Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off	120
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off	120
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off - Bus	120
Interior Lamp Function	121
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness	121
Ambient Lighting	121
Cargo Lamps	121

Windows

Opening and Closing the Windows - Vehicles With: One-Touch Open and Close Driver Window	123
Opening and Closing the Windows - Vehicles With: One-Touch Open and Close Front Windows	123
Global Opening and Closing	124
Window Bounce-Back	125
Opening and Closing the Rear Quarter Windows	126

Interior Mirror

Interior Mirror Precautions	127
Manually Dimming the Interior Mirror - Vehicles With: Interior Mirror	127
Digital Interior Mirror - Vehicles With: Interior Mirror With Camera Display	127

Exterior Mirrors

Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors	130
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Auto Fold Exterior Mirrors	130
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Manual Fold Exterior Mirrors	131
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Power Fold Exterior Mirrors	131

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster Overview - Diesel	132
Instrument Cluster Overview - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	133
Instrument Cluster Overview - Battery Electric Vehicle	134
Tachometer - Diesel	134
Power Gauge - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	135
Power Gauge - Battery Electric Vehicle	135
Speedometer	135
Fuel Gauge	135
Vehicle Range Display	136
High Voltage Battery Temperature Gauge	136
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge	136
Electric Motor Temperature Gauge	136
What Is the Information Bar	137
What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps	137
Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps	137

Table of Contents

What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators	139
Instrument Cluster Indicators	139

Instrument Cluster Display

Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls	142
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu	142
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display	143
Fuel Economy Display - Diesel	143
Fuel Economy Display - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	143
EV Coach	144
Electric Economy	144
Battery Charge	145
Brake Coach	145
Trip Summary	145
Vehicle Charging Status	145

Personalized Settings

Changing the Language	146
Changing the Measurement Unit	146
Changing the Temperature Unit	146
Changing the Tire Pressure Unit	146

Trip Computer

Accessing the Trip Computer	147
Resetting the Trip Computer	147
Trip Data	147

Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

What Is Remote Start	148
Remote Start Limitations - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	148
Remote Start Limitations - Battery Electric Vehicle	148
Enabling Remote Start	148

Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	148
---	-----

Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle	149
---	-----

Remote Start Settings - Vehicles Without: Heated Steering Wheel	149
---	-----

Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: Heated Steering Wheel	150
--	-----

Climate Control - Vehicles Without: Air Conditioning

Switching Climate Control On and Off	151
--	-----

Switching Recirculated Air On and Off	151
---	-----

Switching Defrost On and Off	151
------------------------------------	-----

Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Rear Window	151
---	-----

Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Rear Window	151
--	-----

Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off	152
---	-----

Setting the Blower Motor Speed	152
--------------------------------------	-----

Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Rear Window	152
--	-----

Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Rear Window	152
---	-----

Setting the Temperature	152
-------------------------------	-----

Directing the Flow of Air	153
---------------------------------	-----

Climate Control Hints	153
-----------------------------	-----

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)

Switching Climate Control On and Off	155
--	-----

Switching Recirculated Air On and Off	155
---	-----

Table of Contents

Switching Air Conditioning On and Off	155	Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Rear Window	162
Switching Defrost On and Off	155	Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Rear Window	163
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Rear Window	155	Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off	163
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Rear Window	156	Switching the Electric Heater On and Off	163
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off	156	Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off	163
Switching the Electric Heater On and Off	156	Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off	163
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off	156	Setting the Blower Motor Speed	164
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off	156	Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Rear Window	164
Setting the Blower Motor Speed	157	Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Rear Window	164
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Rear Window	157	Setting the Temperature	164
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Rear Window	157	Directing the Flow of Air	164
Setting the Temperature	157	Auto Mode	165
Directing the Flow of Air	157	Climate Control Hints - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	165
Auto Mode	158	Climate Control Hints - Battery Electric Vehicle	166
Driver Focused Mode	159		
Climate Control Hints - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	159		
Climate Control Hints - Battery Electric Vehicle	160		

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

Switching Climate Control On and Off	162
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off	162
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off	162
Switching Defrost On and Off	162

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control

Switching Climate Control On and Off	168
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off	168
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off	168
Switching Defrost On and Off	168
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Rear Window	168
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off	168

Table of Contents

Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off	169
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off	169
Setting the Blower Motor Speed	169
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Rear Window	169
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Rear Window	170
Setting the Temperature	170
Directing the Flow of Air	170
Climate Control Hints	170

Rear Passenger Climate Control

Identifying the Rear Passenger Climate Control Unit - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control	172
Identifying the Rear Passenger Climate Control Unit - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control	172
Switching the Rear Passenger Climate Controls On and Off	172
Setting the Blower Motor Speed	172
Setting the Temperature	173
Directing the Flow of Air	173
Rear Auto Mode	173
Rear Passenger Climate Control Indicators	174

Auxiliary Heater - LHD

What Is the Auxiliary Heater	175
Auxiliary Heater Precautions	175
Switching the Auxiliary Heater On and Off	175
Auxiliary Heater Indicators	175

Parking Heater - LHD

What Is the Parking Heater	176
Parking Heater Precautions	176
Parking Heater Limitations	176

Parking Heater Settings	176
Switching the Parking Heater On and Off With the Remote Control	177
Parking Heater Remote Control Indicators	178
Changing the Parking Heater Remote Control Battery	178
Parking Heater – Troubleshooting	179

Interior Air Quality

What Is the Cabin Air Filter	180
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter	180

Front Seats

Front Seat Precautions	182
Sitting in the Correct Position	182
Manual Seats	183
Power Seats	187
Heated Seats	191

Rear Seats

Manual Seats	192
Heated Seats	199
Rear Seats Videos - Bus	200

Rear Occupant Alert System

What is the Rear Occupant Alert System	201
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work	201
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions	201
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations	201
Rear Occupant Alert System Settings	202
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators	202
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings	203

Table of Contents

USB Ports

Locating the USB Ports	204
Playing Media Using the USB Port	204
Charging a Device	204

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 220-240V Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet	206
Power Outlet Precautions	206
Power Outlet Limitations	206
Locating the Power Outlets	206
Power Outlet Indicators	206

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 12V Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet	208
Power Outlet Precautions	208
Locating the Power Outlets	208

Onboard Generator - Vehicles With: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet

What Is the Onboard Generator	209
Onboard Generator Precautions	209
Locating the Outlets	209
Onboard Generator Indicators	210
Switching the Rear Outlet On and Off	210
Setting the High Voltage Battery Reserve Limit	211
What Is Generator Mode	211
Switching Generator Mode On and Off	211
Resetting Ground Fault Detection	211
Onboard Generator – Troubleshooting	212

Wireless Accessory Charger

What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger	214
--	-----

Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions	214
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger	214
Charging a Wireless Device	215

Storage

Cup Holders	216
Overhead Storage	216
Under Seat Storage	216

Starting and Stopping the Engine - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions	218
Push Button Ignition Switch	218
Starting the Engine	219
Stopping the Engine	220
Automatic Engine Stop	221
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position	222
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting	222

Starting and Powering Off - Battery Electric Vehicle

Starting and Powering Off Precautions	226
Starting the Vehicle	226
Powering Off	226
Restarting the Vehicle After Powering Off	226
Vehicle Power Down Timer	227
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position	227
Starting and Powering Off – Troubleshooting	228

Table of Contents

Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

What is a Hybrid Electric Vehicle	229
How Does a Hybrid Electric Vehicle Work	229
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Driving Characteristics	229
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Indicators	229
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Troubleshooting	230

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

What Is Auto-Start-Stop	231
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions	231
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off	231
Stopping the Engine	231
Restarting the Engine	231
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators	232
Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning	232
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting	232

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

What Is Auto-Start-Stop	234
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions	234
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off	234
Stopping the Engine	234
Restarting the Engine	234
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators	235
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting	235

Fuel and Refueling - Diesel/ Gasoline

Fuel and Refueling Precautions	237
Fuel Quality	238

Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel	238
Running Out of Fuel	239
Refueling	240
Fuel Tank Capacity	245
Fuel Consumption Regulations	245
Fuel Consumption Figures – Diesel	245
Fuel Consumption Figures – Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	246
Fuel and Refueling Audible Warnings	247
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting	247

Diesel Particulate Filter

What Is the Diesel Particulate Filter	249
How Does the Diesel Particulate Filter Work	249
Diesel Particulate Filter Precautions	249
Diesel Particulate Filter Requirements	250
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration	250
Diesel Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting	252

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

What Is the Selective Catalytic Reduction System	253
How Does the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Work	253
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Precautions	253
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Requirements	253
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Guidelines	253
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank	254
Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Level	256

Table of Contents

Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Status	256
Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Consumption	256
AdBlue® Capacity and Specification	256
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Troubleshooting	257

Catalytic Converter

What Is the Catalytic Converter	260
Catalytic Converter Precautions	260
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting	260

Gasoline Particulate Filter

What Is the Gasoline Particulate Filter	261
How Does the Gasoline Particulate Filter Work	261
Gasoline Particulate Filter Precautions	261
Gasoline Particulate Filter Requirements	261
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting	261

High Voltage Battery - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

What Is the High Voltage Battery	263
High Voltage Battery Precautions	263
Preserving Your High Voltage Battery - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	263
Preserving Your High Voltage Battery - Battery Electric Vehicle	264
Recycling and Disposing of the High Voltage Battery	264
Energy Consumption Regulations - Battery Electric Vehicle	265
Energy Consumption Figures - Battery Electric Vehicle	265

High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting	265
--	-----

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Charging Equipment Precautions	266
Charging Equipment Overview	267
Charging Equipment Indicators	270
Locating the Charge Port	273
Charge Port Indicators	274
AC Charging	275
DC Charging - Battery Electric Vehicle	282
Charge Coupler Manual Release - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	285
Charge Coupler Manual Release - Battery Electric Vehicle	286
Charging Settings - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	287
Charging Settings - Battery Electric Vehicle	292
Using Your Vehicle App and Charging	297
Charging Equipment Identification Symbols	297
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting	299

Manual Transmission

Manual Transmission Precautions	301
Shifting Into Reverse	301
Manual Transmission Shift Indicators	301
Checking the Clutch Fluid Level	301
Clutch Fluid Specification	301
Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting	302

Automatic Transmission

Automatic Transmission Precautions	303
--	-----

Table of Contents

Automatic Transmission Positions	303
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear - Diesel	304
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	305
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators - Diesel	305
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	305
Automatic Transmission Shift Indicators	306
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P)	306
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings	306
Manually Shifting Gears - Diesel	307
Temporary Neutral Mode	308
Automatic Return to Park (P)	308
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting	309

All-Wheel Drive

How Does All-Wheel Drive Work	310
All-Wheel Drive Precautions	310
All-Wheel Drive Limitations	310
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting	310

Brakes

Brake Precautions	311
Anti-Lock Braking System	311
Brake Over Accelerator	311
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir	311
Checking the Brake Fluid	311
Brake Fluid Specification	312
Brakes – Troubleshooting	312

Electric Parking Brake

What Is the Electric Parking Brake	314
--	-----

Applying the Electric Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission	314
Applying the Electric Parking Brake - Manual Transmission	314
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency	314
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake	315
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake	315
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning	315
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge	315
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting	315

Reverse Brake Assist

What Is Reverse Brake Assist	317
How Does Reverse Brake Assist Work	317
Reverse Brake Assist Precautions	317
Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off	318
Overriding Reverse Brake Assist	318
Reverse Brake Assist Indicators	318
Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting	319

Hill Start Assist

What Is Hill Start Assist	321
How Does Hill Start Assist Work	321
Hill Start Assist Precautions	321
Switching Hill Start Assist On and Off	321
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting	321

Auto Hold

How Does Auto Hold Work	322
Switching Auto Hold On and Off - Automatic Transmission	322

Table of Contents

Switching Auto Hold On and Off - Manual Transmission	322
Using Auto Hold	322
Auto Hold Indicators	323

Traction Control

What Is Traction Control	324
How Does Traction Control Work	324
Switching Traction Control On and Off	324
Traction Control Indicator	324
Traction Control – Troubleshooting	324

Stability Control

What Is Stability Control	325
How Does Stability Control Work	325
Switching Stability Control On and Off	325
Stability Control Indicator	325

Parking Aids

Parking Aid Precautions	326
Switching Parking Aid On and Off	326
Rear Parking Aid	327
Front Parking Aid	327
Side Parking Aid	328
Parking Aid Indicators	330
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting	330

Rear View Camera

What Is the Rear View Camera	332
Rear View Camera Precautions	332
Rear View Camera Limitations	332
Locating the Rear View Camera	332
Rear View Camera Guide Lines	333
Rear View Camera Settings	333

180 Degree Camera

What Is the 180 Degree Camera	335
-------------------------------------	-----

How Does the 180 Degree Camera Work	335
180 Degree Camera Precautions	335
Switching the 180 Degree Camera On and Off	335

360 Degree Camera

How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work	336
360 Degree Camera Precautions	336
360 Degree Camera Limitations	336
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras	336
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines	336
Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off	337
Switching the 360 Degree Camera View	338

Active Park Assist

What Is Active Park Assist	339
Active Park Assist Precautions	339
Switching Active Park Assist On and Off	339
Entering a Parking Space	339
Exiting a Parking Space	340
Active Park Assist – Troubleshooting	340

Delivery Assist

What Is Delivery Assist?	342
How Does Delivery Assist Work?	342
Delivery Assist Precautions	342
Delivery Assist Limitations	342
Switching Delivery Assist On and Off	342
Delivery Assist Settings	342
Delivery Assist Indicators	342
Delivery Assist – Troubleshooting	343

Cruise Control

What Is Cruise Control	344
------------------------------	-----

Table of Contents

Switching Cruise Control On and Off	344
Setting the Cruise Control Speed	344
Canceling the Set Speed	345
Resuming the Set Speed	345
Cruise Control Indicators	345

Adaptive Cruise Control

How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	346
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go	346
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions	346
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations	347
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off	349
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	349
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go	349
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	350
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go	350
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	351
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go	352
Canceling the Set Speed	353
Resuming the Set Speed	353
Overriding the Set Speed	354
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators	354
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control	354

Predictive Speed Assist	354
Predictive Speed Assist – Troubleshooting	357
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting	357

Drive Mode Control

What Is Drive Mode Control	359
Selecting a Drive Mode	359
Drive Modes - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	359
Drive Modes - Battery Electric Vehicle	359
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	360
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes – Troubleshooting - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	362
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting - Diesel, Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	363

One Pedal Drive - Battery Electric Vehicle

What is One Pedal Drive	364
One Pedal Drive Precautions	364
One Pedal Drive Limitations	364
Switching One Pedal Drive On and Off	364
One Pedal Drive Indicators	364

Local Hazard Information

What Is Local Hazard Information	365
Local Hazard Information Precautions	365
Local Hazard Information Indicators	365
Enabling Local Hazard Information	365
Checking Local Hazard Information Status	365

Table of Contents

Speed Limiter

How Does the Speed Limiter Work	366
Speed Limiter Precautions	366
Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off	366
Setting the Speed Limit	366
Changing the Set Speed Limit	366
Canceling the Set Speed Limit	366
Resuming the Set Speed Limit	366
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit	367
Speed Limiter Indicators	367
Speed Limiter Audible Warnings	367

Intelligent Speed Limiter

What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter	368
How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work	368
Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions	368
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off	368
Setting the Speed Limit	369
Changing the Set Speed Limit	369
Canceling the Set Speed Limit	369
Resuming the Set Speed Limit	369
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit	369
Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators	369
Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings	370
Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter	370
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting	370

Lane Keeping System

What Is the Lane Keeping System	371
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work	371
Lane Keeping System Precautions	371

Lane Keeping System Limitations	371
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off	372
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode	372
Lane Keeping System Settings	372
Aid Mode	372
Alert and Aid Mode	373
Lane Keeping System Indicators	373
Blind Spot Assist	374
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage	376
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting	379

Blind Spot Information System

What Is Blind Spot Information System	380
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work	380
Blind Spot Information System Precautions	380
Blind Spot Information System Limitations	380
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Automatic Transmission	381
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Manual Transmission	381
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off	381
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors	381
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage	382
Blind Spot Information System Indicators	383
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting	383

Exit Warning

What is Exit Warning	385
----------------------------	-----

Table of Contents

How Does Exit Warning Work	385
Exit Warning Precautions	385
Exit Warning Limitations	385
Exit Warning Indicators	386
Switching Exit Warning On and Off	386
Locating the Exit Warning Sensors	386
Exit Warning – Troubleshooting	387

Cross Traffic Alert

What Is Cross Traffic Alert	388
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work	388
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions	388
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations	389
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off	389
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors	389
Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage	390
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators	390
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting	391

Pre-Collision Assist

What Is Pre-Collision Assist	392
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work	392
How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work - Vehicles With: Cruise Control	393
How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	393
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions	393
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations	394
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles With: Cruise Control	394
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	394
Distance Indication	395
Forward Collision Warning	396

Automatic Emergency Braking	396
Evasive Steering Assist	396
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting	397

Driver Alert

What Is Driver Alert	399
How Does Driver Alert Work	399
Driver Alert Precautions	399
Switching Driver Alert On and Off	399
Resetting Driver Alert	399
Driver Alert Indicators	400
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting	400

Traffic Sign Recognition

What Is Traffic Sign Recognition	401
How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work	401
Traffic Sign Recognition Precautions	401
Traffic Sign Recognition Limitations	401
Traffic Sign Recognition Indicators	402
Traffic Sign Recognition Settings	403
Traffic Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting	403

Wrong Way Alert

What Is Wrong Way Alert	404
How Does Wrong Way Alert Work	404
Wrong Way Alert Precautions	404
Wrong Way Alert Limitations	404
Switching Wrong Way Alert On and Off	404
Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting	405

Load Carrying

Load Carrying Precautions	406
Roof Rack - Vehicles Without: Integrated Roof Rack	406

Table of Contents

Roof Rack - Vehicles With: Integrated Roof Rack	407	Breaking-In - Battery Electric Vehicle	422
Rear Cargo Area		Driving Economically	422
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Points	409	Driving in Special Conditions	423
Connecting a Trailer		Driving Through Shallow Water - Diesel	424
Tow Ball	411	Driving Through Shallow Water - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	424
Connecting a Trailer	414	Electric Vehicle	425
Trailer Lighting Check	414	Floor Mats	425
Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting	415	Crash and Breakdown Information	
Towing a Trailer - Vehicles Without: Trailer Tow		Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off	427
Towing a Trailer Precautions	416	Jump Starting the Vehicle	427
Towing a Trailer - Vehicles With: Trailer Tow		Post-Crash Alert System	429
Towing a Trailer Precautions	417	Post-Collision Braking	430
Towing a Trailer Limitations - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	417	Automatic Crash Shutoff	430
Towing a Trailer Limitations - Battery Electric Vehicle	417	Recovery Towing	430
Loading Your Trailer	418	Transporting the Vehicle	432
Trailer Towing Hints	418	Fail-Safe Cooling - 2.0L EcoBlue	432
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft	418	Towing Your Vehicle - Diesel, Manual Transmission	
Towing Weights and Dimensions	418	Towing Your Vehicle Precautions	434
Trailer Sway Control		Emergency Towing	434
How Does Trailer Sway Control Work	421	Towing Your Vehicle - Diesel, Automatic Transmission	
Trailer Sway Control Precautions	421	Towing Your Vehicle Precautions	435
Driving Hints		Towing Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	
Cold Weather Precautions	422	Towing Your Vehicle Precautions	436
Driving on Snow and Ice	422	Emergency Towing - Battery Electric Vehicle	436
Breaking-In - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	422	Emergency Towing - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	436

Table of Contents

Towing Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting	437
---	-----

Emergency Equipment

Storing a First Aid Kit	438
Storing a Warning Triangle	438

Fuses

Fuse Precautions	439
Under Hood Fuse Box	439
Interior Fuse Box	444
High Current Fuse Box	447
Identifying Fuse Types	447
Fuses – Troubleshooting	447

Maintenance

Maintenance Precautions	448
Opening and Closing the Hood - LHD	448
Opening and Closing the Hood - RHD	449
Under Hood Overview - Diesel, LHD	452
Under Hood Overview - Diesel, RHD	453
Under Hood Overview - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), LHD	454
Under Hood Overview - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), RHD	455
Under Hood Overview - Battery Electric Vehicle, LHD	456
Under Hood Overview - Battery Electric Vehicle, RHD	457
Engine Oil - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	458
Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap - Diesel	460
Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel	461
Coolant	461
12V Battery	465
12V Battery – Troubleshooting	466
Exterior Bulbs	468

Fuel Filter Service Indicator Check - Diesel	477
--	-----

Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior	478
Cleaning the Interior	480
Repairing Minor Paint Damage	482
Waxing Your Vehicle	482

Storing Your Vehicle

Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	483
Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage - Battery Electric Vehicle	484
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	485
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage - Battery Electric Vehicle	486

Wheel and Tire Information

Using Summer Tires	487
Using Winter Tires	487
Using Snow Chains - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	487
Using Snow Chains - Battery Electric Vehicle	488

Tire Care

Checking the Tire Pressures	490
Inflating the Tires	490
Tire Pressure Specifications - Diesel, Bus	490
Tire Pressure Specifications - Diesel, Van	492
Tire Pressure Specifications - Diesel, Camper	496
Tire Pressure Specifications - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), Bus	498

Table of Contents

Tire Pressure Specifications - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), Van	500
Tire Pressure Specifications - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), Camper	502
Tire Pressure Specifications - Battery Electric Vehicle, Bus	505
Tire Pressure Specifications - Battery Electric Vehicle, Van	507
Tire Pressure Specifications - Battery Electric Vehicle, Camper	510
Inspecting the Tire for Damage	512
Tire Rotation	512

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	514
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Precautions	514
Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	514
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components	514
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	515

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System	520
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions	520
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations	520
Viewing the Tire Pressures	520
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System	520
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting	521

Changing a Road Wheel

Changing a Flat Tire	523
Wheel Nuts	530

Capacities and Specifications

Engine Specifications - Diesel	532
Engine Specifications - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	533
Suspension Specifications	534
Vehicle Dimensions	536
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - Diesel	537
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	537
Cooling System Capacity and Specification	538
Fuel Tank Capacity - Diesel	538
Fuel Tank Capacity - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	539
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - Diesel	539
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	540
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - Battery Electric Vehicle	540
Washer Fluid Specification	541
AdBlue® Capacity and Specification - Diesel	541
Manual Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification	542
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission	542
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission	543
Brake Fluid Specification	543
Rear Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification - AWD	544

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number	545
Vehicle Identification Plate	545

Table of Contents

Connected Vehicle

What Is a Connected Vehicle – Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	547
What Is a Connected Vehicle – Battery Electric Vehicle	547
Connected Vehicle Requirements	547
Connected Vehicle Limitations	547
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network	547
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network	548
Connected Vehicle Settings	548
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting	548

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot	550
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password	550
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting	551

Audio System

Audio System Precautions	552
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off	552
Selecting the Audio Source	552
Playing or Pausing the Audio Source	552
Adjusting the Volume	552
Setting a Memory Preset	552
Muting the Audio	552
Scrolling Through Menu Items	553
Selecting a Menu Item	553
Adjusting the Sound Settings	553
Setting the Clock and Date	553
FM Radio	553
Switching the Display On and Off	554
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio	554

Center Display Overview

Center Display Precautions	555
Center Display Limitations	555
Status Bar	555
Information On Demand Screen	556
Rebooting the Center Display	556

Voice Interaction

What is Voice Interaction	557
Setting the Wake Word	557
Beginning a Voice Interaction	557
Voice Interaction Examples	557

Alexa Built-In

What is Alexa Built-In	559
Alexa Built-In Requirements	559
Signing In to Your Account	559
Using Alexa Built-In	559
Alexa Built-In Settings	559

Phone

Phone Precautions	561
Connecting Your Phone	561
Phone Menu	561
Making and Receiving a Phone Call	563
Switching Text Message Notification On and Off	564

Bluetooth®

Connecting a Bluetooth® Device	565
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®	565

Apps

App Precautions	566
App Requirements	566
Enabling Apps on an iOS Device	566
Enabling Apps on an Android Device	566
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off	566

Table of Contents

Switching Android Auto On and Off	567
---	-----

Navigation

Accessing Navigation	568
Navigation Map Updates	568
Adjusting the Map	568
Setting a Destination	568
Waypoints	569
Route Guidance	569
Trailer Towing Navigation	569

Driver Identification

How Does Driver Identification Work	571
Signing In as a Driver	571
Driver Identification – Troubleshooting	571

Vehicle Software Updates

Vehicle Software Updates	572
Software Update Settings	572
Software Update Indicators	573

Vehicle System Reset

Performing a System Reset	574
---------------------------------	-----

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Authorized Dealer Directory	575
-----------------------------------	-----

Service Intervals - Turkey

Service Intervals	581
-------------------------	-----

Customer Information

Rollover Warning	582
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment	582
Declaration of Conformity	582
REACH	582

Radio Frequency Certification Labels	583
Replacement Parts Recommendation	621
Mobile Communications Equipment	622
eCall User Information	623
End User License Agreement	626
Converting or Modifying Your Vehicle	651

Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility	652
-------------------------------------	-----

Introduction

ABOUT THIS PUBLICATION



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this publication. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

Note: Use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

Note: Pass on all printed owner's information when selling this vehicle.

Features and Options

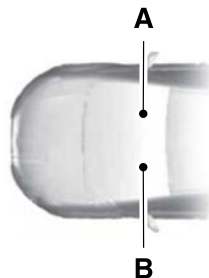
Note: This publication describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It could describe options that are not available on the vehicle you have purchased.

Illustrations

Note: Some of the illustrations in this publication could show features as used in different models, so could appear different to you on your vehicle.

Location of Components

This publication could qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



A Right-hand side.

B Left-hand side.

USING THIS PUBLICATION

To quickly locate information about your vehicle, use the word search within the Owner's Manual application.

WARNINGS AND NOTES USED IN THIS PUBLICATION

Warnings Used in This Publication

We include warnings in this publication to make you aware of possible danger. You can keep yourself and others safe if you follow the instructions highlighted by the warning symbol.

Notes Used in This Publication

We include notes to give you more information to those instructions that require further explanation.

Introduction

SPECIAL NOTICES - TURKEY

Consumer* Information

*Consumer: Real or legal person acting for commercial or non-occupational purposes. If a driver drives his vehicle for commercial or occupational purposes, whether on full-time or part-time basis, he may not be evaluated as a "Consumer" under the legislation.

In the event a vehicle is purchased subject to Consumer Warranty terms but driven for commercial or occupational purposes thereafter or if purchased subject to Commercial Warranty Terms and then driven out of commercial or occupational purposes, COMMERCIAL WARRANTY TERMS shall apply under general statutory provisions. This shall bind Driver and other persons who take over such vehicle. Please see Ford Warranty Terms for detailed information.

Optional rights granted to consumers pursuant to Consumer Protection Law no. 6502 and Regulation for Introductory and Owner Manuals published at the Official Gazette dated 13.06.2014 and no. 29029 and information related to authorities to which consumers may file complaints and objections are as follows:

I. Optional Rights of Consumers

1) If merchandise is understood to be defective consumer may exercise one of following rights;

- a) Reneging on contract by notifying that he is ready to return sold item,
- b) Retaining sold item and asking discount from sales price pro rata to defect,
- c) In case excessive expense is not required, asking free of charge repair of sold item, all expenses at seller's account,
- d) If possible, asking replacement of sold item with an equivalent free of defects,

you can use one of these rights. Seller shall be liable to fulfill such request preferred by consumer.

2) Rights of free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects may also be exercised against manufacturer or importer. Seller, manufacturer and importer shall be severally liable for fulfillment of rights set out in this clause. Manufacturer or importer shall not be held liable if they prove that defect has arisen after merchandise is placed on the market by them.

3) If free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects would bring along disproportional inconvenience for seller, consumer may exercise one of rights of reneging on contract or discount from price pro rata to defect. During determination of disproportionality, matters such as value of merchandise free of defects, importance of defect and whether resorting to other optional rights would create any problems for consumer shall be considered.

4) In the event either right of free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects is chosen, such request must be fulfilled within maximum thirty business days from notification of this request to seller, manufacturer or importer. However, concerning merchandise included at the list attachment of regulation issued as per article 58 of Consumer Protection Law no. 6502, consumer's request for free of charge repair shall be fulfilled within maximum repair period set out at the regulation. Otherwise, consumer shall be free to exercise other optional rights.

5) In cases consumer chooses right of reneging on contract or discount from price pro rata to defect, full price paid or amount of discount from price shall be promptly refunded to consumer.

Introduction

6) Any expenses incurred because of exercising optional rights shall be covered by the party fulfilling the right chosen by consumer. Consumer, along with one of such optional rights, may also claim compensation as per provisions of Turkish Code of Obligations dated 11/01/2011 and no. 6098.

II. Consumer Complaints and Objections

Consumers may file applications regarding complaints and objections to consumer courts and consumer arbitration committees in accordance with arrangements provided at Consumer Protection Law no. 6502.

Manufacturer or Importer

Ford Otomotiv Sanayi A.S.
Akpınar Mah. Hasan Basri Cad. No: 2
34885 Sancaktepe/Istanbul
Trade Registration No: 73232 - Istanbul
Tel: 0.216 564 71 00
Fax: 0.216 564 73 85
www.fordotosan.com.tr

Service Life

The service life of this vehicle is 10 years.

Data Privacy



WARNING: Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

Note: *Error logs are reset following a service or repair.*

Note: *We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.*

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.

- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

SERVICE DATA

Our dealers collect service data through the data link connector in your vehicle. They use service data, for example error logs, to help them if you take your vehicle for repair. They share this data with our technical team, if required, to help with diagnosis. In addition to using the information for diagnosis and repair, we use and share service data with our service providers, for example parts suppliers, where required and where permitted by law, for continuous improvement or with other information that we have about you, for example your contact information, to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law. Our service providers are equally required by law to protect your data and retain it in accordance with data retention policies.

Note: *Third party repair facilities can also collect service data through the data link connector.*

EVENT DATA

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe.

Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

CONNECTED VEHICLE DATA



The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network. Subject to your consent, the vehicle may send vehicle, driving and location data. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit www.FordConnected.com or refer to your local Ford website.

Note: The modem continues to send information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing data by changing the modem settings. See **Connected Vehicle** (page 547).

Note: The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.

Note: To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit www.FordConnected.com.

MOBILE DEVICE DATA

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **App Precautions** (page 566). See **App Requirements** (page 566).

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

Data Privacy

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the system reset function to erase the stored information. See **Performing a System Reset** (page 574).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Note: *To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit www.FordConnected.com.*

Examples of data that the system could transmit are:

- Vehicle identification number.
- Vehicle propulsion storage type.
- Current time.
- Vehicle location and direction.
- Whether the call was automatically or manually initiated.
- Vehicle category.
- Number of occupants in the vehicle.

Note: *You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.*

EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off, or deactivation of the high-voltage battery. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

Sustainability is a priority at Ford. We are constantly looking for ways to reduce our impact on the planet while providing customers with great products and delivering a strong business. You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit www.sustainability.ford.com.

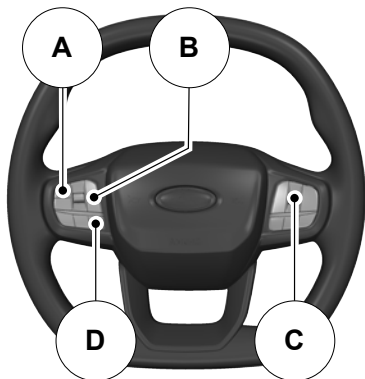
France Only



Points de collecte sur www.quefairedemesdechets.fr et www.ford.fr

Visual Search

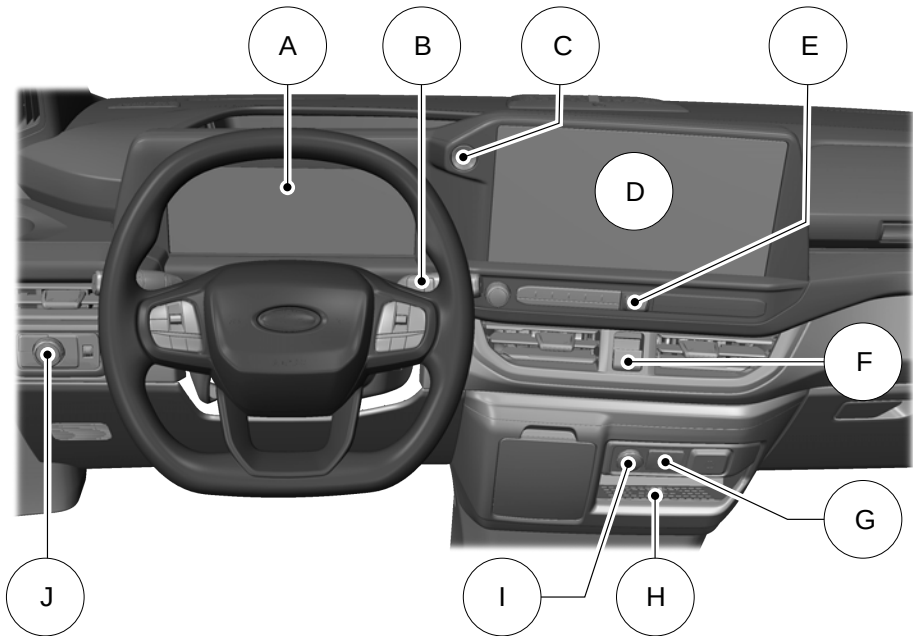
STEERING WHEEL



- A See **Switching Cruise Control On and Off** (page 344).
- B See **Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off** (page 372).
- C See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 142).
- D See **Beginning a Voice Interaction** (page 557).

Visual Search

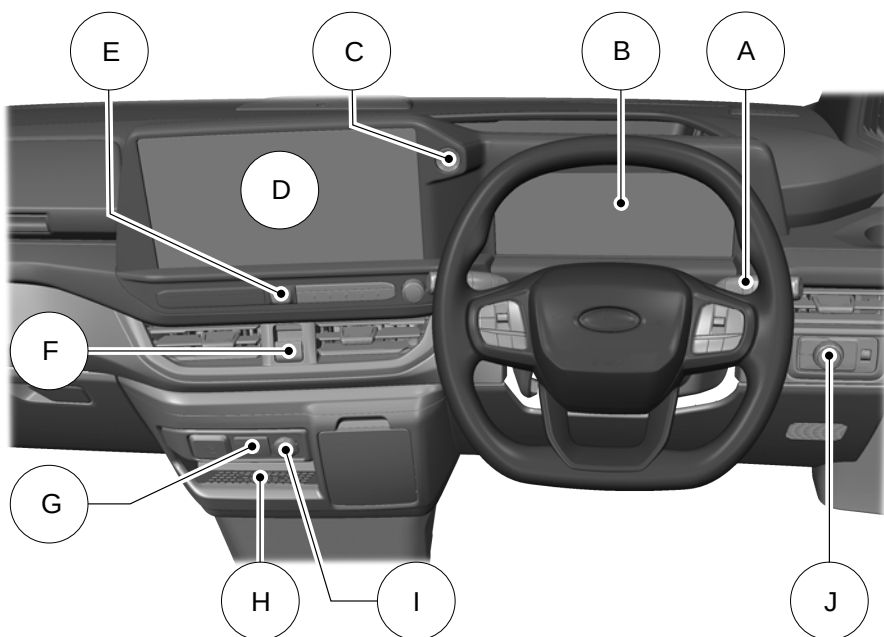
INSTRUMENT PANEL - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, LHD



- A See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 132).
- B See **Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear** (page 304).
- C See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 218).
- D See **Status Bar** (page 555).
- E See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 427).
- F See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 314).
- G See **Playing Media Using the USB Port** (page 204).
- H See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 215).
- I See **Power Outlet Precautions** (page 208).
- J See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 108).

Visual Search

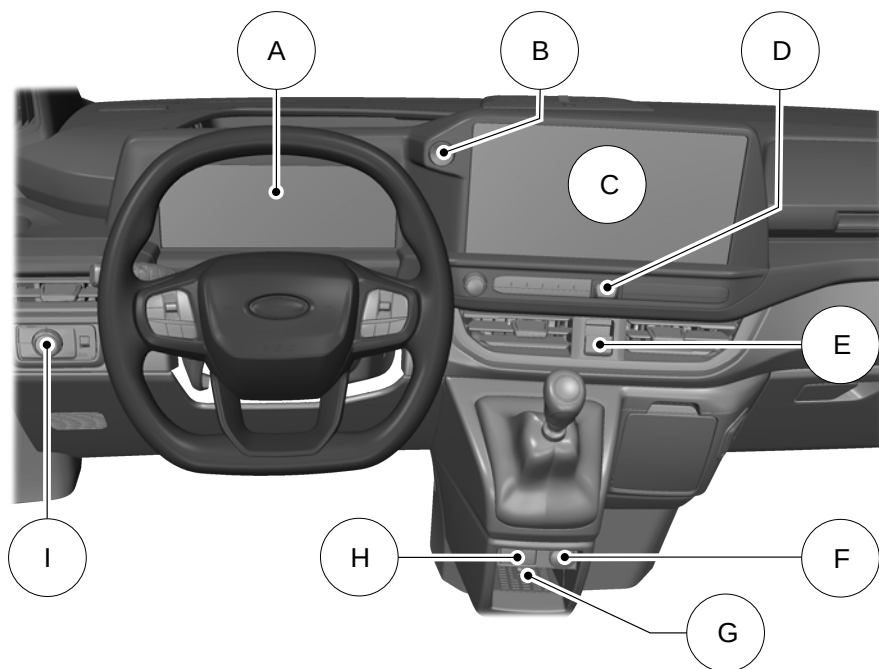
INSTRUMENT PANEL - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, RHD



- A See **Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear** (page 304).
- B See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 132).
- C See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 218).
- D See **Status Bar** (page 555).
- E See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 427).
- F See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 314).
- G See **Playing Media Using the USB Port** (page 204).
- H See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 215).
- I See **Power Outlet Precautions** (page 208).
- J See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 108).

Visual Search

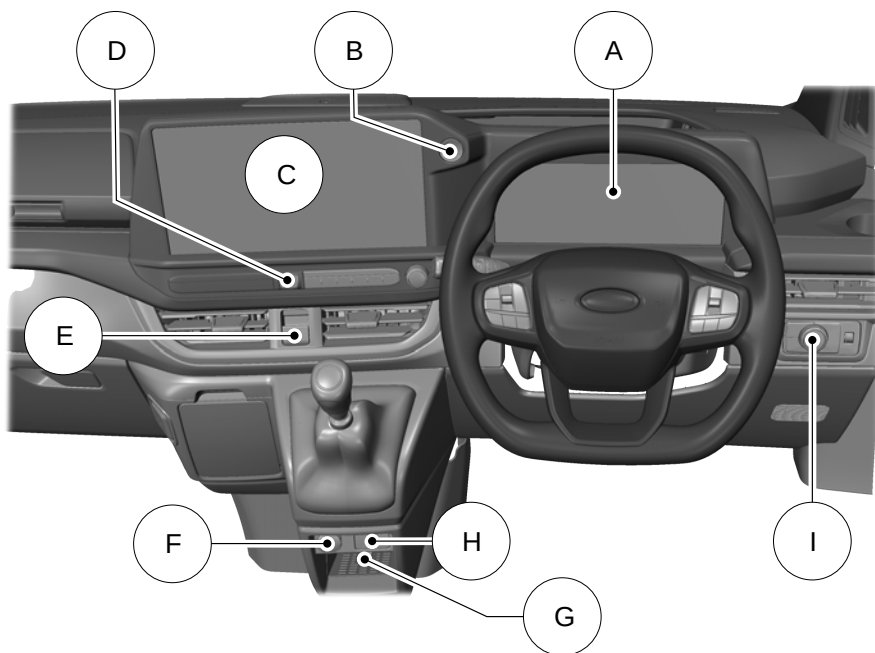
INSTRUMENT PANEL - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, LHD



- A See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 132).
- B See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 218).
- C See **Status Bar** (page 555).
- D See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 427).
- E See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 314).
- F See **Power Outlet Precautions** (page 208).
- G See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 215).
- H See **Playing Media Using the USB Port** (page 204).
- I See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 108).

Visual Search

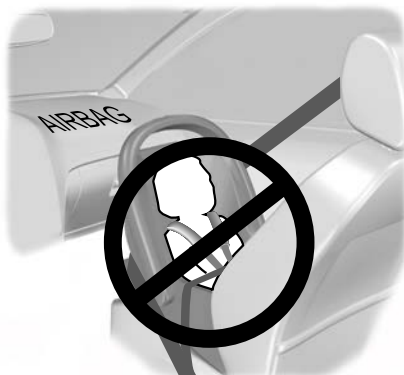
INSTRUMENT PANEL - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, RHD



- A See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 132).
- B See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 218).
- C See **Status Bar** (page 555).
- D See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 427).
- E See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 314).
- F See **Power Outlet Precautions** (page 208).
- G See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 215).
- H See **Playing Media Using the USB Port** (page 204).
- I See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 108).

Child Safety

CHILD SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



Only child restraints certified to ECE-R129 or ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle.

Note: *Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.*

WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

WARNING: Do not modify child restraints in any way.

WARNING: Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child restraints checked.

WARNING: Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

WARNING: Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

WARNING: Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

Child Safety



WARNING: If you use a child restraint and a seatbelt, make sure that the seatbelt is not slack or twisted.



WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.



WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.



WARNING: Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

WHAT ARE THE CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

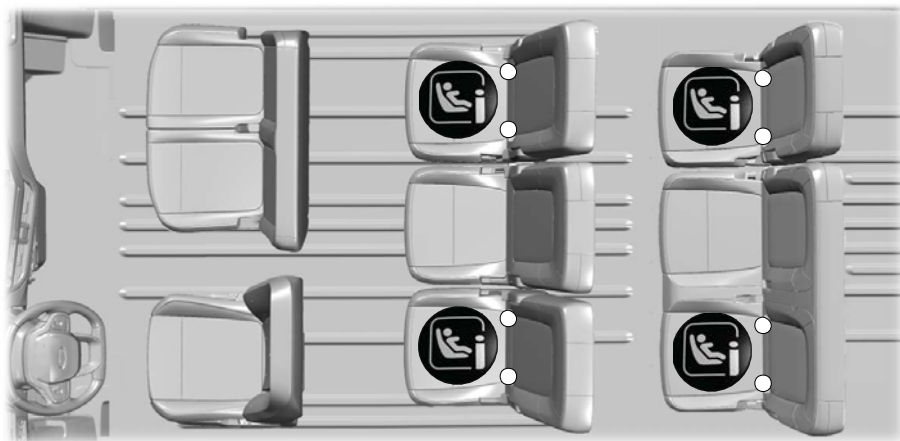
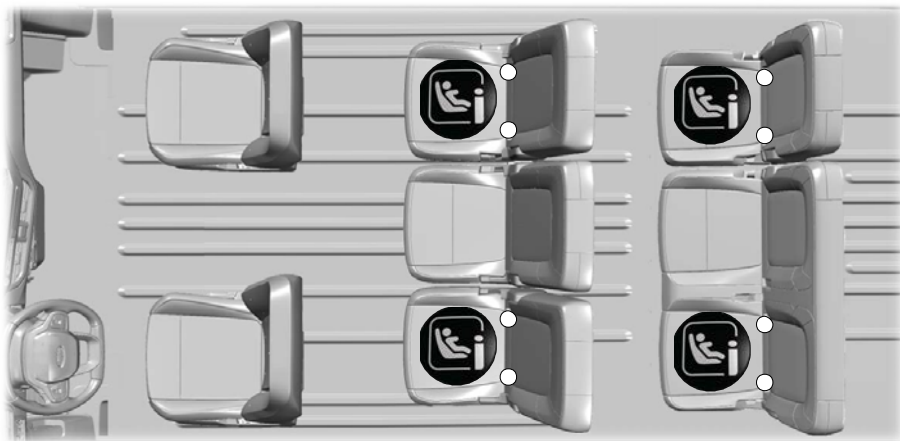
Anchor points are designed to allow you to quickly and safely install a child restraint.

LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT LOWER ANCHOR POINTS - BUS



Lower anchor points are on the rear outermost seats.

Child Safety



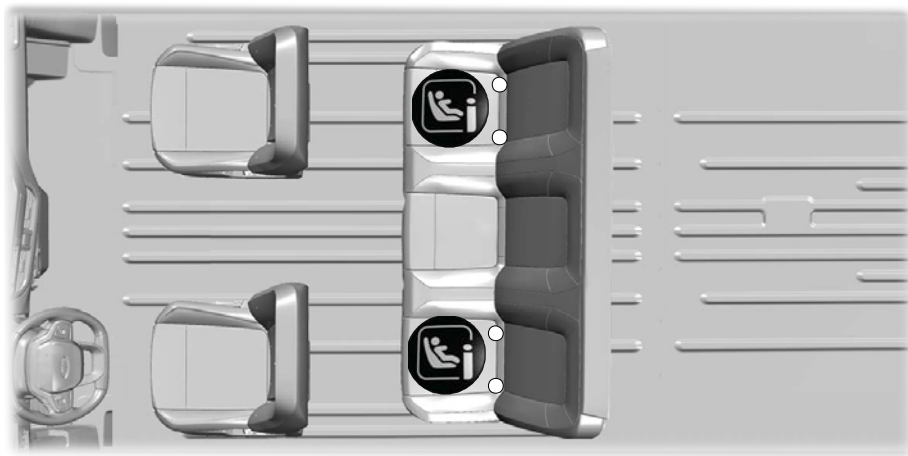
Child Safety

LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT LOWER ANCHOR POINTS - KOMBI/VAN

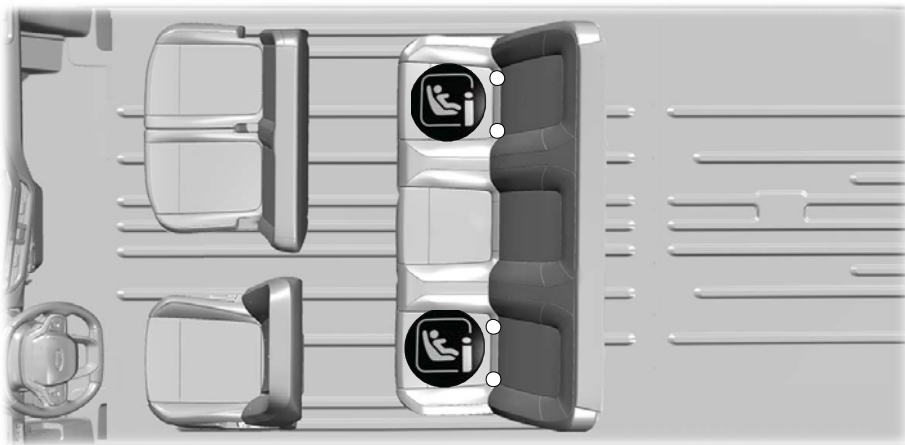


Lower anchor points are on the rear outermost seats.

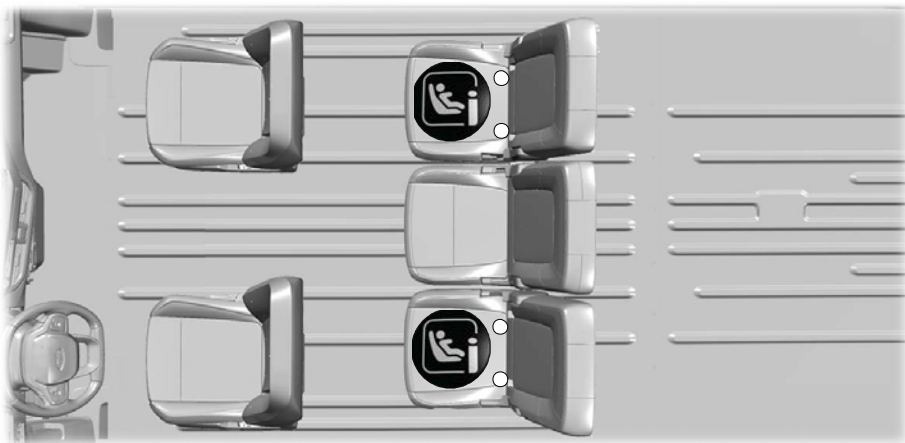
Double Cab in Van



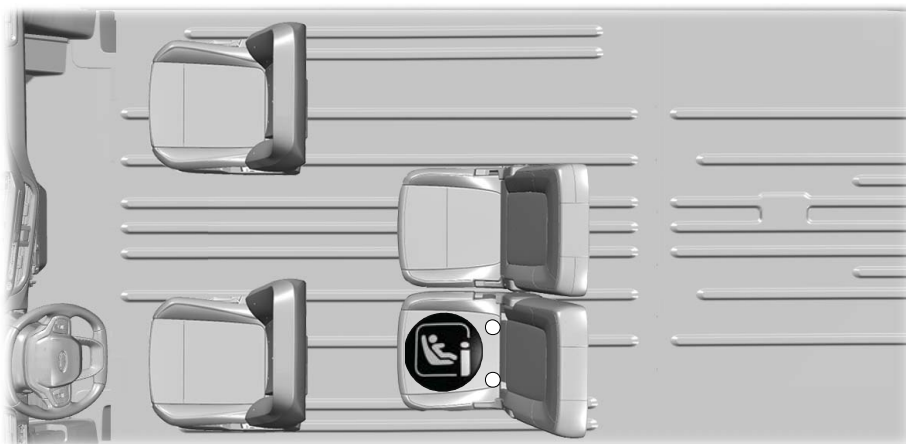
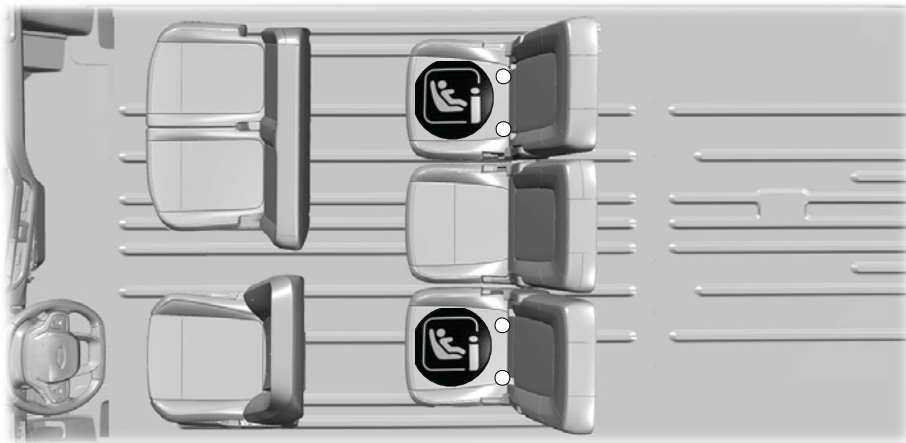
Child Safety



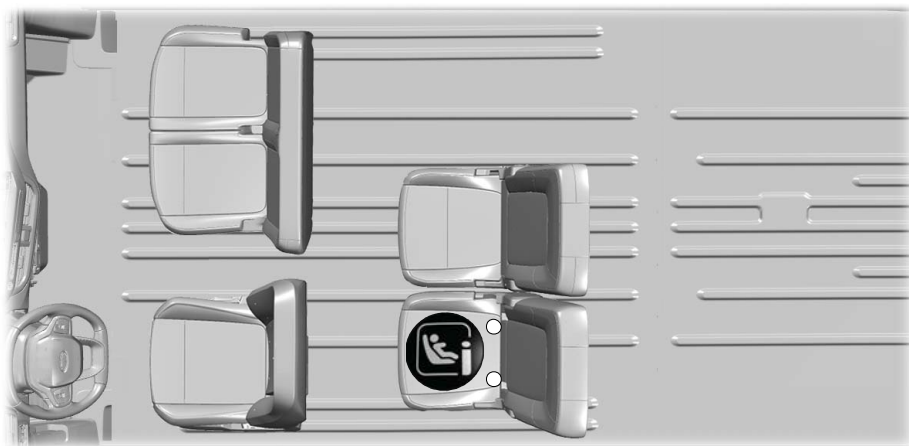
Kombi Van



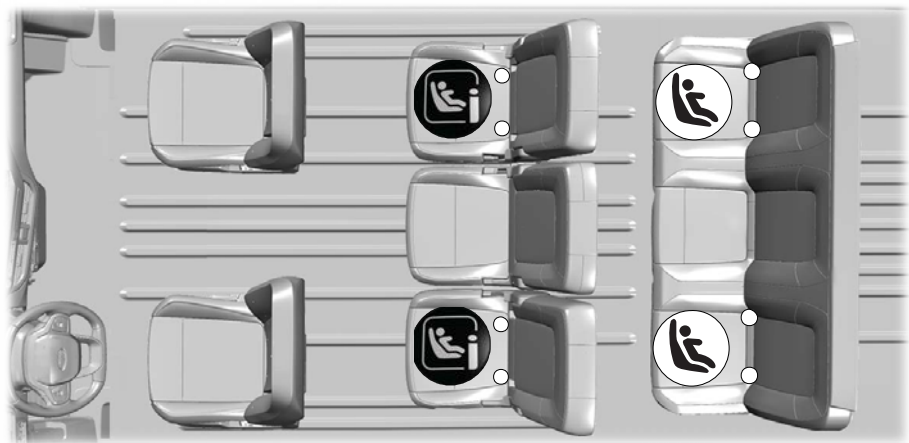
Child Safety



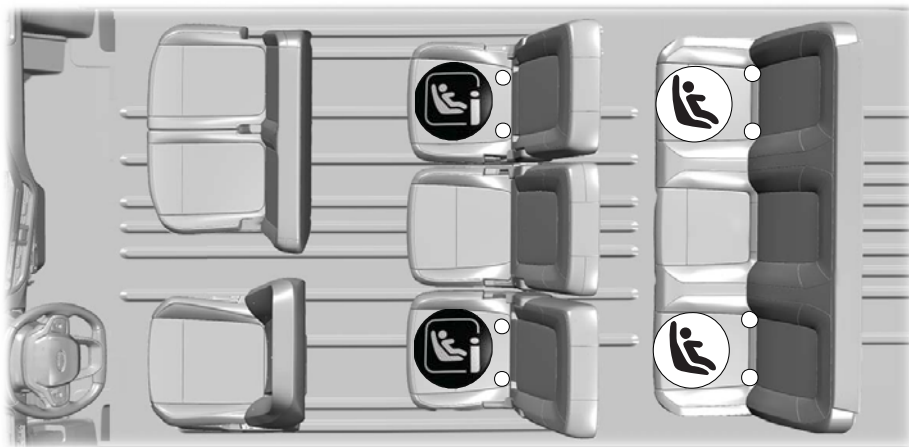
Child Safety



Kombi



Child Safety



LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT TOP TETHER ANCHOR POINTS - BUS



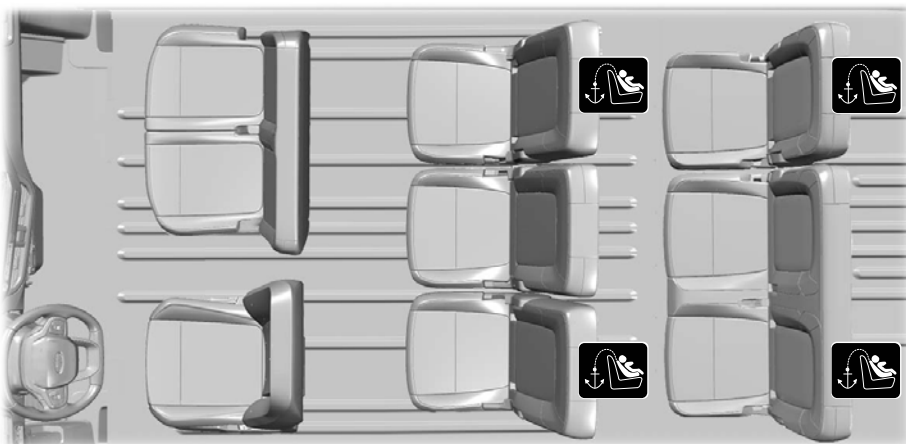
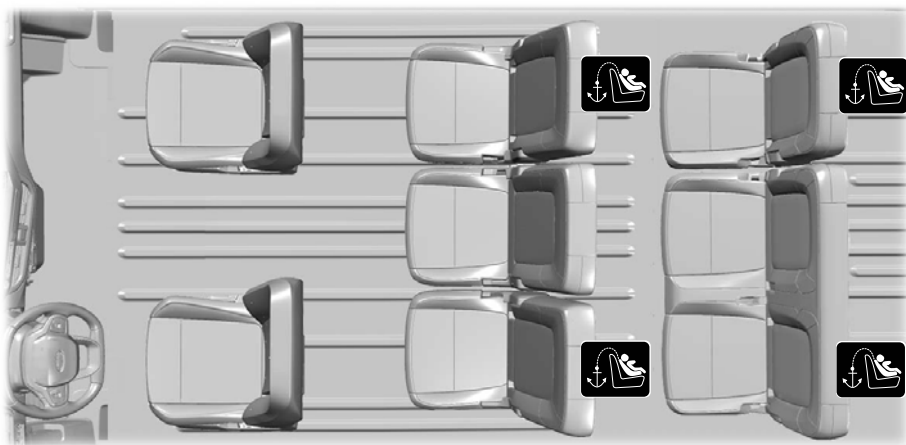
WARNING: Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.

Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions for installing a child seat with a top tether.

For child restraints with a top tether the tether anchor point is on the back of the seat.



Child Safety



Child Safety

LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT TOP TETHER ANCHOR POINTS - KOMBİ/VAN



WARNING: Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.

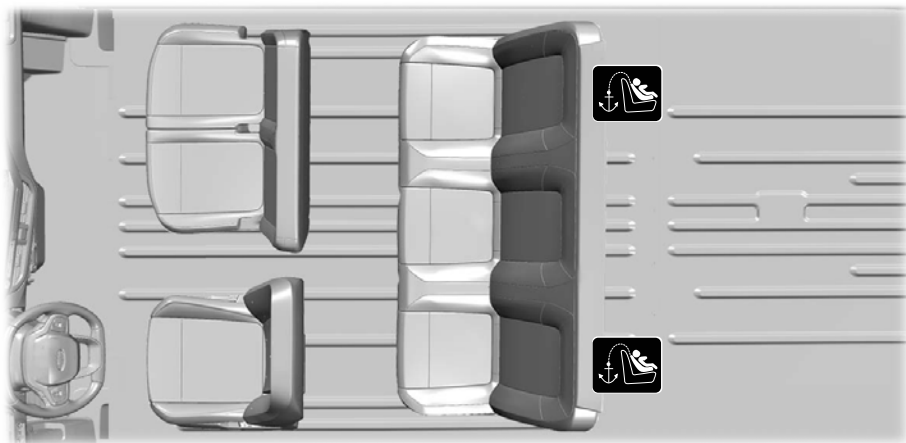
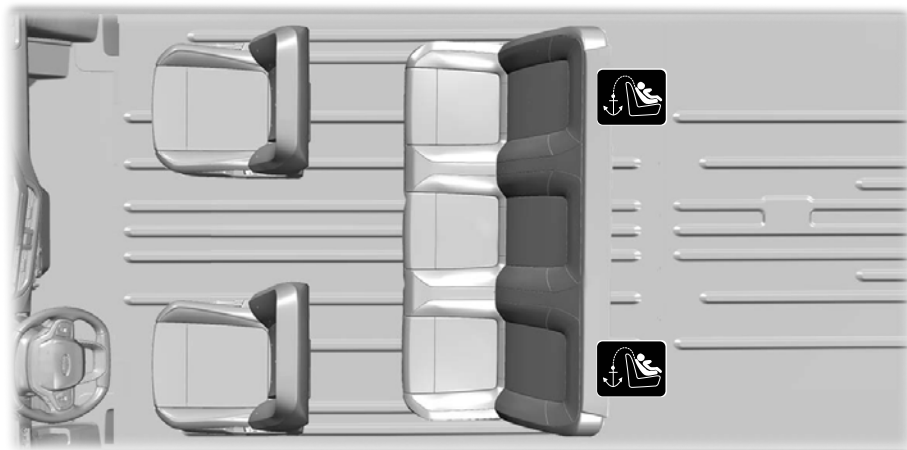
Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions for installing a child seat with a top tether.

For child restraints with a top tether the tether anchor point is either under the seat or on the back of the seat.



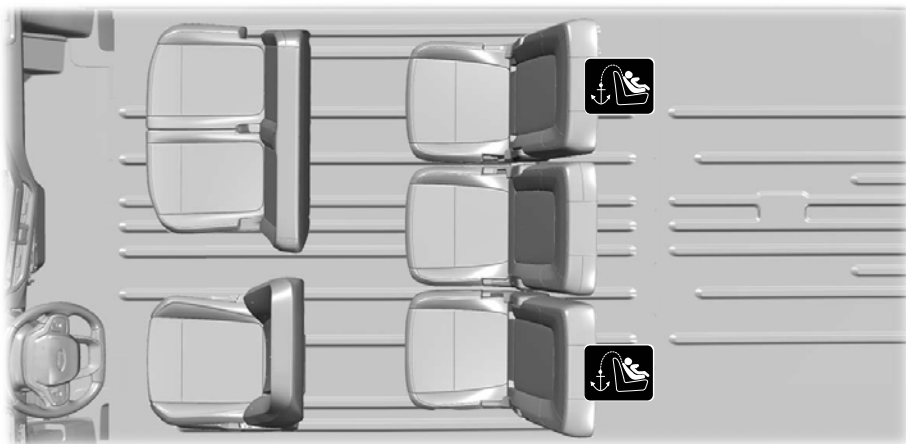
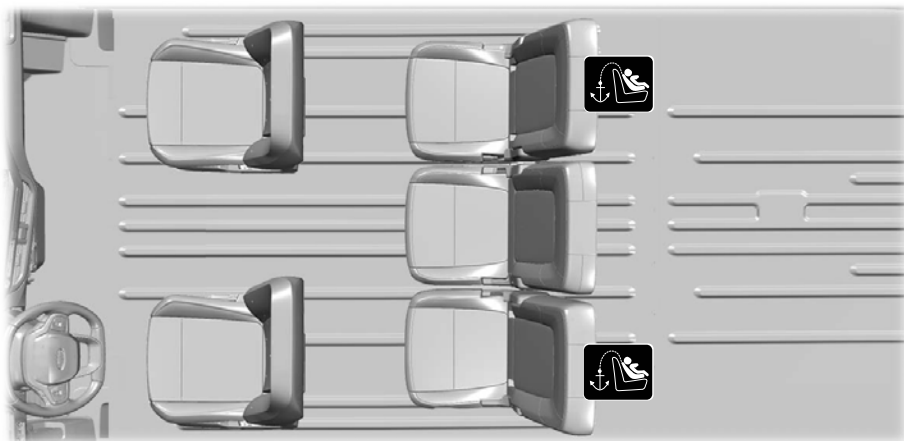
Child Safety

Double Cab in Van

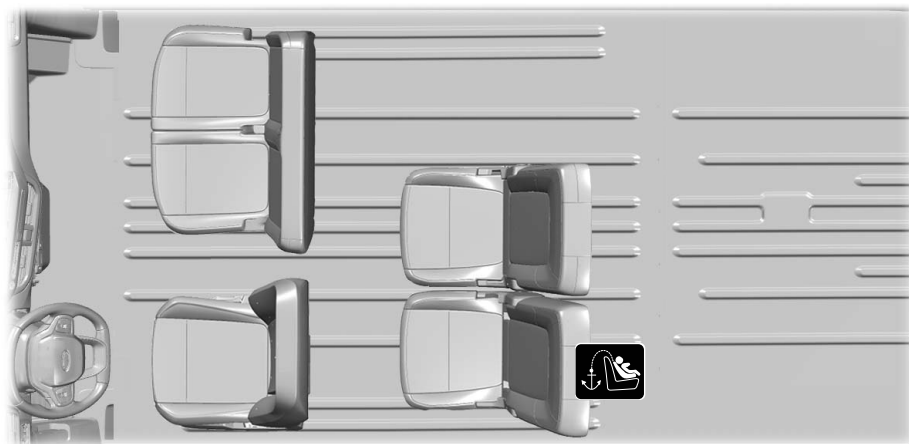
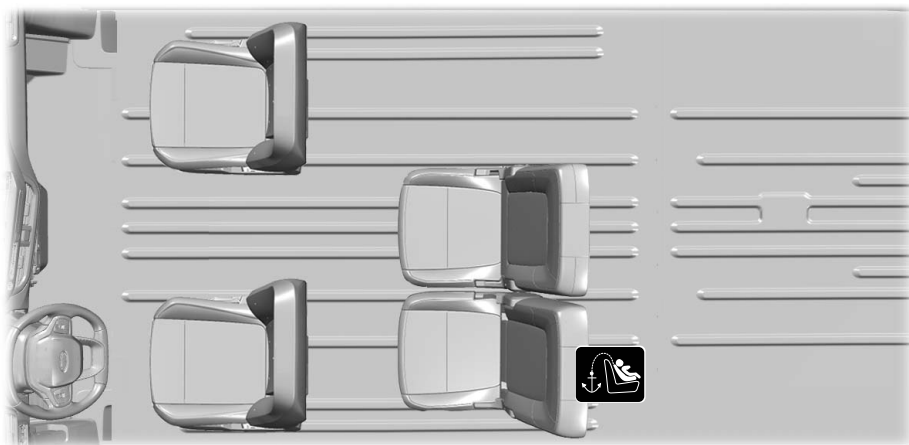


Child Safety

Kombi Van

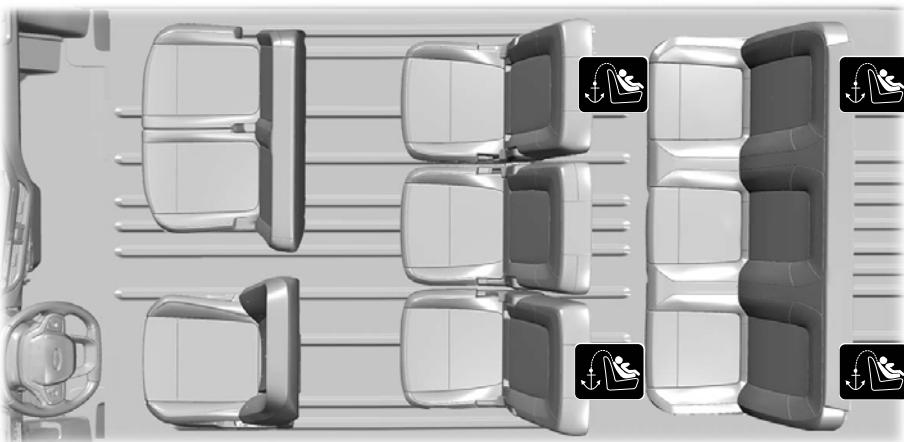
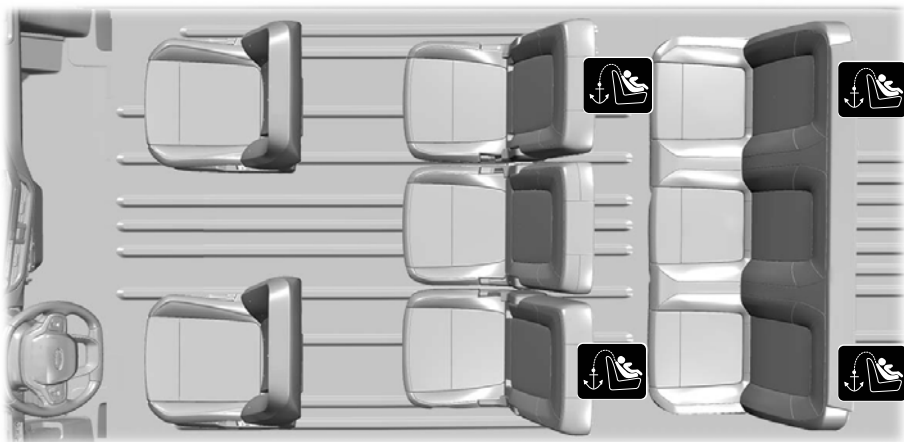


Child Safety



Child Safety

Kombi



Child Safety

CHILD RESTRAINTS

CHILD RESTRAINT POSITION INFORMATION - BUS

Vehicle Seating Positions	Mass Group Categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	15–25 kg (33–55 lb)	22–36 kg (49–79 lb)
Front passenger outboard seat with airbag ON .	X	X	UF ¹	UF ¹	UF ¹
Front passenger outboard seat with airbag OFF .	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹
Front passenger center seat with airbag ON .	X	X	UF ¹	UF ¹	UF ¹
Front passenger center seat with airbag OFF .	X	X	UF ¹	UF ¹	UF ¹
Second row seats - forward facing.	U	U	U	U	U
Second row seats - rearward facing. ²	X	X	UF ¹	UF ¹	UF ¹
Third row seats.	U	U	U	U	U

¹ We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child restraint, on the rear seat.

² Vehicles with second row reversible seats.

X Not suitable for children in this mass group.

U Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF Suitable for universal category forward facing child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

Child Safety

ISOFIX Child Restraints

The following table provides information suitable for vehicle seats that have an i-Size or ISOFIX label attached.

Vehicle Seating Positions		Mass Group Categories				
		0	0	0+	1	1
		Lateral Facing	Rearward Facing	Rearward Facing	Forward Facing	Rearward Facing
		0–10 kg (0–22lb)	0–10 kg (0–22lb)	0–13 kg (0–29lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)
Front passenger seat.	Size class. ¹	No ISOFIX.				
	Seat type.					
Second row outboard seats - forward facing - ISOFIX.	Size class. ¹	X	E ³	C, D, E ³	A, B, B1 ³	C, D ³
	Fixture.	X	R1 ³	R1, R2X, R2, R3 ³	F2, F2X, F3 ³	R2X, R2, R3 ³
	Seat type.	X	IL	IL	IL, IUf	IL
Second row outboard seats - rearward facing - ISOFIX. ²	Size class. ¹	X	X	X	A, B, B1 ³	X
	Fixture.	X	X	X	F2, F2X, F3 ³	X
	Seat type.	X	X	X	IL, IUf	X
Second row center seat.	Size class. ¹	No ISOFIX.				
	Seat type.					
Third row outboard seats - ISOFIX.	Size class. ¹	X	E ³	C, D, E ³	A, B, B1 ³	C, D ³

Child Safety

Vehicle Seating Positions		Mass Group Categories				
		0	0	0+	1	1
		Lateral Facing	Rearward Facing	Rearward Facing	Forward Facing	Rearward Facing
		0–10 kg (0–22lb)	0–10 kg (0–22lb)	0–13 kg (0–29lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)
	Fixture.	X	R1 ³	R1, R2X, R2, R3 ³	F2, F2X, F3 ³	R2X, R2, R3 ³
	Seat type.	X	IL	IL	IL, IUF	IL
Third row center seat - ISOFIX.	Size class. ¹	No ISOFIX.				
	Seat type.					

¹ As defined by ECE-R16.

² Vehicles with second row reversible seats.

³ The size class and fixture are defined for both universal and semi-universal child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on ISOFIX child restraints.

IL Suitable for use with particular ISOFIX child restraint systems in the semi-universal category. Refer to the child restraint system manufacturer vehicle recommendation list for additional information.

IUF Suitable for use with forward facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in the universal category.

Note: If you are purchasing an ISOFIX child restraint, make sure that you know the correct mass group and ISOFIX size class for the intended seating locations.

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

Child Safety

i-Size Child Restraints

The following table provides information suitable for vehicle seats that have an i-Size label attached.

Vehicle Seating Positions	Rearward facing child restraint systems on front passenger seat with airbag ON	i-Size Child Restraint Systems	Largest Suitable Booster Fixture (B2,B3)
Front passenger seats.	X	X	B2, B3
Second row outboard single seats - forward facing.	-	i-U	B2, B3
Second row outboard single seats - rearward facing. ¹	-	X	B2, B3
Second row single center seat - forward and rearward facing.	-	X	B2, B3
Third row outboard seats.	-	i-U	B2, B3
Third row center seats.	-	X	B2, B3

¹ Vehicles with second row reversible seats.

i-U Suitable for use with forward and rearward facing i-Size child restraint systems.

X Not suitable for use with i-Size child restraint systems.

Child Safety

CHILD RESTRAINT POSITION INFORMATION - KOMBI/VAN

Vehicle Seating Positions	Mass Group Categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	15–25 kg (33–55 lb)	22–36 kg (49–79 lb)
Front passenger outboard seat with airbag ON .	X	X	UF ¹	UF ¹	UF ¹
Front passenger outboard seat with airbag OFF .	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹
Front passenger center seat with airbag ON .	X	X	UF ¹	UF ¹	UF ¹
Front passenger center seat with airbag OFF .	X	X	UF ¹	UF ¹	UF ¹
Second row seats.	U	U	U	U	U
Third row seats.	U	U	U	U	U

¹ We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child restraint, on the rear seat.

X Not suitable for children in this mass group.

U Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF Suitable for universal category forward facing child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

Child Safety

ISOFIX Child Restraints

The following table provides information suitable for vehicle seats that have an i-Size or ISOFIX label attached.

Vehicle Seating Positions		Mass Group Categories				
		0	0	0+	1	1
		Lateral Facing	Rearward Facing	Rearward Facing	Forward Facing	Rearward Facing
		0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–10kg (0–22lb)	0–13kg (0–29lb)	9–18kg (20–40b)	9–18kg (20–40b)
Front passenger seat.	Size class. ¹	No ISOFIX.				
	Seat type.					
Second row single seats - ISOFIX.	Size class. ¹	F, G ²	E ²	C, D, E ²	A, B, B1 ²	C, D ²
	Fixture.	L1, L2 ²	R1 ²	R1, R2X, R2, R3 ²	F2, F2X, F3 ²	R2X, R2, R3 ²
	Seat type.	IL	IL	IL	IL, IUUF	IL
Second row triple bench seats (DCIV) - ISOFIX.	Size class. ¹	F, G ²	E ²	D, E ²	A, B, B1 ²	D ²
	Fixture.	L1, L2 ²	R1 ²	R1, R2X, R2 ²	F2, F2X, F3 ²	R2X, R2 ²
	Seat type.	IL	IL	IL	IL, IUUF	IL
Second row center seat.	Size class. ¹	No ISOFIX.				
	Seat type.					
Third row seats - ISOFIX.	Size class. ¹	X	X	X	A, B, B1 ²	X

Child Safety

Vehicle Seating Positions		Mass Group Categories				
		0	0	0+	1	1
		Lateral Facing	Rearward Facing	Rearward Facing	Forward Facing	Rearward Facing
		0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)
	Fixture.	X	X	X	F2, F2X, F3 ²	X
	Seat type.	X	X	X	IL, IUF	X
Third row center seat.	Size class. ¹	No ISOFIX.				
	Seat type.					

¹ As defined by ECE-R16.

² The size class and fixture are defined for both universal and semi-universal child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on ISOFIX child restraints.

IL Suitable for use with particular ISOFIX child restraint systems in the semi-universal category. Refer to the child restraint system manufacturer vehicle recommendation list for additional information.

IUF Suitable for use with forward facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in the universal category.

X Not suitable for children in this mass group.

Note: If you are purchasing an ISOFIX child restraint, make sure that you know the correct mass group and ISOFIX size class for the intended seating locations.

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

Child Safety

i-Size Child Restraints

The following table provides information suitable for vehicle seats that have an i-Size label attached.

Vehicle Seating Positions	Rearward facing child restraint systems on front passenger seat with airbag ON.	i-Size Child Restraint Systems	Largest Suitable Booster Fixture (B2,B3)
Front passenger seats.	X	X	B2, B3
Second row outboard seats.	-	i-U	B2, B3
Second row center seat.	-	X	B2, B3
Third row outboard seats.	-	X	B2, B3
Third row center seats.	-	X	B2, B3

i-U Suitable for use with forward and rearward facing i-Size child restraint systems.

X Not suitable for use with i-Size child restraint systems.

CHILD RESTRAINTS RECOMMENDATION

Size Class Categories	Manufacturer	Model	Attachment
40–83 cm (15–35 in) 0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	Maxi-Cosi.	Pebble 360 and FamilyFix 360 base. ¹	ISOFIX and support leg (base) or seatbelt only.
40–105 cm (15–40 in) 0–17.5 kg (0–39 lb)	Maxi-Cosi.	Pearl 360 and FamilyFix 360 base. ¹	ISOFIX and support leg (base).

Child Safety

Size Class Categories	Manufacturer	Model	Attachment
100–150 cm (40–60 in) 15–36 kg (33–79 lb)	Britax Römer.	KidFix M i-Size. ^{1,2}	ISOFIX and seatbelt or seatbelt only.

¹We recommend that you secure children using an ISOFIX child restraint on the rear outermost seats.

²We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only.

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

Child Safety

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS



WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.

Note: Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a top tether.



WARNING: Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.



WARNING: Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.



WARNING: If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.



WARNING: Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. You may need to adjust the seats to properly secure the child restraint. Make sure that the seat backrest is in an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.

When using a child restraint on a front seat, follow these seat positioning guidelines:

- The child restraint must not be in contact with the instrument panel.
- Position the passenger seat as far rearward as possible and route the seatbelt forward and downward from the B-pillar ring to the child restraint.
- If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seatbelt without slack remaining, adjust the seat backrest to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat.

Note: When using a child restraint on a rear seat, adjust the front seat to a position to prevent contact with the child's feet or legs.

BOOSTER SEATS

Booster Seat



Secure children that weigh greater than 15 kg (33 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall in a booster seat or on a booster cushion.

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across their hips.

Booster Cushion



WARNING: When using a booster cushion, make sure you adjust the vehicle head restraint on that seating position.

Child Safety



Left-Hand Side

Turn it counterclockwise to switch the child lock on and clockwise to switch it off.

Right-Hand Side

Turn it clockwise to switch the child lock on and counterclockwise to switch it off.

Note: To make sure the child safety lock is on, pull the inside door handle twice to verify the door does not open.

Note: To open the rear doors when the child lock is engaged, have someone outside the vehicle open the door.

Secure children that weigh greater than 22 kg (49 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall on a booster cushion.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS - EXCLUDING: VAN



WARNING: You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



A child safety lock is on the rear edge of each rear door.

You must set the child safety lock separately on each door.

Seatbelts

SEATBELT PRECAUTIONS

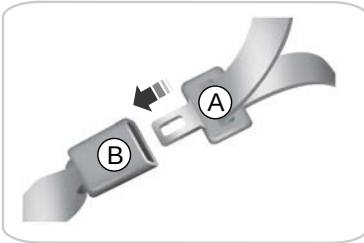


WARNING: Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.

FASTENING AND UNFASTENING THE SEATBELTS

Fastening the Seatbelts

All seatbelts in your vehicle are a three-point combination lap and shoulder seatbelt.



- A Seatbelt tongue.
- B Seatbelt buckle.

1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

Note: It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.

2. Insert the tongue into the buckle.

3. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.

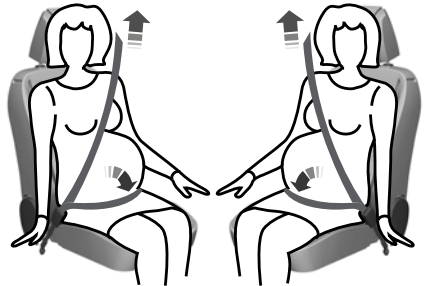
Unfastening the Seatbelts

1. Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt.
2. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

ADJUSTING THE SEATBELTS DURING PREGNANCY



WARNING: Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.



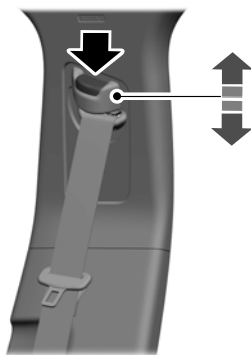
Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

Seatbelts

ADJUSTING THE SEATBELT HEIGHT



WARNING: Position the seatbelt height adjuster so that the seatbelt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.



1. Press the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.
2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

SEATBELT REMINDER

SEATBELT REMINDER INDICATORS

A warning lamp illuminates if the ignition is on and any of the following occur:

- A front or rear seat is occupied and the seatbelt has not been fastened.
- A front or rear seatbelt has been recently unfastened.



The warning lamp illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

The seatbelt reminder must be paired with the seats by an authorized dealer if:

- New seats are installed in the vehicle.
- Seats from another identical vehicle are installed.

SEATBELT REMINDER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds and the warning lamp illuminates if you are not wearing your seatbelt when your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

The warning tone sounds for a short period of time or until you fasten your seatbelt.

SWITCHING THE SEATBELT REMINDER ON AND OFF

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Note: Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, this feature may not be available.

CHECKING SEATBELT STATUS



A



B



C



D



E

A Seatbelt fastened.

B Seatbelt reminder battery low.

C Fault.

Seatbelts

- D Seatbelt not fastened.
- E Empty seat.

- 2. Select **Status Information**.
- 3. Select **Seat Belts**.

Note: When you check the seatbelt status and an installed rear seat does not appear in the instrument cluster display, please visit an authorized dealer.

Checking Seatbelt Status

- 1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.

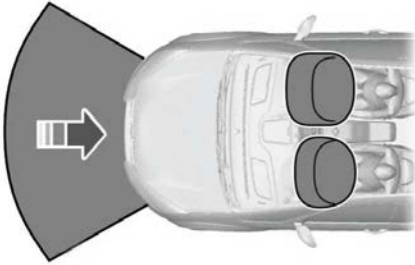
SEATBELTS – TROUBLESHOOTING

SEATBELTS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Rear belt monitor malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Rear seat belt buckle Battery low Service required	The battery has to be replaced. Contact an authorized dealer.

Airbags

HOW DO THE FRONT AIRBAGS WORK



The front airbags are designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbags inflate within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflate on contact with the occupant. The front airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

HOW DO THE SIDE AIRBAGS WORK

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

WARNING: Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front seat backrest. There is a label attached to the side of each backrest to indicate this.

Airbags



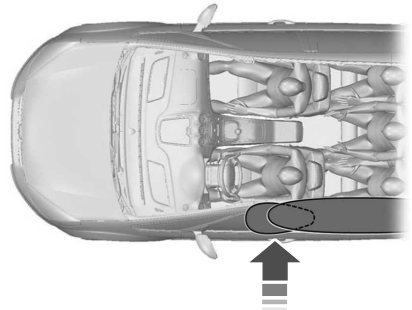
The side airbags are designed to inflate between the door panel and the occupant to enhance the protection in certain crashes.

The side airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral crash. They could also deploy during a significant frontal crash. The side airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral or frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

HOW DO THE SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS WORK



WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



The airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral or frontal angled crash. The airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral and frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

AIRBAG PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.



WARNING: Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Airbags



WARNING: Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: A loud bang sounds and there is a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

PASSENGER AIRBAG INDICATORS

The passenger airbag on and off indicators are close to the climate control unit.

The passenger airbag indicator shows if the front passenger frontal airbag is enabled or disabled.

Note: When your vehicle is on, the passenger airbag status indicator off and on lamps illuminate for a short period to confirm they are functional.



It illuminates when the airbag is on.



It illuminates when the airbag is off.



SWITCHING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG ON AND OFF



WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.



WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Passenger airbag**.
4. Switch **Passenger airbag** on or off.

AIRBAGS – TROUBLESHOOTING

AIRBAGS – WARNING LAMPS



If it does not illuminate when you switch the power on, continues to flash or remains on when your vehicle is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

AIRBAGS – AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when the airbag warning lamp is not working.

Pedestrian Alert System

WHAT IS THE PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM

Electric drive vehicles can be extremely

quiet. The pedestrian alert system is designed to generate a sound to alert pedestrians to the presence of an electric drive vehicle.

PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Condition	Action
Pedestrian sounder malfunction Service now	The system has malfunctioned.	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WHAT IS ECALL

eCall is an emergency call system that complies with European Union Regulation (EU) 2015/758. See **eCall User Information** (page 623).

The system uses the public cell phone network to initiate a call to the public emergency services when activated automatically in a severe accident or manually by the vehicle occupants.

eCall is designed for emergency calls in case of severe accidents or other emergencies that require the emergency services. It does not support other voice calls.

HOW DOES ECALL WORK

If an accident results in an attempt to deploy an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or to shut off the fuel pump, or to deactivate the high voltage battery, the system initiates a call to the emergency services. This call cannot be canceled.

In the case of an emergency, the system, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public emergency services. The system does not deploy the rescue operations. The local public emergency service deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.

During an emergency call, the system transmits vehicle data to the emergency service. See **Emergency Call System Data** (page 27).

Note: *If the transmission is unsuccessful, this could result in the emergency operator not receiving your vehicle data.*

Note: *If the system is unable to initiate a call to the emergency services, a voice prompt plays and the emergency call indicator illuminates.*

EMERGENCY CALL REQUIREMENTS

The system only operates in areas with a compatible cell phone network and emergency services infrastructure.

EMERGENCY CALL LIMITATIONS

Not all accidents activate the system. If an accident does trigger the system, it initiates a call to the emergency services. Do not wait for the system to initiate a call if you are able to do so. Call emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear the system within five seconds of the accident, the system could be non-functional.

Using a non-Ford audio system could result in the system not properly operating.

MANUALLY MAKING AN EMERGENCY CALL



WARNING: Use caution when making a manual emergency call when driving.

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press the SOS symbol on the overhead console to open the emergency call button cover.

3. Press the emergency call button to initiate a call to the emergency services.

Note: Press the button again before the call is connected to cancel it.

4. Speak to the operator.

Note: After completing an emergency call, the emergency operator can call your vehicle. The system automatically answers incoming calls for approximately an hour.

EMERGENCY CALL INDICATORS

**WARNING:** If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



The indicator is integrated into the emergency call button cover on the overhead console.

It illuminates brightly for a short time when you switch the ignition on.

Emergency Call Indicator Status	Description
Indicator off.	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Dimmed red.	Normal operation.
Rapidly flashing.	The system is initiating an emergency call.
Moderately flashing.	The system is transmitting vehicle data to the emergency services.
Slowly flashing.	The system is connected to the emergency services and communication is established.
Bright red.	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

CHANGING THE BACKUP BATTERY

The system has a backup battery and indicates when it needs to be changed. We recommend that you have the battery changed by an authorized dealer.

ECALL – TROUBLESHOOTING

ECALL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Emergency Call System malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Keys and Remote Controls

REMOTE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The typical operating range for your remote control is approximately 10 m (33 ft).

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- Weather conditions.
- Nearby radio towers.
- Structures around your vehicle.
- Other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: Make sure you have locked your vehicle before leaving it unattended.

Note: If you are within range of your vehicle, the remote control will operate if you unintentionally press any button.

Note: The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.

REMOVING THE KEY BLADE



Push the release button and pull the key blade out.

LOCATING YOUR VEHICLE



Press the lock button on the key twice within three seconds. The direction indicators will flash.

CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY



WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.

Keys and Remote Controls



WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



CAUTION: The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.

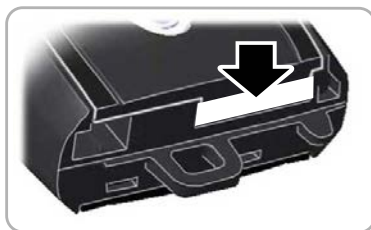


Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2450 or equivalent.

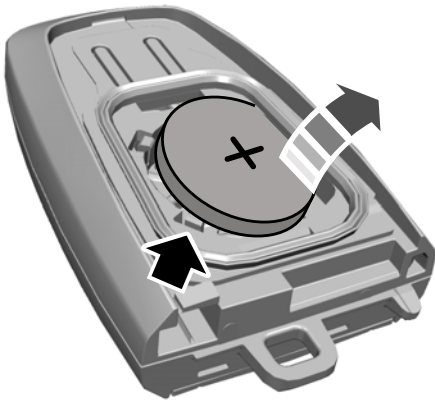


1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.



2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.

Keys and Remote Controls



3. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and carefully remove the battery.

4. Install a new battery with the + facing upward.

Note: Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

5. Reinstall the battery cover and the key blade.

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original key. You can also obtain extra keys.

PROGRAMMING THE REMOTE CONTROL

Contact an authorized dealer to program remote controls for your vehicle.

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Key battery low Replace soon	Displays when the remote control battery requires replacing.

Keys and Remote Controls

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What is the fan noise I hear when I press the unlock button on the remote control?

- This is the blower motor pushing fresh air into the cabin and out through cabin exhaust vents. Your vehicle has air purge that could turn on when you press the unlock button on the remote control or when certain conditions are met.

Doors and Locks

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

You can only use the remote control when your vehicle is stationary.

Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock all doors. One long flash of the turn signal lamp confirms that your vehicle has unlocked.

Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has locked.

Note: For more information on operating the doors from outside your vehicle See *Keyless Entry* (page 89).

Double Locking the Doors



WARNING: Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside.

Note: If you double lock your vehicle while inside, switch the ignition on to return the door locks to a single locked state.



Press the button twice within three seconds. The turn signal lamps flash three times.

Note: You can double lock your vehicle with the key. Turn the key to the lock position twice within three seconds. Use the key when the remote control is not functioning.

Two-Stage Configurable Unlocking Options

A configurable unlocking option is set at the time of the vehicle purchase. This determines which doors unlock when you press the unlock button or the cargo release button on the remote control once or twice.

Note: If you want to change your current unlocking configuration, contact an authorized dealer.

Option 1

Single press of the unlock button unlocks the front row doors. Double press of the unlock button unlocks all doors.

Single or double press of the cargo release button unlocks the second row doors and the rear doors.

Option 2

Single press of the unlock button unlocks the front and the second row doors. Double press of the unlock button unlocks all doors.

Single press of the cargo release button unlocks the rear doors. Double press of the cargo release button unlocks the second row doors and the rear doors.

Option 3

Single press of the unlock button unlocks the driver door. Double press of the unlock button unlocks all doors.

Single press of the cargo release button unlocks the rear doors. Double press of the cargo release button unlocks the second row doors and the rear doors.

Doors and Locks

Option 4

Single press of the unlock button unlocks the driver door. Double press of the unlock button unlocks the front row doors.

Single press of the cargo release button unlocks the rear doors. Double press of the cargo release button unlocks the second row doors and the rear doors.

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

Unlocking the Doors

1. Release the key blade from the remote control.
2. Fully insert the key into the driver door lock cylinder.
3. Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle.

Note: *Unlock only unlocks driver door.*

Locking the Doors

1. Release the key blade from the remote control.
2. Fully insert the key into the driver door lock cylinder.
3. Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

Note: *Locking performs a central lock of all doors.*

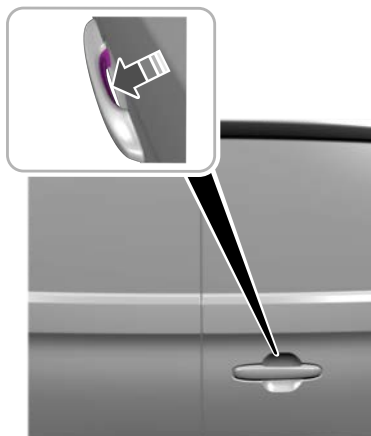
What Are TVL Mechanical Locks

Optional mechanical locking system that provides additional security to passenger and cargo doors. For more information, see the TVL website.

Note: *Do not engage the TVL locks when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle, excluding the relock. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from inside when the TVL locks are engaged.*

OPENING AND CLOSING THE DOORS

Opening the Double Rear Doors



Doors and Locks

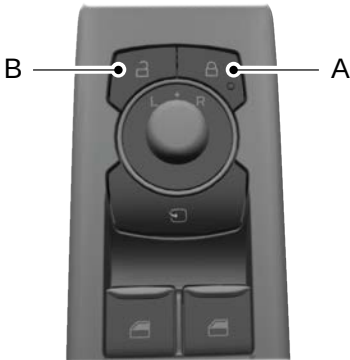
Fully Opening the Double Rear Doors

You can open the rear doors to three angles, 45°, 90° and 180°. At all these three angle points you feel a strong resistance.

Note: If you open the rear doors the rear lights might be covered. Make sure the vehicle is visible from the rear in compliance with local regulations, for example use a warning triangle if necessary.

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE CENTRAL LOCKING

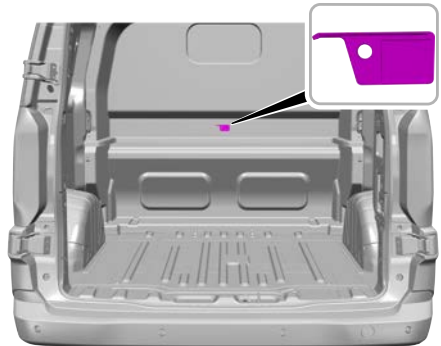


- A Lock
- B Unlock

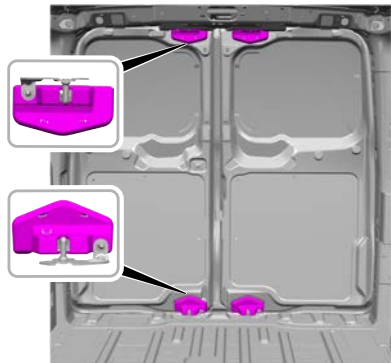
Note: LED illuminates for five minutes to confirm locked status. LED only illuminates if all doors are locked. If you open any door using the interior handle, the LED extinguishes.

Note: After locking, the unlock button remains operative for a short period of time.

OPENING THE REAR DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE IN AN EMERGENCY

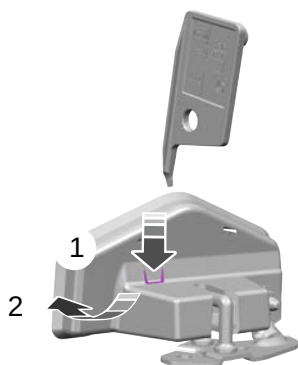


1. The door latch release tool is on the bulkhead in the cargo area. Use the tool to release the door latches to open the door in case of an emergency.



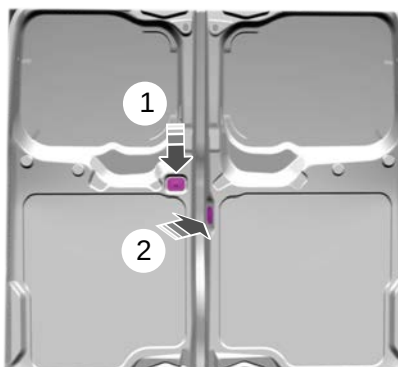
2. You have to open the lower and upper door latch on the primary door.

Doors and Locks



3. Carefully insert the tool in the position shown on the cover of the door latch.
4. Press it downwards first and then sideways on the lower latch until it clicks.
5. Press it upwards first and then sideways on the upper latch until it clicks.
6. Open the primary door.
7. Repeat the process on the secondary door latches if you need to open both doors.

OPENING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



1. Press the first button two times within three seconds to open the primary door.
2. Press the second button to open the secondary door.

REPROGRAMMING THE UNLOCKING FUNCTION

By default, your vehicle is delivered with two-stage unlock activated.

You can change between the one-stage and two-stage unlocking modes using the center display.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **Global Unlock** on or off.

One-Stage Unlock

All doors unlock when you press the unlock button on the remote control once.

Doors and Locks

Rear side doors and cargo doors unlock when you press the cargo unlock button on the remote control once.

To switch to one-stage unlock, press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

Two-Stage Unlock

A single or double press of the unlock button or cargo release button unlocks different doors. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 74).

AUTOUNLOCK

WHAT IS AUTOUNLOCK

Autounlock is a feature that centrally unlocks the vehicle doors when your vehicle comes to a stop and you open the driver door.

AUTOUNLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autounlock unlocks all the doors after:

1. All the doors are closed and locked and your vehicle exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph).
2. Your vehicle comes to a stop.
3. You open the driver door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off.

Note: *If you open the driver door after 10 minutes, Autounlock does not unlock all other doors.*

SWITCHING AUTOUNLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **Auto Unlock** on or off.

AUTOLOCK

WHAT IS AUTOLOCK

Autolock is a locking feature that locks the vehicle doors when you start driving.

AUTOLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autolock locks all the doors after:

1. All doors are closed and the ignition is on.
2. Your vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph).

Autolock repeats if:

1. Your vehicle is stopped.
2. Any door is opened and closed again.
3. Your vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph).

SWITCHING AUTOLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **Auto Lock** on or off.

Doors and Locks

MISLOCK

WHAT IS MISLOCK

Mislock is a locking feature that warns you if your vehicle has not locked.

HOW DOES MISLOCK WORK

The horn sounds when you press the lock button on the remote control and a door is open.

MISLOCK LIMITATIONS

When you press the lock button once, the direction indicators do not flash if:

- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open.

If you switch mislock off, the horn does not sound if you press the lock button on the remote control when a door is open.

SWITCHING MISLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **Mislock Chirp** on or off.

AUTORELOCK

HOW DOES AUTORELOCK WORK

The doors automatically relock if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The doors relock to central lock and the alarm returns to its previous state.

DOOR LOCK INDICATORS

An LED on the power door lock control illuminates when all doors are locked. It remains on for up to five minutes after you switch the ignition off.

DOORS AND LOCKS AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Door Ajar Audible Warning

Sounds when any door is not fully closed and your vehicle is moving.

DOORS AND LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

DOORS AND LOCKS – WARNING LAMPS

Door Ajar Warning Lamp



Illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

Doors and Locks

DOORS AND LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Driver door open	Displays if a door is open. Fully close the door.
Passenger door open	
Rear left door open	
Rear right door open	
Bonnet open	Displays if a hood is open. Fully close the hood.

Sliding Door - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Sliding Door/Power Sliding Door

SLIDING DOOR PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Fully close the power sliding door before driving, to prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not open or close the power sliding door when your hands are near the tracks or rollers. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: When closing the power sliding door, verify that it is free of obstruction and make sure that people and pets are not in the proximity of the sliding door opening.

Note: Do not leave the sliding door open when you are driving. This could damage the sliding door and its components.

Note: If you operate the sliding door often during a short period of time, the system could become not available for a certain time to prevent damage due to overheating.

Allow the system to open the sliding door. Do not manually push or pull the sliding door when it is moving. This could damage the sliding door and its components.

OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR

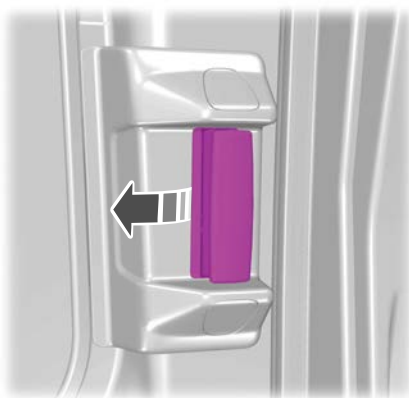
OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

Opening the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle Using the Instrument Panel Button



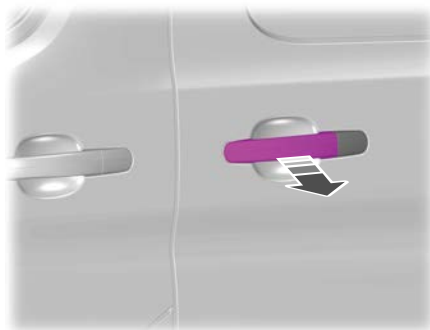
Press the button on the instrument panel to open the sliding door.

Opening the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle Using the Sliding Door Handle



Pull and release the door handle to open the sliding door.

OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



Sliding Door - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Sliding Door/Power Sliding Door

Pull and release the exterior door handle to open the sliding door.

OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR WITH THE REMOTE CONTROL

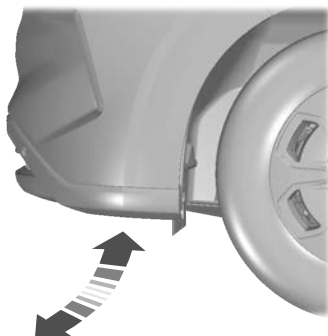


Press the button on the remote control twice within three seconds.

OPENING THE HANDS-FREE SLIDING DOOR

Make sure you have the passive key within 1 m (3 ft) of the sensor detection area.

1. Stand at the front side bumper of your vehicle, at the detection area shown.
2. Move your foot, in a single-kick motion, without pausing, under and away from the front bumper detection area.

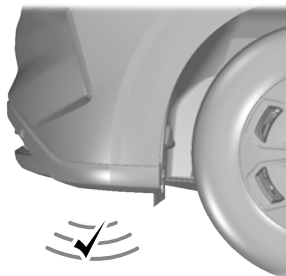


3. The sliding door opens.

Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free opening feature:

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

Detection Zones



The detection area is on the left-hand side and right-hand side of the front bumper, ahead of the wheel.

Note: If your vehicle has single sliding door, the detection area is on the respective side.

Note: Any physical actions that mimic a kicking motion such as splashing water, high-pressure cleaner or individual retrofit part may cause the hands-free sliding door to activate. In order to prevent such a case, keep the passive key away from the front bumper detection area.

Sliding Door - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Sliding Door/Power Sliding Door

CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR

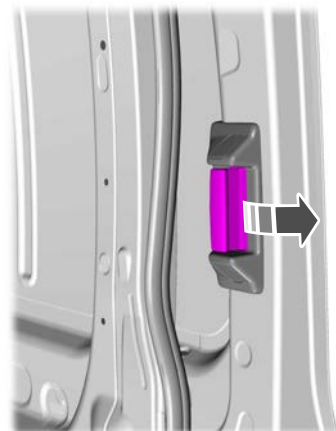
CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

Closing the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle Using the Instrument Panel Button



Press the button on the instrument panel to close the sliding door. A tone sounds when the sliding door begins to close.

Closing the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle Using the Sliding Door Handle



Pull and release the interior sliding door handle to close the sliding door.

CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



Pull and release the exterior door handle to close the sliding door.

CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR WITH THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press the button on the remote control twice within three seconds. A tone sounds when the sliding door begins to close.

CLOSING THE HANDS-FREE SLIDING DOOR

Make sure you have the passive key within 1 m (3 ft) of the sensor detection area.

1. Stand at the front side bumper of your vehicle, at the detection area shown.
2. Move your foot, in a single-kick motion, without pausing, under and away from the front bumper detection area.

Sliding Door - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Sliding Door/Power Sliding Door



The detection area is on the left-hand side and right-hand side of the front bumper, ahead of the wheel.

Note: If your vehicle has single sliding door, the detection area is on the respective side.

Note: Any physical actions that mimic a kicking motion such as splashing water, high-pressure cleaner or individual retrofit part may cause the hands-free sliding door to activate. In order to prevent such a case, keep the passive key away from the front bumper detection area.

STOPPING THE SLIDING DOOR MOVEMENT

You can stop the sliding door movement by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the sliding door button on the remote control twice within three seconds.
- Pressing the sliding door button on the instrument panel.
- Pulling the sliding door interior or exterior door handle.

RESETTING THE POWER SLIDING DOOR

Make sure that you complete the procedure within 10 seconds.

To reset the power sliding door do the following:

1. Manually close the sliding door.

Note: Make sure that the sliding door is fully closed.

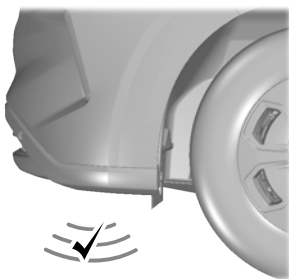
2. Pull the interior door handle in closing direction three times within three seconds.

3. The sliding door closes.

Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free opening feature:

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

Detection Zones



Sliding Door - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Sliding Door/Power Sliding Door

SLIDING DOOR – TROUBLESHOOTING

SLIDING DOOR – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Right power sliding door Calibration needed	The system has malfunctioned. Manually close the power sliding door. Pull and release the power sliding door handle to open the power sliding door. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Left Power Sliding Door Calibration Needed	
Right rear door motor disconnected See manual	The system has malfunctioned. Reset the power sliding door. See Resetting the Power Sliding Door (page 84). If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Left rear door motor disconnected See manual	

Sliding Door - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Sliding Door/Power Sliding Door

SLIDING DOOR – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the power sliding door stop moving?

The power sliding door stops when it detects an obstacle. A tone sounds and the power sliding door starts moving in the opposite direction. After you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the power sliding door.

Why is the power sliding door moving with reduced speed?

The power sliding door power was interrupted while left open. Fully close the power sliding door using the button on the instrument panel or the power sliding door handles. Open the power sliding door as normal. If the power sliding door still operates with reduced speed, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Why can I not close the power sliding door?

If the power sliding door does not close, restart the engine and then close it as normal. See **Closing the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle** (page 83). If the power sliding door still does not close, manually close the power sliding door and then open it as normal. If the power sliding door still does not close, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

What can I do if the power sliding door does not operate as normal?

If there is a malfunction on the power sliding door, restart the engine.

How can I open the sliding door if the system loses power?

If the sliding door loses power, you could need to apply more force when trying to open it. Push the back of the sliding door and the interior sliding door handle in opening direction at the same time and open it as normal.

Sliding Door - Vehicles With: Manual Sliding Door

SLIDING DOOR PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Fully close the sliding door before driving, to prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



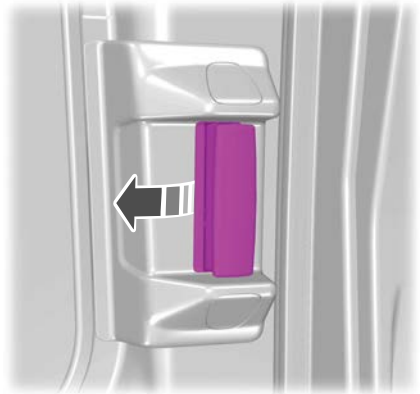
WARNING: Do not open or close the sliding door when your hands are near the tracks or rollers. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Note: When opening the sliding door make sure you fully open it until you hear a click. This way the door stop engage can protect you from accidentally closing.

Note: Do not leave the sliding door open when you are driving. This could damage the sliding door and its components.

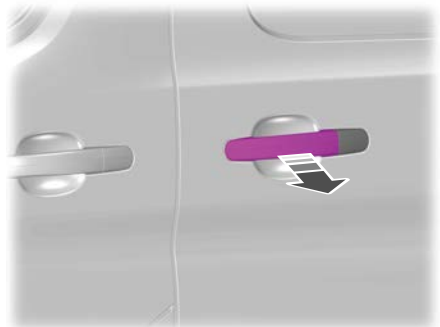
OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR

OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



Pull the interior door handle to open the sliding door.

OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

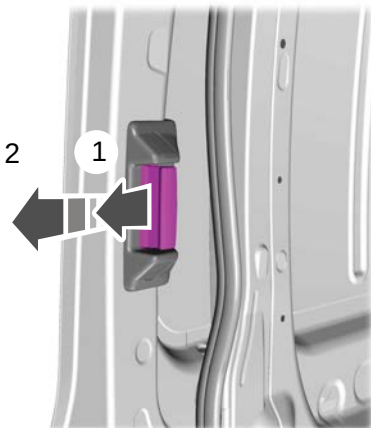


Sliding Door - Vehicles With: Manual Sliding Door

Pull the exterior door handle to open the sliding door.

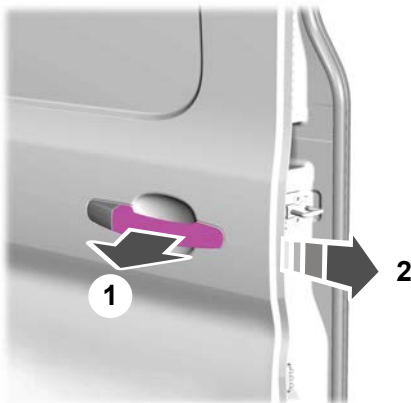
CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR

CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



1. Pull the interior door handle to release the door check feature.
2. Slide the door to close.

CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



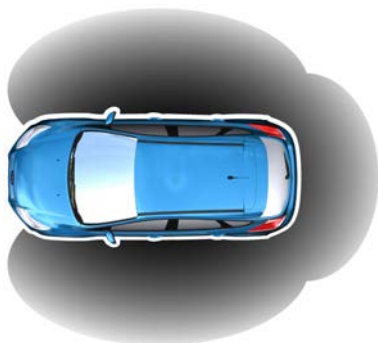
1. Pull the exterior door handle to release the door check feature.
2. Slide the door to close.

Keyless Entry

WHAT IS KEYLESS ENTRY

The system allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle without taking the passive key out of your pocket or purse.

KEYLESS ENTRY LIMITATIONS



E78276

A valid passive key must be within one of the three external detection ranges. These are approximately 1.5 m (5 ft) from the front door handles and rear doors.

The system could not function if:

- The passive key remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The passive key battery has no charge.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

KEYLESS ENTRY SETTINGS

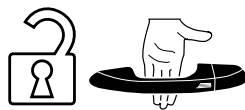
Switching Keyless Entry On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **KeyFree** on or off.

USING KEYLESS ENTRY

Unlocking the Doors

Unlock sensors are on the back of the exterior front door handles.



Touch the unlock sensor to unlock your vehicle and disarm the alarm. The turn signal lamps flash. Do not touch the lock sensor on the outer surface of the door handle.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

After unlocking the doors with the unlock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can lock your vehicle. When the delay period is over you can lock the doors again, if the passive key is within the respective detection range.

Locking the Doors

Lock sensors are on the top of the exterior front door handles.

Keyless Entry



Touch a lock sensor once to lock your vehicle and arm the alarm. The turn signal lamps flash.

Press the sensor twice in 3 seconds to double lock your vehicle.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

Note: *Your vehicle does not automatically lock. If you do not touch a lock sensor your vehicle remains unlocked.*

After locking the doors with the lock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can unlock your vehicle. This delay lets you pull the handle to make sure your vehicle is locked. When the delay period is over, you can unlock the doors again, if the key is within the respective detection range.

KEYLESS ENTRY – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYLESS ENTRY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the keyless entry system not function?

- If the system does not function it may be limited. See **Keyless Entry Limitations** (page 89). If the system still does not function use the remote control or the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Why can I not lock my vehicle?

- If you electronically lock your vehicle with a rear door or the liftgate open, the system searches for a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system detects a key, all doors unlock indicating that a key is inside. Your vehicle locks if another passive key is within the detection range after you close the last door.

Why does the passive key not work?

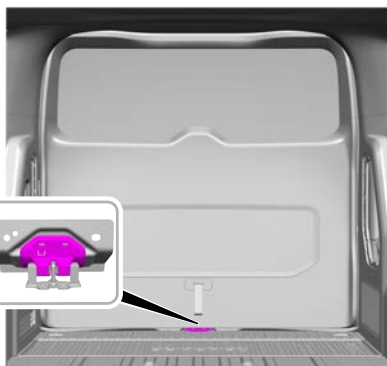
- The system deactivates passive keys left inside your vehicle when you lock it. You cannot switch the ignition on using a deactivated passive key. Press the unlock button on the remote control to reactivate a passive key.

Liftgate

LIFTGATE PRECAUTIONS



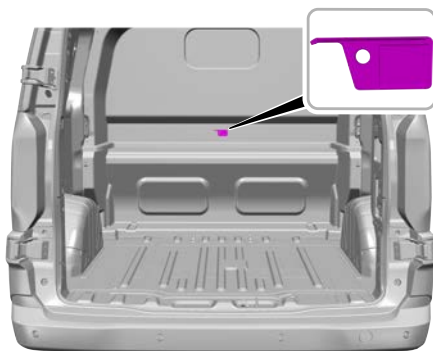
WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



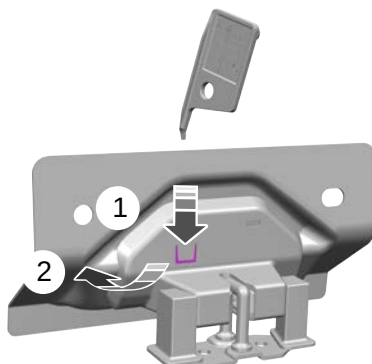
2. You have to open the liftgate latch.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE

OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



1. The liftgate latch release tool is on the bulkhead in the cargo area. Use the tool to release the liftgate latch to open the liftgate in case of an emergency.



3. Carefully insert the tool in the position shown on the cover of the door latch.
4. Press it downwards first and then sideways on the latch until it clicks.
5. Open the liftgate.

Liftgate

OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



1. Unlock the liftgate using the remote control or power door unlock control.

Note: If an authorized passive key is within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate, the liftgate opens when you press the liftgate control button.

2. Press the control button on the liftgate handle.
3. Open the liftgate.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open when you are driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press the button once.

Note: After 45 seconds, if the door remains closed it relocks.



1. Press the button on the liftgate handle.
2. Open the liftgate.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open when you are driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Liftgate



WARNING: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

A recessed grip or handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

Note: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

LIFTGATE – TROUBLESHOOTING

LIFTGATE – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

LIFTGATE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Liftgate open	The liftgate is not completely closed. Close the liftgate.

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system prevents someone from starting the vehicle with an incorrectly coded key.

Note: *The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems.*

Note: *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

ARMING THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system arms your vehicle after a short period of time when you switch the power off.

DISARMING THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system disarms when you switch the power on with a correctly coded key.

Note: *You could have difficulty starting the vehicle if you have metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain.*

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The anti-theft alarm system warns you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

HOW DOES THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM WORK

When armed, the anti-theft alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a correctly coded key or remote control.
- If you turn the power on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.
- If the inclination sensors detect an attempt to raise your vehicle.
- If someone disconnects your vehicle's 12V battery or the battery backup alarm.

If the anti-theft alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the turn signals flash for 5 minutes.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above sounds the alarm again.

WHAT IS THE PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is designed to detect unauthorized access to your vehicle.

WHAT ARE THE INTERIOR SENSORS

The interior sensors are designed to detect any movement inside your vehicle.

The interior sensors are in the overhead console.

Note: *Do not cover the interior sensors.*

WHAT ARE THE INCLINATION SENSORS

The inclination sensor is designed to detect an attempt to raise your vehicle, for example to remove a wheel or to tow it away.

Security

WHAT IS THE BATTERY BACKUP ALARM

The battery backup alarm is an additional alarm sounder that has its own battery. It can detect if your vehicle's 12V battery is disconnected to overcome the alarm system.

ARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The alarm is ready to arm when you switch your vehicle off.

Lock your vehicle with your remote control to arm the alarm.

DISARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

Disarm the alarm by performing any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM SETTINGS

WHAT ARE THE ALARM SECURITY LEVELS

You can select two levels of alarm security, motion sensors on and motion sensors off.

After you switch the ignition off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Details
Full Guard	Press the toggle button upward or downward to choose your required setting. Press the OK button.
Reduced Guard	

Motion Sensors On

Motion sensors on is the standard setting.

In motion sensors on, all equipped sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Note: *Do not arm the alarm with motion sensors on if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.*

Motion Sensors Off

In motion sensors off, only the perimeter sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Note: *The alarm security level will switch back to motion sensors on once the power is turned on.*

SETTING THE ALARM SECURITY LEVEL

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Alarm System**.
4. Press **Motion Sensors**.
5. Press a setting.

WHAT IS ASK ON EXIT

You can choose which level of security you require after you switch the ignition off.

Security

Note: *If you do not choose a setting, the system defaults to full guard.*

2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Alarm System**.
4. Switch **Ask on Exit** on or off.

SWITCHING ASK ON EXIT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.

SECURITY – TROUBLESHOOTING

SECURITY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
No key detected	The system has not detected a correctly coded key.
Starting system malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Vehicle alarm Start vehicle to stop alarm	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry.
Alarm system	

SECURITY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What should I do if there is a potential alarm problem with my vehicle?

- Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is a potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

What should I do if my vehicle is unable to start with a correctly coded key?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

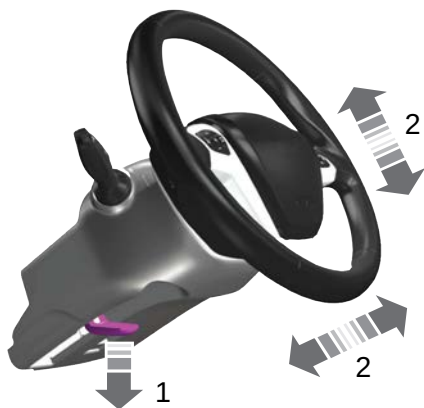
Steering Wheel

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL



WARNING: Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 182).



1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



3. Lock the steering column.

LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, RHD, VEHICLES WITHOUT: 220-240V 2.3KW POWER OUTLET

The steering wheel lock locks shortly after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside it.

Note: The steering wheel lock does not lock when the ignition is on or when your vehicle is moving.

Unlocking the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel lock unlocks when the system detects a valid passive key inside your vehicle. If the steering wheel lock relocks, switch the ignition on to unlock it.

Note: You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.

Steering Wheel

LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, RHD, VEHICLES WITH: 220-240V 2.3KW POWER OUTLET

The steering wheel lock locks shortly after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside it.

Note: *If you exit your vehicle with the passive key when Pro Power On Board mode is engaged, with Transmission in park (P), the steering wheel lock does lock even if the ignition is on.*

Unlocking the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel lock unlocks when the system detects a valid passive key inside your vehicle. If the steering wheel lock relocks, switch the ignition on to unlock it.

Note: *You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.*

HEATED STEERING WHEEL

The heated steering wheel button is on the climate controls.



Press the button to switch the heated steering wheel on and off.

Note: *You can use the heated steering wheel only when the engine is running.*

Note: *The system uses a sensor and is designed to control the temperature of the steering wheel and to prevent it from overheating.*

Note: *In warm temperatures, the steering wheel quickly reaches its maximum temperature and the system reduces the current to the heating element. This could cause you to think that the system has stopped working but it has not. This is normal.*

USING THE STEERING WHEEL AS A TABLE

This feature provides additional working space when the car is stationary, but the primary function of the steering wheel is to steer the vehicle. Make sure you do not use too much force on the steering wheel when tilting it. Damage caused by overloading the steering wheel is not covered by the vehicle warranty.

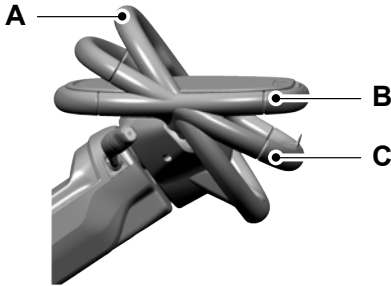
Note: *Do not place more than 5 kg (11.02 lb) weight on the steering wheel.*

Note: *The airbag is deactivated inside the steering wheel when you use the steering wheel as a table.*

Note: *The steering wheel mechanism may have some minimum movement. That is normal and does not affect the operation.*

Steering Wheel

Steering Wheel Positions



- A Driving position.
- B Table position.
- C Lap top position.

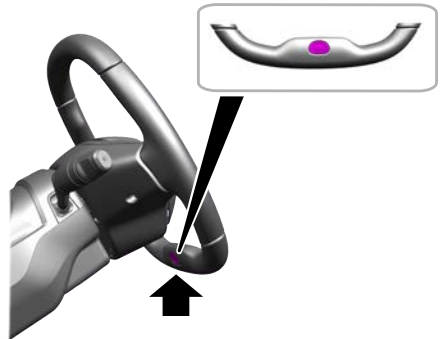
Laptop Position

1. Park your car safely and center the steering wheel.

Note: To avoid too much force on the steering wheel, while centering the wheel, switch the vehicle on to engage power steering.

2. Activate the electronic parking brake.
3. Select park (P) if you have automatic transmission or neutral if you have manual transmission.

Note: You can use this feature with the vehicle off. To allow you to use features like climate control you have to switch the vehicle on.



4. Press the button, once you hear the latch release, manually tilt the wheel, and then release the button.

Note: If you don't hear the latch releasing the mechanism could be preloaded. In this case push the lower rim, at the 6 o'clock position, away from your body while pressing the button.

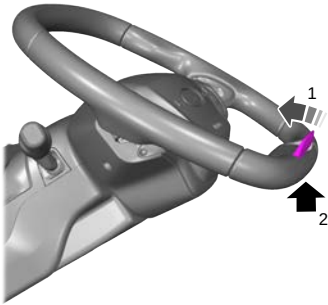
Note: Make sure that the steering wheel latched in the desired position.



5. Open the lid to hold your laptop.

Steering Wheel

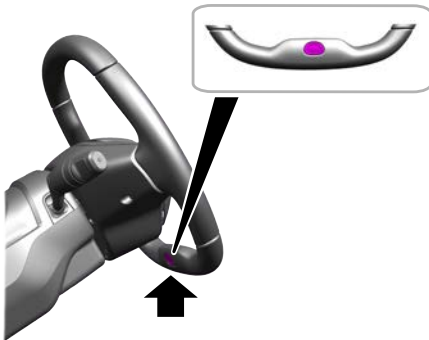
Note: Make sure that the steering wheel is latched in the desired position.



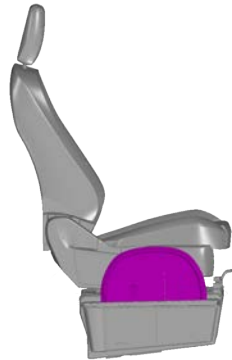
6. After finishing work, close the supporting lid. Press the button again and tilt the steering wheel back to the driving position.

Note: Make sure that the steering wheel is completely latched in driving position, before starting to drive.

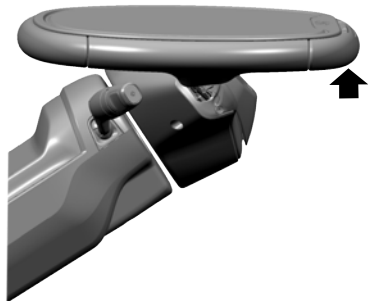
Table Position



1. Press the button, once you hear the latch releasing, manually tilt the wheel to an almost horizontal position, then release the button.



2. The tray is at the inner side of your seat, place it on the steering wheel.



3. After you finish using the tray, press the button again and tilt the steering wheel back to the driving position.

Note: It is possible to change from table position to laptop position and vice versa.

Note: Do not spill liquid on the steering wheel, damage caused is not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Steering Wheel

4. Place the tray back to its original location, make sure it is fixed.

Note: *The tray fits in its holder in one way only.*

Note: *Make sure that steering wheel is completely latched in driving position, before starting to drive. If you cannot drive away, it means you did not put the steering wheel back to its driving position.*

Note: *If you cannot move the steering wheel freely back to its original position you can override the system by increasing the manual return force. This should only be done in an emergency.*

Wipers and Washers

WIPERS

WIPER PRECAUTIONS

Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

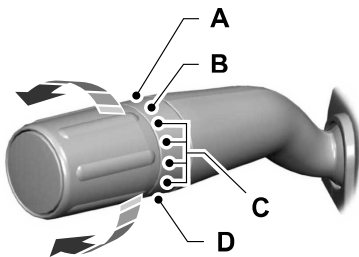
Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 105). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 105).

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between intermittent wipes may decrease.

SWITCHING WINDSHIELD WIPERS ON AND OFF



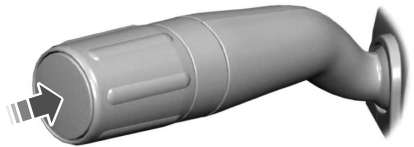
- A High-speed wipe.
- B Low-speed wipe.

- C Intermittent wipe.
- D Off.



Use the rotary control.

One-wipe function



Push the button briefly to activate the one-wipe function.

AUTOWIPERS

WHAT ARE AUTOWIPERS

Autowipers turns on and controls the speed and frequency of the windshield wipers.

Note: Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

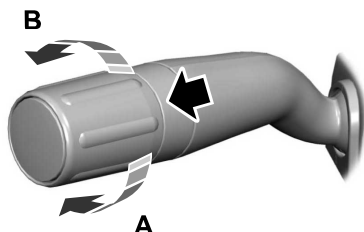
AUTOWIPERS SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Rain Sensing** on or off.

Wipers and Washers

Note: When you switch the feature off, the wipers do not operate based on the rain sensor. In this case if you switch on the windshield wipers to the intermittent wipe position with the feature off, the wipers use the wipe speed set by the rotary control.

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF THE RAIN SENSOR



- A Low sensitivity.
- B High sensitivity.

Use the rotary control to set the rain sensor sensitivity.

Note: Use intermittent wipe positions to adjust the rain sensor sensitivity.

When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield.

When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

SWITCHING THE REAR WINDOW WIPER ON AND OFF



- A Rear window wiper off.
- B Long wipe interval.
- C Short wipe interval.

Rotate the control to adjust the wipe interval.

REVERSE WIPE

WHAT IS REVERSE WIPE

Reverse wipe turns on the rear window wiper when you shift into reverse (R) and the windshield wipers are on.

REVERSE WIPE SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Rear Wiper On (when in Reverse)** on or off.

Wipers and Washers

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES

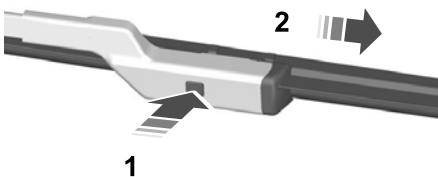


Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

REPLACING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES

Make sure your vehicle is off before beginning this procedure.

Note: Do not manually move the wiper arms to service position, doing so may damage the wiper motor. To place the wiper arms in a service position, switch your vehicle on in accessory mode, switch on the wipers and switch your vehicle off when the wipers are at their highest position.



1. Lift the wiper arm and then press the wiper blade locking button.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.

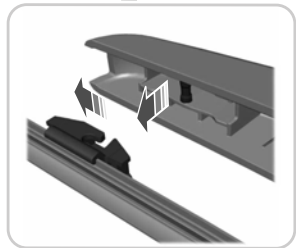
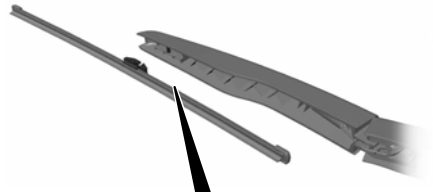
2. Remove the wiper blade.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

REPLACING THE REAR WIPER BLADES



1. Lift the wiper arm.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.

2. Remove the wiper blade.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

Wipers and Washers

WASHERS

WASHER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 5°C (41°F), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

USING THE WINDSHIELD WASHER



Press and hold the button at the end of the lever to operate the windshield washer.

Note: A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on.

SWITCHING THE COURTESY WIPE ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.

3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Courtesy Wipe** on or off.

Note: A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on. When you switch it off the wipers finish the current washer request.

USING THE REAR WINDOW WASHER



Rotate the control to the top or bottom position and hold it to operate the rear window washer.

Note: A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on.

ADDING WASHER FLUID

1. Open the hood.
2. Remove the washer fluid reservoir cap.
3. Add washer fluid that meets our specification. See **Washer Fluid Specification** (page 541).
4. Install the washer fluid reservoir cap.

Note: The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.

Wipers and Washers

WIPERS AND WASHERS – TROUBLESHOOTING

WIPERS AND WASHERS – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.

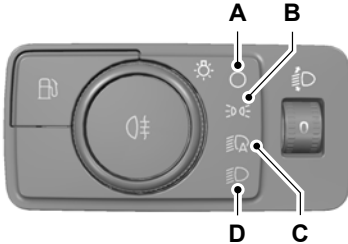
WIPERS AND WASHERS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why are there streaks and smears on the windshield?

- The wiper blades could be dirty, worn or damaged. Check the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 105). If the wiper blades are dirty, clean them with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth. If the wiper blades are worn or damaged, install new ones. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 105). See **Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades** (page 105).

Exterior Lighting

EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL



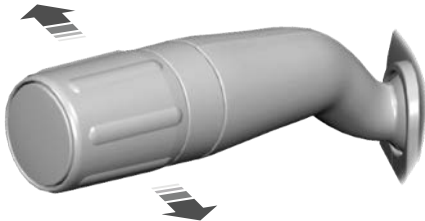
- A Lamps off.
- B Parking lamps on.
- C Autolamps on.
- D Headlamps on.

Rotate the control to make a selection.

Note: The lighting control defaults to autolamps every time you switch your vehicle on.

HEADLAMPS

USING THE HIGH BEAM HEADLAMPS



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

Note: Continuous activation only with headlamps on.

SWITCHING HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY ON AND OFF

To switch headlamp exit delay on, pull the turn signal lever toward you after switching your vehicle off.

To switch headlamp exit delay off, pull the turn signal lever toward you again or switch your vehicle on.

Note: The headlamps turn off after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door closes.

SWITCHING THE HEADLAMPS FOR DRIVING ON THE LEFT OR RIGHT-HAND SIDE OF THE ROAD

The headlamps are designed to support the left or right-hand side driving. You do not need to take any action.

ADJUSTING THE LEVEL OF THE HEADLAMPS



WARNING: Heavy objects in the vehicle can cause the headlights to dazzle and distract other road users. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

Exterior Lighting



WARNING: The light cone should always be adjusted to the load level of the vehicle to ensure that other road users are not dazzled.

You can adjust the level of the headlamp beams according to the vehicle load.



Scroll the switch up or down to adjust the level of headlamps.

Note: Set the control to zero when your vehicle is unloaded.

Note: Set the headlamp beams to give between 35–100 m (115–328 ft) of road surface illumination when your vehicle is partially or fully loaded.

HEADLAMP INDICATORS

Lamps On



Illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the parking lamps on.

Headlamp High Beam



Illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.

HEADLAMPS – TROUBLESHOOTING

HEADLAMPS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is there condensation in the headlamps?

- Headlamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

How much condensation is acceptable?

- The presence of a fine mist, for example no streaks, drip marks or large droplets. A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

How long does it take for the acceptable condensation to clear?

- Clearing time can take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Exterior Lighting

How much condensation is unacceptable?

- A water puddle inside the lamp. Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

What should I do if unacceptable condensation is present?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Why do my headlamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

- The battery saver turns the headlamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

AUTOLAMPS

WHAT ARE AUTOLAMPS



WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

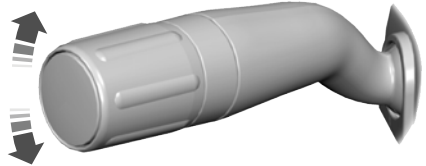
Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the windshield wipers operate.

AUTOLAMP SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Press **Headlamp Delay**.
5. Select a setting.

EXTERIOR LAMPS

USING THE TURN SIGNAL LAMPS



Push the lever up or down to switch the turn signal lamps on.

Set the lever to the middle position to switch the turn signal lamps off.

Note: Tap the lever up or down to make the turn signal lamps flash three times.

Turn Signal Lamp Indicator



It flashes when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

Note: An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.

SWITCHING THE PARKING LAMPS ON AND OFF

To switch both sides on or off:

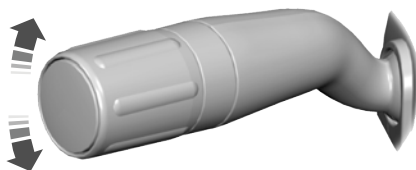
1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps position.
3. Set the lighting control to the off position to switch the parking lamps off.

Exterior Lighting

Note: Parking lamps could turn off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

To switch one side on or off:

1. Switch the ignition off.



2.  Push the lever up or down to switch the parking lamps on.
3. Move the lever back to a neutral position to switch the lamps off.

SWITCHING THE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS ON AND OFF



WARNING: The daytime running lamps system may not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

Daytime running lamps are always on unless you switch on the headlamps.

USING ALL WEATHER LAMPS



Press the button on the lighting control to switch the lamps on or off.

Note: The system turns off when your vehicle speed reaches approximately 75 km/h (47 mph).

Note: When your vehicle speed is lower than approximately 75 km/h (47 mph), the system turns on.

All Weather Lamps Indicator



It illuminates when all weather lamps are on.

USING THE REAR FOG LAMPS

To switch the lamps on or off:

1. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps, headlamps or autolamps position.

Note: You can only switch the rear fog lamps on when the low beam headlamps or the front fog lamps are on.

2.  Press the button on the lighting control to switch the rear fog lamps on or off.

Note: Only switch the rear fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

EXTERIOR LAMPS ON AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when you open the driver door and the exterior lamps are on.

Exterior Lighting

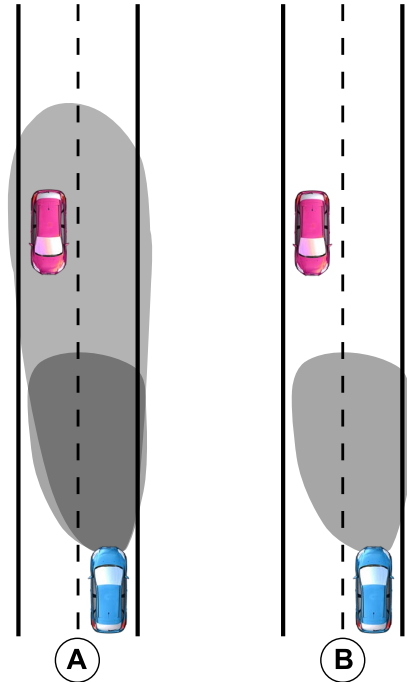
AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Automatic high beam control turns the high beams on if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off.

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.

Note: This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 548). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.



- A Without automatic high beam control.
- B With automatic high beam control.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

Exterior Lighting



WARNING: The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.



WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.



WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that you require high beams.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- You switch the rear fog lamps on.
- The ambient light level is high enough that you do not require high beams.

- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or a leading vehicle's tail lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

Note: *The deactivation speed may be lower on curves.*

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

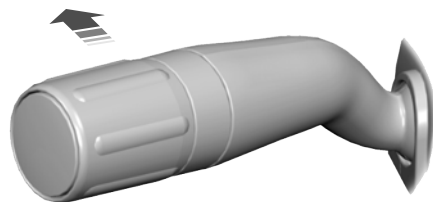
1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Switch **Auto High Beam** on or off.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates white to confirm when the system is ready to assist. Illuminates blue when the high beam is activated.

OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Exterior Lighting

Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

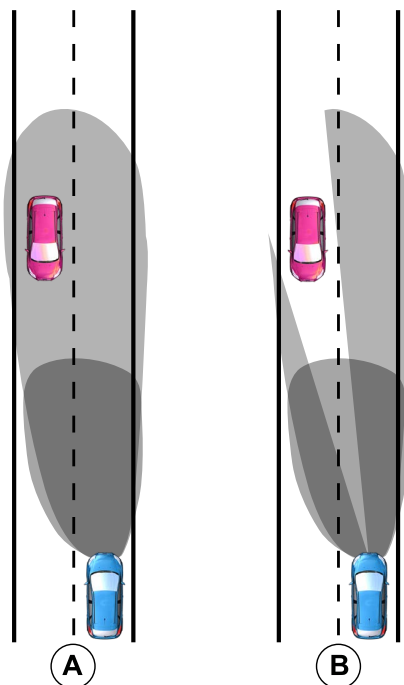
GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL

HOW DOES GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Glare free high beam control enhances visibility and minimizes glare for other road users.

Note: *This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 548). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*

Exterior Lighting



- A Without glare free high beam control.
- B With glare free high beam control.

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not adapt the lighting to avoid glare if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles such as guard rails.

WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.

WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

Exterior Lighting

The system adapts the lighting to avoid glare if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or rear lamps.

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- You switch the rear fog lamps on.
- The ambient light level is high enough.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

Note: *The deactivation speed is lower on curves.*

SWITCHING GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.

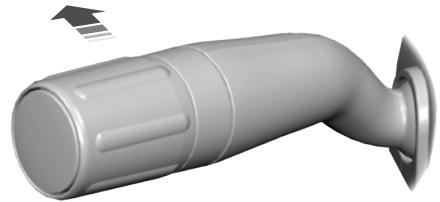
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Switch **Glare-Free Lighting** on or off.

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates white to confirm when the system is ready to assist. Illuminates blue when the high beam is activated.

OVERRIDING GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

Exterior Lighting

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING

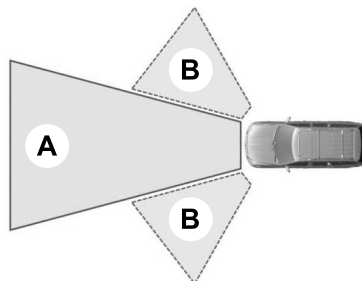
HOW DOES ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING WORK



WARNING: Inspect and replace the windshield wiper blades regularly to make sure the camera sensor has a clear view. The windshield wiper blades must be the correct length.

Speed Dependent Lamps

Provides additional light on the road depending on your vehicle speed and steering wheel input.



- A Standard low beam.
- B Additional lighting.

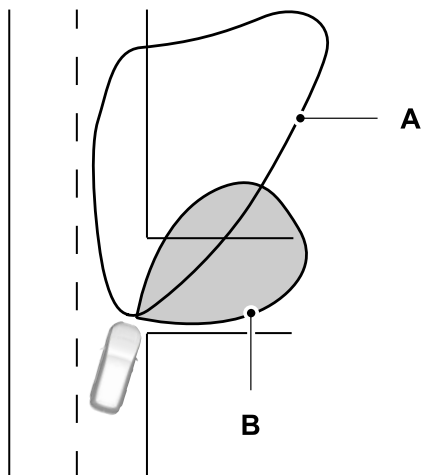
Static Bending Lamps

Illuminates the inside of a corner when you are turning the steering wheel or when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

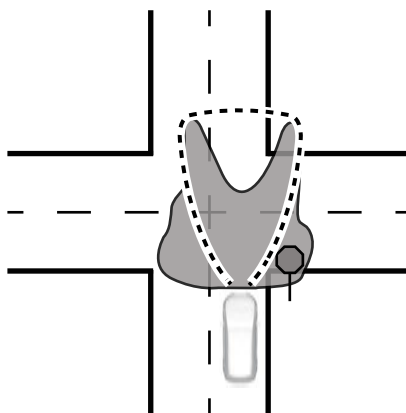
Exterior Lighting

Sign Based Lamps

Adapts when the front camera detects certain traffic signs.



- A Headlamp beam.
- B Static bending lamp beam.



Note: The camera only detects traffic signs if your vehicle speed is below 50 km/h (31 mph).

Exterior Lighting

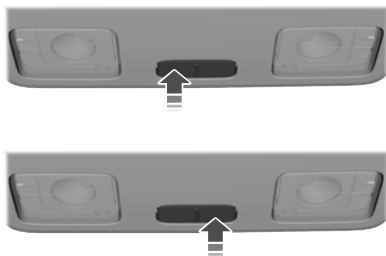
ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING – TROUBLESHOOTING

ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	Displays when the front camera sensor has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	Displays if the front camera sensor malfunctions. Wait a short period of time for the sensor to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Advanced front lighting features Temporarily unavailable See manual	Displays when adaptive front lighting malfunctions. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check adaptive headlamps See manual	Displays when adaptive front lighting malfunctions. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Interior Lighting

SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



Press the lamp lens to switch the office lamps on or off.

Press and hold the lamp lens to dim the office lamps.

SWITCHING THE FRONT INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



Note: Press the edge of the lamp lens to switch the front interior lamp off before switching the ignition off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

Office Lamps

Office lamps provide a bright lighting that allows you to work in your vehicle.

SWITCHING THE REAR INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF - BUS



The rear interior lamps may be above the rear seat or above the rear windows.



Press to switch the lamps on or off.

Interior Lighting

Note: If you switch the rear lamps on through the overhead console, you cannot switch them off with the rear lamp switch.

INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

WHAT IS THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

The interior lamp function switches the courtesy and door lamps on or off.

SWITCHING THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION ON AND OFF



When you set the switch to the middle position, the interior lamps turn on if:

- You open any door.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch the ignition off.

Note: If you switch the ignition off, the interior lamps could turn off after a short time to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

ADJUSTING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHTING BRIGHTNESS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Press **Interior**.
5. Press **Cockpit Illumination**.

6. Set your preferred setting.

AMBIENT LIGHTING

SWITCHING AMBIENT LIGHTING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle settings**.
3. Press **Ambient Light**.
4. Switch **Ambient Light** on or off.

ADJUSTING AMBIENT LIGHTING

Drag the slider left or right.

CARGO LAMPS

SWITCHING THE CARGO LAMPS ON AND OFF

The cargo lamps turn on automatically when a door is open.

The cargo lamps turn off after a short period of time to prevent the battery from running out of charge.

Interior Lighting

Super Bright Cargo Lamps



Press the button inside the cargo area to switch the cargo lamps on or off when the rear cargo door or the liftgate is open.

Note: The super bright cargo lamp is located in the roof above the rear cargo doors or on the inside of the liftgate depending on your vehicle options. The super bright cargo lamps illuminate the rear loading area of your vehicle.

If the cargo lamps turned off to prevent the battery from running out of charge or you switched them off by pressing the button, reset the switch before switching the cargo lamps on. See **Resetting the Cargo Lamp Switch** (page 122).

RESETTING THE CARGO LAMP SWITCH

To reset the switch, do one of the following:

- Lock or unlock a door.
- Open or close a front door.
- Switch the ignition on then off.

Windows

OPENING AND CLOSING THE WINDOWS - VEHICLES WITH: ONE-TOUCH OPEN AND CLOSE DRIVER WINDOW



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If an obstruction is detected, release the switch and reverse the window immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the power windows and could become trapped in a closing window. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

Note: The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

Driver Side One-Touch Open

Fully press the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

Driver Side One-Touch Close

Fully lift the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

Resetting Driver Side One-Touch Close

1. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the window control switch.
3. Lift the window control switch for one more second.
4. Release the window control switch.
5. Lift the window control switch again for one more second.

Note: Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE WINDOWS - VEHICLES WITH: ONE-TOUCH OPEN AND CLOSE FRONT WINDOWS



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Windows



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If an obstruction is detected, release the switch and reverse the window immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the power windows and could become trapped in a closing window. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

Note: *The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.*

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

One-Touch Open

Fully press the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Close

Fully lift the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

Resetting One-Touch Close

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.
2. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
3. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.

Note: *Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.*

GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

WHAT IS GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can use the remote control to operate the windows with the ignition off.

USING GLOBAL OPENING

1. Press and release the unlock button on the remote control.
2. Press and hold the unlock button on the remote control.
3. Release the button when the windows start to open.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global opening.

Note: *You can use global opening for a short period of time when you unlock your vehicle using the remote control.*

Windows

SWITCHING GLOBAL OPENING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Windows**.
4. Switch **Global Open** on or off.

USING GLOBAL CLOSING



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Press and hold the lock button on the remote control.
2. Release the button when the windows start to close.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global closing.

Note: Bounce-back is on during global closing. See **What Is Window Bounce-Back** (page 125).

SWITCHING GLOBAL CLOSING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Windows**.
4. Switch **Global Close** on or off.

WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

WHAT IS WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction when closing.

OVERRIDING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



WARNING: If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window twice until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Close the window a third time to the point of resistance. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually.

Note: The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.

Note: If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

RESETTING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



WARNING: Bounce-back is off until you reset the memory. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the switch.
3. Lift the switch again for one more second.

Windows

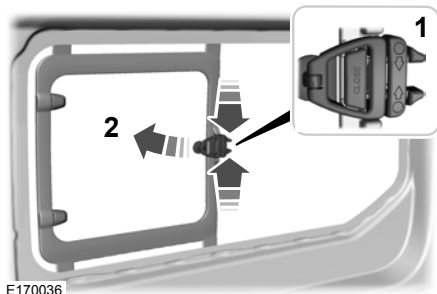
4. Release the switch.
5. Lift the switch again for one more second.

Note: Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

Note: If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE REAR QUARTER WINDOWS

Opening the Rear Quarter Windows



1. Press the unlock button to release the catch.

Note: Depending on the lock type fitted, you have to either press the unlock buttons together or down to release the catch.

2. Hold the catch and push the window open. Make sure the catch engages.

Note: There is an audible click when the catch engages.

Closing the Rear Quarter Windows

1. Hold and pull the catch to close the window.
2. Press the catch to engage the lock.

Note: There is an audible click when the lock engages.

Interior Mirror

INTERIOR MIRROR PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

MANUALLY DIMMING THE INTERIOR MIRROR - VEHICLES WITH: INTERIOR MIRROR

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

DIGITAL INTERIOR MIRROR - VEHICLES WITH: INTERIOR MIRROR WITH CAMERA DISPLAY

WHAT IS THE DIGITAL INTERIOR MIRROR

The digital interior mirror provides a normal rear view and a panoramic rear view in the mirror using a camera at the back of your vehicle.

DIGITAL INTERIOR MIRROR LIMITATIONS

The rear camera is on the inside of the rear window or outside the rear doors. The front camera is behind the windshield. Optimal system performance requires a clear view by the camera lens.

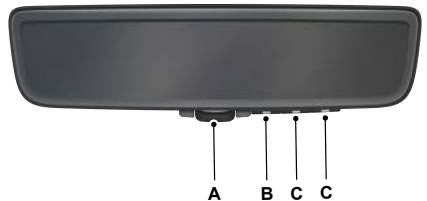
SWITCHING BETWEEN NORMAL VIEW AND CAMERA VIEW

Pull or push the tab below the mirror to change the view.



The symbol indicates that the mirror displays the camera view.

DIGITAL INTERIOR MIRROR SETTINGS



- A Tab.
- B Menu.
- C Adjustment controls.

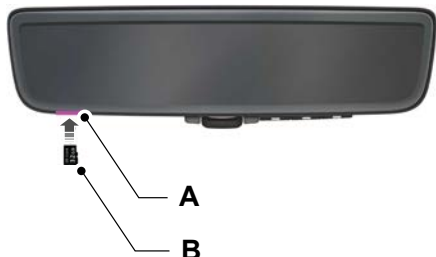
1. Start your vehicle.
2. Press the menu button to select any of the desired settings and modify them with the adjustment controls.

Note: Camera view is not available in the auto-dimming mirror position.

Dash Camera

When you turn the dash camera on, the mirror functions as a digital video recorder. Video recordings and pictures are stored on an SD card.

Interior Mirror



A SD card slot.

B SD card.

Note: The mirror requires a minimum of 32 GB U3 MicroSD card to record videos and take pictures.

Note: You must format the SD card to enable video recording with the built-in cameras.

Note: When the SD card is full, new recordings automatically overwrite older files unless the system detects an accident or manually saved data.

Recording Modes



Events Only: In this mode, you can record videos and take pictures when the vehicle is moving.

Note: Accidents are automatically recorded.



Drive Mode: In this mode, everything is recorded when the vehicle is moving, and you can manually save data.



Park Mode: In this mode, all park events are recorded.



The camera is recording.

Playback



WARNING: Do not watch recorded playbacks when the vehicle is in motion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can view your pictures and recordings in the mirror:



Park Event/Park Monitoring:

Videos recorded during an accident while the vehicle is parked.



Drive Event: Videos recorded during an accident while the vehicle is moving.



User Event: Manually saved video recordings.



Snapshot: Manually saved photos.



Drive: All available video recordings.

Interior Mirror

ReVu™ Companion App

You can adjust the mirror settings, download and view recorded data using the ReVu™ Companion App.

For more information scan here:

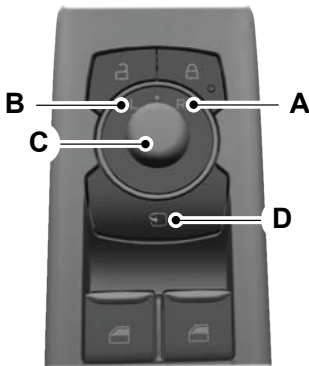


Exterior Mirrors

ADJUSTING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



- A Right-hand mirror position.
- B Left-hand mirror position.
- C Mirror adjustment control.
- D Power fold button.

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: AUTO FOLD EXTERIOR MIRRORS

The exterior mirrors fold when you lock your vehicle and unfold when you unlock your vehicle.

Note: This feature requires you to switch the exterior mirrors auto-fold on.



For tight parking conditions, press the control switch to fold the mirrors.

Press the control switch again to unfold the mirrors.

Note: Do not stop the mirrors midway through their movement. Wait until the mirrors stop moving and press the control switch again.

The left and right-hand mirrors move at different rates. For example, one mirror may stop while the other one continues to move. This is normal.

If you press the control switch to fold in the mirrors with auto-fold on, the mirrors do not unfold when you unlock your vehicle.

Note: The power folding mirrors operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Note: If you fold and unfold the mirrors several times within one minute, the power fold function may turn off to protect the motors from overheating.

Switching Auto-fold On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Mirrors**.
4. Switch **Autofold** on and off.

Loose Mirror

If you manually fold your power-folding mirrors, they may not work properly even after you reposition them. You need to reset them if:

- The mirrors vibrate when you drive.
- The mirrors feel loose.
- The mirrors do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.
- One of the mirrors is not in its normal driving position.

Exterior Mirrors

To reset the mirrors, perform the following steps:

1. By hand, fold or retract both mirrors.
2. Using the power folding/power telescoping mirror control switch, operate the mirrors until you hear an audible click.
3. Operate the power folding or power telescoping mirrors an additional 3 to 4 times to synchronize the mirrors.

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL FOLD EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Push the mirror toward the door window glass.

Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: POWER FOLD EXTERIOR MIRRORS



Press the button to fold the mirrors.

Press the button again to unfold the mirrors.

Note: *The power folding mirrors operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off.*

Note: *If you fold and unfold the mirrors several times within one minute, the power fold function may turn off to protect the motors from overheating.*

Note: *Do not manually fold or unfold power folding mirrors.*

Loose Mirror

If your power-folding mirrors are manually folded, they may not work properly, even after you re-position them. You need to reset them if:

- The mirrors vibrate when you drive.
- The mirrors feel loose.
- The mirrors do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.
- One of the mirrors is not in its normal driving position.

To reset the power-fold feature, use the power-folding mirror control to fold and unfold the mirrors. You may hear a loud noise as you reset the power-folding mirrors. This sound is normal. Repeat this process as needed each time the mirrors are manually folded.

Instrument Cluster

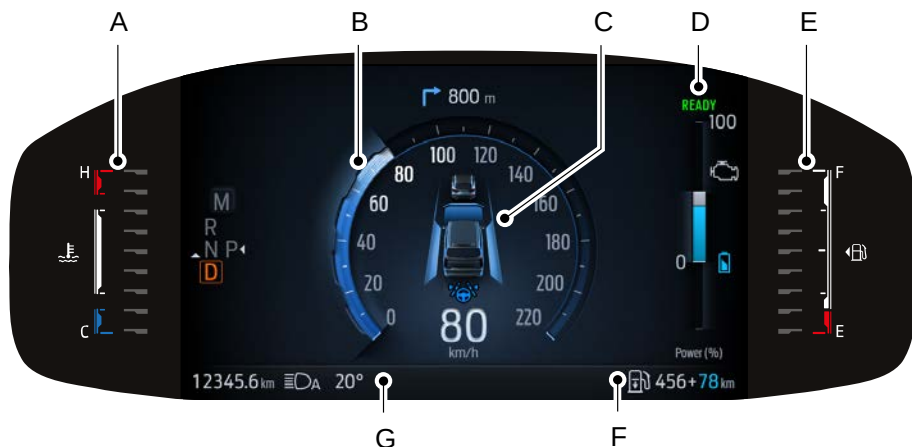
INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - DIESEL



- A Engine coolant temperature gauge.
- B Speedometer.
- C Instrument cluster display.
- D Tachometer.
- E Fuel gauge.
- F Distance to empty.
- G Information bar.

Instrument Cluster

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

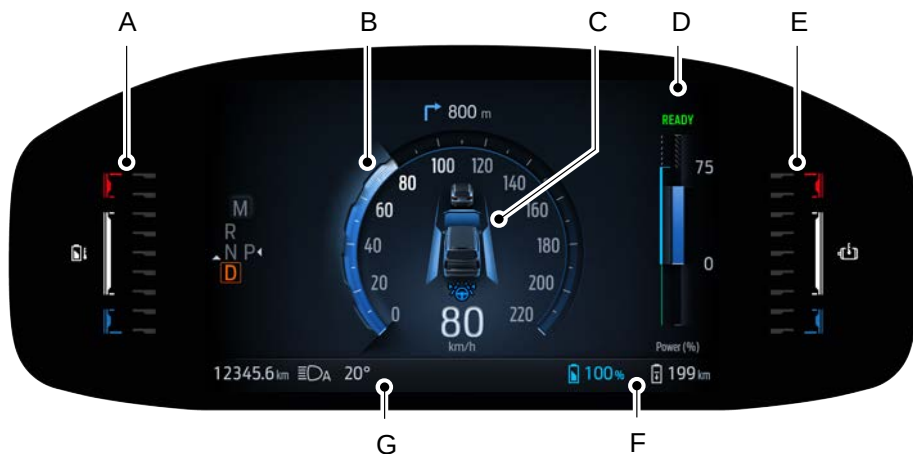


164022017

- A Engine coolant temperature gauge.
- B Speedometer.
- C Instrument cluster display.
- D Power gauge.
- E Fuel gauge.
- F Vehicle driving range.
- G Information bar.

Instrument Cluster

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



- A High voltage battery temperature gauge.
- B Speedometer.
- C Instrument cluster display.
- D Power gauge.
- E Electric motor temperature gauge.
- F Vehicle driving range.
- G Information bar.

TACHOMETER - DIESEL

Indicates the engine speed.

Instrument Cluster

POWER GAUGE - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

The power gauge displays power to the wheels when accelerating or maintaining speed. The high voltage battery power and engine power contributions are distinguished by color and added together to indicate total power to the wheels. When slowing down by lifting your foot off the accelerator pedal or pressing the brake, the gauge displays the power captured by the regenerative braking system and returned to the high voltage battery.

POWER GAUGE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

The Power Gauge displays power to the wheels when accelerating or maintaining speed. When slowing down by lifting your foot off the accelerator pedal or pressing the brake, the gauge displays the power captured by the regenerative braking system and returned to the high voltage battery.

What is Power Availability Gauge

Displays total available vehicle power. Available power may be limited due to temperature or low battery state of charge. See **Maximizing Your Driving Range** (page 425).

SPEEDOMETER

Indicates the vehicle speed.

FUEL GAUGE

WHAT IS THE FUEL GAUGE

Indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

FUEL GAUGE LIMITATIONS

The fuel gauge may not provide an accurate reading when your vehicle is on an incline.

LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

WHAT IS THE LOW FUEL REMINDER

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 80 km (50 mi), 40 km (25 mi), 20 km (10 mi) and 0 km (0 mi).

Note: *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

WHAT IS DISTANCE TO EMPTY

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern can cause the value to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

Instrument Cluster

VEHICLE RANGE DISPLAY

Displays the approximate range your vehicle can travel with the energy currently onboard. Estimates vary based on the energy used when driving.

Changes in driving pattern can cause the values to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

The amount of energy being used when driving is affected by such as:

- Mild or aggressive acceleration or braking.
- Your vehicle's speed.
- Use of accessories, such as climate control.
- Ambient temperature and weather conditions.
- Driving in a city or on a highway.
- Driving on hilly road conditions.
- Towing.

Note: *It is normal for vehicle range estimates to vary due to changes in average energy usage. This could cause different range estimates each time you fully charge your battery or fill your tank.*

Note: *Electric range is lower in cold temperatures due to reduced energy capacity in the high voltage battery. Set a departure time and cabin temperature to maintain battery temperature for best range and performance. See **What is a Hybrid Electric Vehicle** (page 229).*

Gasoline Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank.

Electric Range

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on electric power only with the engine off.

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY TEMPERATURE GAUGE

Displays the high voltage battery temperature.

When the battery temperature is outside the normal range, vehicle performance could be reduced and a corresponding message could display.

- When the temperature is too cold, continue driving to warm the system and improve performance.
- When the temperature is too hot, performance could be reduced to cool the system.

ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE

Indicates the engine coolant temperature.

ELECTRIC MOTOR TEMPERATURE GAUGE

Displays electric motor temperature.

When the electric motor temperature is outside the normal range, vehicle performance could be reduced and a corresponding message could display.

- When the temperature is too cold, continue driving to warm the system and improve performance.
- When the temperature is too hot, performance could be reduced to cool the system.

Instrument Cluster

WHAT IS THE INFORMATION BAR

The information bar displays information related to the ambient air temperature, odometer, compass, indicators and warning lamps.

WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

Warning lamps alert you to a vehicle condition that could become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

Airbag Warning Lamp



If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Blind Spot Information System And Cross Traffic Alert Warning Lamp



If the system malfunctions, the warning lamp illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the information display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Door Ajar Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

Electric Park Brake Warning Lamp



It illuminates or flashes yellow when the electric parking brake requires service.



Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, this indicates that the engine is overheating. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Engine Oil Pressure Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on. If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. If the oil level is sufficient, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Instrument Cluster

Engine Warning Lamps



If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop.

Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp



It illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

Fuel Filter Service Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates there is excess water in the fuel filter.

You should drain water from the fuel filter water trap whenever the warning lamp illuminates or a message appears in the information display.

High Voltage Battery



It illuminates white under normal conditions. If it illuminates amber, then the battery is low on charge.

Ignition Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on. If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Limited Performance Warning Lamp



It illuminates if your vehicle has limited performance due to a cold or hot battery. Drive with caution. Keep your vehicle connected to a charging system when not in use to maintain battery temperature.

Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on. If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Parking Brake Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Powertrain Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Instrument Cluster

Pre-Collision Assist Warning Lamp



It illuminates if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you. It could illuminate red if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small. It illuminates amber when you switch the system off or if the system is not available.

Selective Catalytic Reductant System Warning Lamp



The warning lamp illuminates if the system detects that the fluid level is low or if there is a system malfunction. If the warning lamp illuminates, the information display messages give you an indication whether the concern is fluid related or if there is a selective catalytic reductant system malfunction. If the warning lamp illuminates when your vehicle is moving, and the fluid is at a sufficient level, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

Stop Safely Warning Lamp



It illuminates if an electrical component requires service or a failure that causes your vehicle to shut down or enter into a limited operating mode.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Warning Lamp



It illuminates if the tire pressure in one or more tires is below the correct tire pressure. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or flashes when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Vehicle Plugged In Warning Lamp



It illuminates when your vehicle is plugged in.

WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

Indicators notify you of various features that are active on your vehicle.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

Adaptive Cruise Control Indicator



It illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. See **Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 346).

Auto-Start-Stop Indicators



It illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action. It illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

Instrument Cluster

Automatic High Beam Control On Indicator



It illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

Blind Spot Information System Indicator



When the system detects a vehicle, the indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the direction indicator on for that side of your vehicle, the indicator flashes.

Cross Traffic Alert Indicator



When the system detects an approaching vehicle a tone sounds, the indicator illuminates and arrows appear in the instrument cluster display, or the Sync display to show which side the approaching vehicle is coming from.

Cruise Control Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

Direction Indicator



It flashes when you switch the direction indicators on.

Eco Mode Indicator



It illuminates when the drive mode is selected.

Front Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

Glow Plug Indicator



If it illuminates, wait until it turns off before starting.

Hazard Flasher Indicator



It flashes when you switch the hazard flashers on.

High Beam Headlamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.

Lamps On Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the side and rear lamps on.

Lane Keeping Aid Indicator



It illuminates in the information display when you switch the system on and Aid Mode or Alert and Aid Mode are selected.

Mud/Ruts Mode Indicator



It illuminates when the drive mode is selected.

One Pedal Drive Indicator



It illuminates when one pedal drive is active. See **One Pedal Drive** (page 364).

Ready to Drive Indicator



It illuminates when you have switched on your vehicle and it is ready to drive. A corresponding message may appear stating ready to drive.

Instrument Cluster

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

Shift Indicator



It illuminates to advise you that shifting to a higher or lower gear may give better performance,



fuel economy or lower emissions.

Slippery Mode Indicator



It illuminates when the drive mode is selected.

Stability Control and Traction Control Indicator



It flashes during operation. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Tow/Haul Mode Indicator



It illuminates when the drive mode is selected.

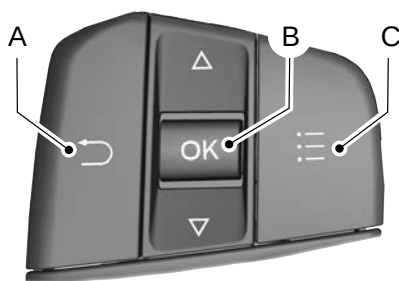
Instrument Cluster Display

USING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY CONTROLS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

The controls are on the steering wheel.



- A Return button.
- B OK button.
- C Menu button.

Return Button

Press to go back or exit a menu.

OK Button

Press to make a selection.

Toggle Buttons

Press the toggle up or down button to scroll through menu items.

Status Indicator



Menu items with a check box indicate a feature's status. A check in the box indicates the feature is on, and unchecked indicates the feature is off.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU

Depending on your vehicle options, some menu items can appear different or not at all.

Note: *For your safety, some features are speed-dependent and could be unavailable when your vehicle is above a certain speed.*

Menu Item
MyView
Trip/Fuel
Status Information
Vehicle Maintenance
Trip Computer
Audio
Phone
Navigation
Settings

Instrument Cluster Display

CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **MyView**.
3. Select **Configure MyView**.
4. Use the controls on the steering wheel to highlight a screen to add.
5. Press the **OK** button.

Note: The amount of screens you can add is limited. If the selected screen does not appear, you must deselect screens from the menu.

Configure MyView
Power Distribution
Trailer Light Status
Battery Charge
Now Playing
Navigation
Trip Computer 1
Trip Computer 2
This Trip
Electric Economy
Fuel Economy
EV Coach
Tyre Pressure

Note: Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if items are optional.

Configuring Gauges

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Display**.
4. Select **Right Gauge**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

FUEL ECONOMY DISPLAY - DIESEL

An instant fuel economy gauge is provided along with average fuel economy. Average fuel economy is continuously averaged since the last reset.

Note: Press and hold the **OK** button on the controls on the steering wheel to reset your average fuel economy.

FUEL ECONOMY DISPLAY - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

This display comes with an instant fuel economy gauge, along with the average fuel economy. The gauge continuously averages the fuel economy since your last reset.

For plug-in hybrid vehicles, the system includes both the electric only and the hybrid operation in the calculation. More electric only driving results in a greater average fuel economy.

When the gasoline engine is off, changes from the instant fuel economy gauge to an electric driving message.

Note: Press and hold the **OK** button on the controls on the steering wheel to reset your average fuel economy.

Instrument Cluster Display

Note: Fuel economy display is a selectable screen. See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display** (page 143). See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display** (page 143).

EV COACH

EV coach can help you get the most out of your vehicle's electric driving capabilities.

Note: EV coach is a selectable screen. See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display** (page 143).

When you are accelerating or maintaining speed you see a blue or white solid bar indicating vehicle power. You may also see a blue rectangular box which shows the power level at which the engine turns on.

- When the power level is within the box, the color of the bar is blue. This means you are in electric operation and the engine is off.
- When the power level is outside of the box, the color of the bar is white. This means you are in hybrid operation with a combination of the electric motor and the engine providing vehicle power.

When you are decelerating with either your foot off the accelerator pedal or on the brake pedal, a green or white solid bar displays indicating the power being used to slow down your vehicle. You may also see a green rectangular box which shows the amount of power that can be recaptured by the regenerative braking system and returned to the high voltage battery.

- When the power level is within the box, the color of the bar is green. This means that the regenerative braking system is being used to efficiently slow your vehicle down and return the maximum percentage of energy to the high voltage battery.
- When the power level is outside of the box, the color of the bar is white. This means both the regenerative braking system and conventional braking system are being used.

ELECTRIC ECONOMY

This screen shows your average driving distance per kilowatt-hour of electricity used on your plug-in hybrid vehicle. The value is calculated only when your available electric range is being used and the gasoline engine is off.

Distance per full charge is also shown. This is an estimate of the electric range you would have if you plugged in and fully charged your vehicle right now. The higher your electric economy, the higher your distance per full charge.

Your electric economy is affected by your driving style and route, climate control use, outside temperature and other factors. Best economy is achieved with mild to moderate acceleration and braking, moderate speeds and low climate control usage.

Note: Electric economy is a selectable screen. See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display** (page 143).

Instrument Cluster Display

BATTERY CHARGE

Displays a high voltage battery gauge and an estimate of available electric driving range. The high voltage battery gauge displays the total amount of charge associated with your available electric only driving range. A full fill represents the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge (plugging your vehicle in). When the fill reaches empty the powertrain system will automatically switch to hybrid operation.

BRAKE COACH

The brake coach appears after your vehicle has come to a stop. It coaches you to brake in a manner that maximizes the amount of energy returned through the regenerative braking system.

The percent displayed indicates the regenerative braking efficiency, with 100% representing the maximum amount of energy recovered.

Note: *While regenerative braking works in all drive modes, brake coach display may not be available in all drive modes.*

You can switch brake coach on or off in the settings menu. See **Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu** (page 142).

TRIP SUMMARY

The trip summary displays upon shutting off your vehicle. The values are cumulative since you last started your vehicle.

The information shown is the same as the This Trip screen. See **Trip Data** (page 147).

VEHICLE CHARGING STATUS

The vehicle charge status displays when you switch off your vehicle and when you switch on your vehicle when plugged in. Charging status includes the charge start or charge end time as appropriate. You can modify your charge settings through the touchscreen.

Personalized Settings

CHANGING THE LANGUAGE

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Language**.
4. Press a setting.

Note: *Available languages vary by region.*

CHANGING THE MEASUREMENT UNIT

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Measurement Unit**.
4. Press a setting.

CHANGING THE TEMPERATURE UNIT

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Temperature unit**.
4. Press a setting.

CHANGING THE TIRE PRESSURE UNIT

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Tyre Pressure Unit**.
4. Press a setting.

Trip Computer

ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER

Note: *This trip is a selectable screen. See **Accessing the Trip Computer** (page 147).*

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **MyView**.
3. Select **Configure MyView**.
4. Use the control on the steering wheel to navigate the menu. See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display** (page 143).

RESETTING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Use the instrument cluster display controls to navigate the home screen.
2. Select the trip screen you want to reset.
3. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

TRIP DATA

Trip 1 and 2

Provides trip timer, trip average fuel economy and total trip distance traveled. For hybrid vehicles, the trip also shows the distance traveled on electric power only with the engine off.

Note: *Trip 1 and 2 are selectable screens. See **Accessing the Trip Computer** (page 147).*

This Trip

Provides trip timer, trip average fuel economy, total trip distance traveled, and distance traveled on electric power only with the engine off. If the gasoline engine has not turned on during the trip then trip average fuel economy is not shown. This Trip resets each time you start your vehicle.

Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

WHAT IS REMOTE START

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle and therefore to heat or cool the interior to a predetermined temperature.

REMOTE START LIMITATIONS - DIESEL, PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Remote start does not work if:

- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- Remote start is not enabled.
- The ignition is on.

Note: Do not use remote start if your fuel level is low.

REMOTE START LIMITATIONS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Remote start does not work if:

- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- Remote start is not enabled.
- The vehicle is switched on.
- The vehicle battery is below the minimum operating voltage.

ENABLING REMOTE START

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Switch **Remote Start** on or off.

Note: To remote start with FordPass, make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Connecting FordPass to the Modem** (page 547).

REMOTELY STARTING AND STOPPING THE VEHICLE - DIESEL, PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the FordPass app to start the vehicle.

- The vehicle locks the doors.
- The turn signal lamps flash twice.
- The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.
- The horn sounds if the system fails to start.
- All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Note: You may have to wait a short period of time before remotely starting the vehicle after the vehicle stops running.

The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started it. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and drive your vehicle.

A maximum of two remote starts are allowed. After that you need to turn the ignition on and off before you can use remote start again.

Use the FordPass app to switch the vehicle off.

Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

REMOTELY STARTING AND STOPPING THE VEHICLE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Use the FordPass App to start the vehicle.

Note: The turn signal lamps flash twice.

Note: The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.

Note: The horn sounds if the system fails to start.

Note: All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Note: You may have to wait a short period of time before remotely starting the vehicle after the vehicle stops running.

Note: The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started it. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the vehicle on and drive your vehicle.

Note: A maximum of two remote starts, or one remote start with an extension are allowed. To reset the restart procedure switch the vehicle on, then off.

Note: If your vehicle is plugged in during remote start it uses energy from your charging source.

Use the FordPass App to switch the vehicle off.

REMOTE START SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED STEERING WHEEL

Climate Control Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Climate Control**.
5. Press a setting.

Note: If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C (72°F).

Note: If you select **Last Settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.

Note: You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Note: When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.

Heated Seat Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Seats**.
5. Press a setting.

Note: If you switch the heated seat settings to **Auto**, the heated seats turn on during cold weather.

Note: You cannot adjust the heated seat settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Duration**.
5. Press a setting.

Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

REMOTE START SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED STEERING WHEEL

Climate Control Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Climate Control**.
5. Press a setting.

Note: If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C (72°F).

Note: If you select **Last Settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.

Note: You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Note: When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.

Heated Seat and Steering Wheel Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Seats and Steering Wheel**.
5. Press a setting.

Note: If you switch the heated seat and steering wheel settings to **Auto**, the heated seats and steering wheel turn on during cold weather.

Note: You cannot adjust the heated seat and steering wheel settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Duration**.
5. Press a setting.

Climate Control - Vehicles Without: Air Conditioning

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.

SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch the windshield air vents on.



Make sure that the instrument panel air vents are switched off.



Make sure that the footwell air vents are switched off.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: You can also press the button on the instrument panel to switch the maximum defrost on or off.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: You can also press the button on the instrument panel to switch the maximum defrost on or off.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

Climate Control - Vehicles Without: Air Conditioning

Note: The heated rear window also turns on when you select maximum defrost.

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Press the button to set the blower motor speed.



Slide the control to set the blower motor speed.

Note: You can press + or - to set the blower motor speed.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button to clear the heated mirror of thin ice and fog. The system turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED REAR WINDOW

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on. See **Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off** (page 163).

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Press the temperature control to access the temperature settings.



Slide the control to set the temperature.

Note: You can press + or - to set the temperature.

Climate Control - Vehicles Without: Air Conditioning

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest speed setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.
3. Direct air to the footwell air vents.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.
3. Direct air to the footwell air vents.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.
3. Direct air to the instrument panel air vents.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Direct air to the instrument panel and windshield air vents.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer.
3. Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest setting.
4. Direct air toward the side windows.

Climate Control - Vehicles Without: Air Conditioning

5. Close the instrument panel air vents.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.

SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Note: Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

Note: To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.

SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch the windshield air vents on.



Make sure that the instrument panel air vents are switched off.



Make sure that the footwell air vents are switched off.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: You can also press the button on the instrument panel to switch the maximum defrost on or off.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: You can also press the button on the instrument panel to switch the maximum defrost on or off.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

Note: The heated rear window and air conditioning also turn on when you select maximum defrost.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

Note: When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

Note: In certain conditions, for example, cold weather, maximum cooling may not activate or could run slow when switched on. This helps reduce power consumption from the battery.

SWITCHING THE ELECTRIC HEATER ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button to switch the electric heater on or off.

Note: The default setting is on.

Note: Disabling the system helps maximize your driving range.

Note: The system does not work in some climate control modes.

Note: This button does not switch off the climate control system.

Note: In certain conditions, for example warm weather, the system could not activate or could run with reduced performance when switched on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED WINDSHIELD ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)

Note: Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Press the button to set the blower motor speed.



Slide the control to set the blower motor speed.

Note: You can press + or - to set the blower motor speed.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button to clear the heated mirror of thin ice and fog. The system turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED REAR WINDOW

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on. See **Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off** (page 163).

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Press the temperature controls on either side of the climate control to set the temperature for that side.



Slide the control to set the temperature.

Note: You can press + or - to set the temperature.

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

AUTO MODE

SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

AUTO MODE INDICATORS

The indicators are on the Auto Mode button.

Auto Mode Indicator Status	Description
One indicator illuminated.	The blower motor speed is reduced. Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor. This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior.
Two indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is moderate.
Three indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is increased. Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior. This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)

SWITCHING DUAL MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

Note: When dual mode is off, setting the temperature using the driver side controls, sets the temperature for both sides.

Note: Setting the temperature using the passenger side controls, sets the passenger temperature and switches dual mode on.

DRIVER FOCUSED MODE

HOW DOES DRIVER FOCUSED MODE WORK

When active, driver focused mode automatically shuts off the floor duct on the front passenger side when the front passenger occupancy seat sensor detects no one is on the front passenger seat.

DRIVER FOCUSED MODE LIMITATIONS

The system does not function in the following conditions:

- The outside ambient temperature is -10°C (14.0°F) or less.
- Defrost or Max Defrost mode is selected.
- Any of the required sensor readings are faulty or disabled.

SWITCHING DRIVER FOCUSED MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.

Press **Driver Focused**.

When active, driver focused mode switches off when any of the following occur:

- You switch it off in the touchscreen.
- You switch dual mode on.
- You adjust the passenger temperature.
- You adjust the passenger heated seat settings.

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS - DIESEL, PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)

Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.
- If you press **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.
- If you press **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press **MAX A/C**.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

General Hints

- Use of the climate system will reduce your vehicles driving range. Conserve battery charge by using climate control features when necessary.
- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)

Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.
- If you press **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. The blower motor speed may reduce until the air warms.
- If you press **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

Press **MAX A/C**.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press **AUTO**.

2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.

SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Note: Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

Note: To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.

SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch the windshield air vents on.



Make sure that the instrument panel air vents are switched off.



Make sure that the footwell air vents are switched off.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: You can also press the button on the instrument panel to switch the maximum defrost on or off.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: You can also press the button on the instrument panel to switch the maximum defrost on or off.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

Note: The heated rear window and air conditioning also turn on when you select maximum defrost.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

Note: When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

Note: In certain conditions, for example, cold weather, maximum cooling may not activate or could run slow when switched on. This helps reduce power consumption from the battery.

SWITCHING THE ELECTRIC HEATER ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button to switch the electric heater on or off.

Note: The default setting is on.

Note: Disabling the system helps maximize your driving range.

Note: The system does not work in some climate control modes.

Note: This button does not switch off the climate control system.

Note: In certain conditions, for example warm weather, the system could not activate or could run with reduced performance when switched on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED WINDSHIELD ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

Note: Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Press the button to set the blower motor speed.



Slide the control to set the blower motor speed.

Note: You can press + or - to set the blower motor speed.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button to clear the heated mirror of thin ice and fog. The system turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED REAR WINDOW

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on. See **Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off** (page 163).

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Press the temperature control to access the temperature settings.



Slide the control to set the temperature.

Note: You can press + or - to set the temperature.

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

AUTO MODE

SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

AUTO MODE INDICATORS

The indicators are on the Auto Mode button.

Auto Mode Indicator Status	Description
One indicator illuminated.	The blower motor speed is reduced. Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor. This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior.
Two indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is moderate.
Three indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is increased. Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior. This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor.

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS - DIESEL, PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.
- If you press **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.
- If you press **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press **AUTO**.

2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press **MAX A/C**.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

General Hints

- Use of the climate system will reduce your vehicles driving range. Conserve battery charge by using climate control features when necessary.
- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.
- If you press **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. The blower motor speed may reduce until the air warms.
- If you press **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

Press **MAX A/C**.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.

SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Note: Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

Note: To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.

SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch the windshield air vents on.



Make sure that the instrument panel air vents are switched off.



Make sure that the footwell air vents are switched off.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: You can also press the button on the instrument panel to switch the maximum defrost on or off.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: You can also press the button on the instrument panel to switch the maximum defrost on or off.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

Note: The heated rear window and air conditioning also turn on when you select maximum defrost.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

Note: When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

Note: In certain conditions, for example, cold weather, maximum cooling may not activate or could run slow when switched on. This helps reduce power consumption from the battery.

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Press the button to set the blower motor speed.



Slide the control to set the blower motor speed.

Note: You can press + or - to set the blower motor speed.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button to clear the heated mirror of thin ice and fog. The system turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED REAR WINDOW

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on. See **Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off** (page 163).

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Press the temperature control to access the temperature settings.



Slide the control to set the temperature.

Note: You can press **+** or **-** to set the temperature.

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest speed setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.
3. Direct air to the footwell air vents.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.
3. Direct air to the footwell air vents.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press **MAX A/C**.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.
3. Direct air to the instrument panel air vents.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Direct air to the instrument panel and windshield air vents.
2. Press and release **A/C**.
3. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer.
4. Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest setting.
5. Direct air toward the side windows.
6. Close the instrument panel air vents.

Rear Passenger Climate Control

IDENTIFYING THE REAR PASSENGER CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL



Note: Depending on your vehicle option package, the controls could look different from what you see here.

IDENTIFYING THE REAR PASSENGER CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL TEMPERATURE CONTROL



Note: Depending on your vehicle option package, the controls may look different from what you see here.

SWITCHING THE REAR PASSENGER CLIMATE CONTROLS ON AND OFF

On the rear passenger climate control unit



Press the button.

On the touchscreen

1.  Press the button to activate the selection screen.
2. Select **Rear**.
3.  Press the button.



Press the button on the touchscreen to lock the rear passenger climate control unit.

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED

On the rear passenger climate control unit



Turn the control to adjust the volume of air circulated in the rear passenger compartment.

On the touchscreen

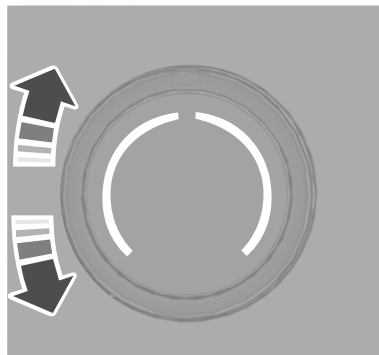
1.  Press the button to activate the selection screen.
2. Select **Rear**.

Rear Passenger Climate Control

3.  Slide the control to adjust the volume of air circulated in the rear passenger compartment.

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

On the rear passenger climate control unit



Turn the control.

On the touchscreen

1.  Press the button to activate the selection screen.
2. Select **Rear**.
3.  Slide the control to set the temperature.

Note: You can press **+** or **-** to set the temperature.

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing the flow of air is only controllable on the rear passenger climate control panel

Directing Air to the Overhead Air Vents



When you direct air to the overhead air vents, the system distributes cold air.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



When you direct air to the footwell air vents, the system distributes hot air.

Directing Air to the Overhead and Footwell Air Vents



When you direct air to the overhead and footwell air vents, the system distributes warm air.

REAR AUTO MODE

SWITCHING REAR AUTO MODE ON AND OFF

On the rear passenger climate control unit



Press the button.

On the touchscreen

1.  Press the button to activate the selection screen.
2. Select **Rear**.

Rear Passenger Climate Control

3.  Press the button.

REAR PASSENGER CLIMATE CONTROL INDICATORS

-  When illuminated, you can only operate the rear passenger settings through the front controls.

Auxiliary Heater - LHD

WHAT IS THE AUXILIARY HEATER

The system is designed to reduce the time needed to heat the engine when it is running. It turns on or off depending on the outside air temperature and the coolant temperature.

The system warms the engine and the vehicle interior. It uses fuel from the vehicle fuel tank.

AUXILIARY HEATER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: We recommend that you have a qualified technician check and repair the heater system after a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the auxiliary heater at fuel filling stations or near sources of combustible vapors, dust or in enclosed spaces. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: *The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.*

Note: *Make sure the heater exhaust outlet, in front of the right-hand front tire, is free from snow, ice, mud and any other blockages to avoid issues with the heater operation.*

Note: *When the system is on, exhaust fumes come from under your vehicle. This is normal.*

Note: *If the heater is in the process of stopping, excess fuel in the heater burns out and there is some heat, exhaust and noise.*

SWITCHING THE AUXILIARY HEATER ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **Aux Heater** on or off.

AUXILIARY HEATER INDICATORS

Secondary Interior Heating System Active Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

Parking Heater - LHD

WHAT IS THE PARKING HEATER

The system is designed to provide heat when your vehicle is parked.

The system assists the engine to reach operating temperature sooner. It uses fuel from the vehicle fuel tank.

The system keeps the windshield clear of thin ice and helps prevent condensation.

PARKING HEATER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: We recommend that you have a qualified technician check and repair the heater system after a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the parking heater at fuel filling stations or near sources of combustible vapors, dust or in enclosed spaces. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: Make sure the heater exhaust outlet in front of the right-hand front tire is free from snow, ice, mud and any other blockages to avoid issues with heater operation.

Note: If the heater is in the process of stopping, excess fuel in the heater burns out and there is some heat, exhaust and noise.

Note: When the system is on, exhaust fumes come from under your vehicle. This is normal.

PARKING HEATER LIMITATIONS

The system only operates when your vehicle is stationary with the engine off.

The system does not operate in any of the following conditions:

- The battery charge level is low.
- The fuel level is low.
- The outside temperature is too high.

The system may not correctly operate when your vehicle is parked on a steep slope.

PARKING HEATER SETTINGS

SWITCHING CONTINUE HEAT ON

When you switch the ignition off, the heater starts or continues running if conditions permit for up to 30 minutes.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Park Heater**.
4. Switch **Continue Heat** on or off.

Note: You can use this mode to maintain a warm cabin after you switch the ignition off. After the heater completes this mode, the checkbox in the touchscreen resets to unchecked.

SETTING THE PARKING HEATER TIMER

The system has three different modes that you can set.

Single Time

Allows you to set one heating cycle for a specific day. If conditions permit, the parking heater starts up to 40 minutes prior to the set date and time.

Parking Heater - LHD

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Park Heater**.
4. Press **Heater Programming**.
5. Press **Single Time**.
6. Set the date and time you prefer.
7. Switch **Activate** on or off.

Note: The date and time must be set before you can activate this mode.

Note: The time and date on your vehicle clock must be correctly set.

Recurring Time One

Allows you to program a heating cycle for each day of the week. The time remains stored and the system warms up your vehicle prior to the programmed departure times.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Park Heater**.
4. Press **Heater Programming**.
5. Press **Recurring Time One**.
6. Set the time and day of the week you prefer.
7. Switch **Activate** on or off.

Note: The time and date on your vehicle clock must be correctly set.

Recurring Time Two

Allows you to program a second heating cycle for each day of the week. The time remains stored and the system warms up your vehicle prior to the programmed departure times.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Park Heater**.
4. Press **Heater Programming**.
5. Press **Recurring Time Two**.
6. Set the time and day of the week you prefer.
7. Switch **Activate** on or off.

Note: The time and date on your vehicle clock must be correctly set.

SWITCHING THE PARKING HEATER ON AND OFF WITH THE REMOTE CONTROL

The parking heater transmitter allows you to remotely request the heater to start and run for up to 30 minutes or to stop all heater modes.

To start the heater, press and hold the **ON** or **HEAT** button on the transmitter until a green LED light illuminates on the transmitter.

To stop the heater, press and hold the **OFF** button on the transmitter until a red LED light illuminates on the transmitter. This applies only for the heater mode running at the present time, so future timer settings or future continue heat settings do not disable.

Note: Up to three transmitters can be paired to your vehicle.

Note: Electronic devices that operate in the same frequency may affect the range of the transmitter.

Parking Heater - LHD

PARKING HEATER REMOTE CONTROL INDICATORS

Transmitter LED	Description
Green	The transmitter sent a radio signal.
Flashing green	The transmitter sent a radio signal, but the heater did not receive the signal.
Red	The transmitter sent a radio signal.
Flashing red	The transmitter sent a radio signal, but the heater did not receive the signal.

Note: *The LED light on the remote transmitter does not indicate the actual status of the heater. The light does not guarantee the heater received a signal to start or stop.*



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

CHANGING THE PARKING HEATER REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY



WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.



WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



CAUTION: The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.

The remote control uses one three-volt lithium battery CR11108 or equivalent.



1. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver or coin, to unscrew and remove the battery cover.

Parking Heater - LHD



2. Remove the battery.
3. Install a new battery with the **+** facing upward.
4. Replace the battery cover.

PARKING HEATER – TROUBLESHOOTING

PARKING HEATER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Park heater not started Low fuel level	Displays if the fuel level is too low.
Park heater not started Low battery state of charge	Displays if the battery is low or has no charge.
Park heater not started Outside temperature too high	Displays if the outside temperature is too high.
Park heater not started Vehicle not started over 7 days	If the vehicle has not been started in seven days or more before a programmed start, the timer is deleted and must be reset.

Interior Air Quality

WHAT IS THE CABIN AIR FILTER

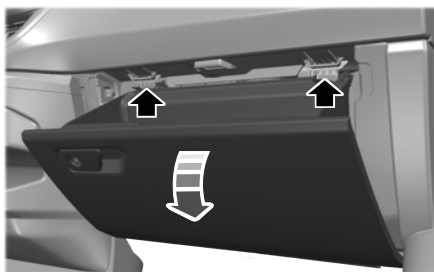
The cabin air filter improves the quality of air in your vehicle by trapping dust, pollen and other particles.

REPLACING THE CABIN AIR FILTER

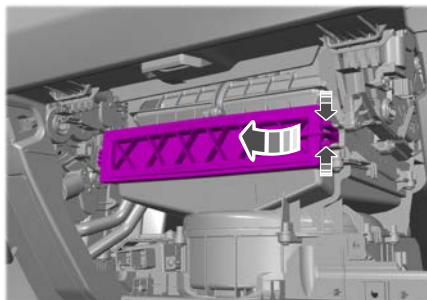
Replace the filter at regular intervals.

The cabin air filter is behind the glove compartment.

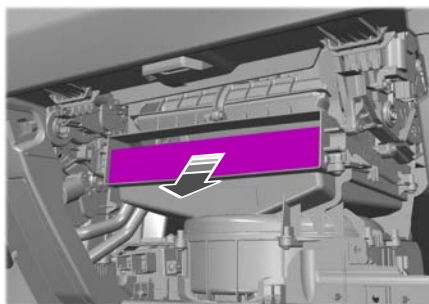
To access the cabin air filter:



1. Open the glove compartment.



2. Pinch the tab on the side of the air filter cover.
3. Open the cover.



4. Pull the cabin air filter toward you to remove it.

Note: Make sure you have a cabin air filter installed at all times. This prevents foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.

Interior Air Quality

Note: *Using an aftermarket cabin air filter could reduce cabin air filtration and climate control performance.*

Front Seats

FRONT SEAT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.



WARNING: Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.

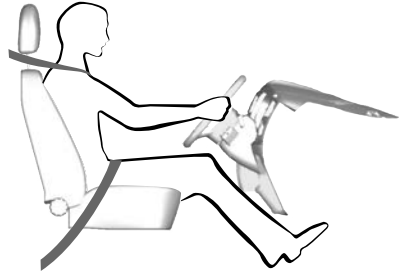


WARNING: Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degrees from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm (10 in) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.

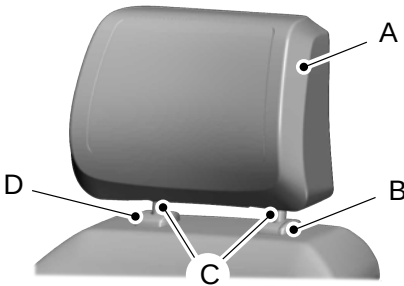
Front Seats

- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

MANUAL SEATS

HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS



The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Guide sleeve adjust and release button.
- C Two steel stems.
- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

Raising the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

Lowering the Head Restraints

1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Push the head restraint downward.
3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

Tilting Head Restraints

The front head restraints tilt for extra comfort. To tilt the head restraint, do the following:

Front Seats



1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving or riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the desired position.

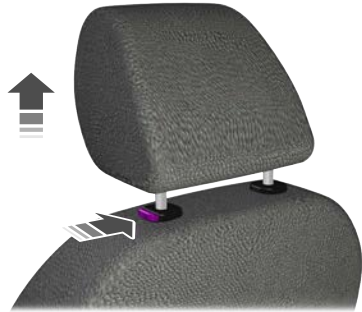
After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivoting it forward again releases it to the rearward, un-tilted position.

REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

1. Recline the seat backrest so that there is enough room for you to remove the head restraint.



2. Press the locking button and remove the head restraint.

INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD



WARNING: Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.

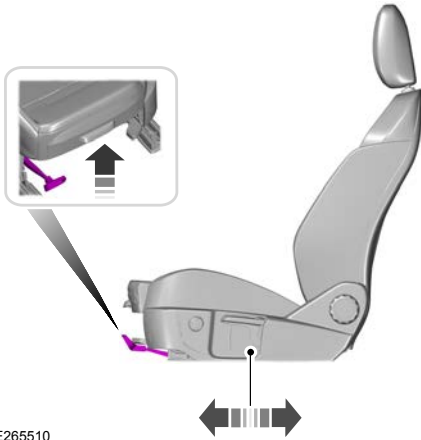


WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

Front Seats



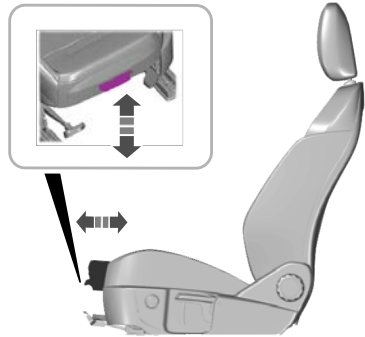
WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford could prevent the seatbelt from retracting correctly. This could cause the seatbelt to become slack which could increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



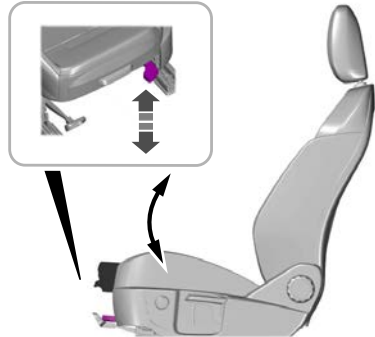
E265510

ADJUSTING THE SEAT CUSHION

Adjusting the Seat Cushion Backward and Forward



Tilting the Seat Cushion

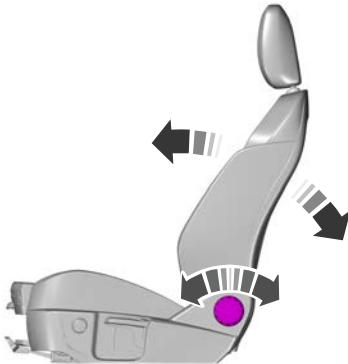


Front Seats

ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST

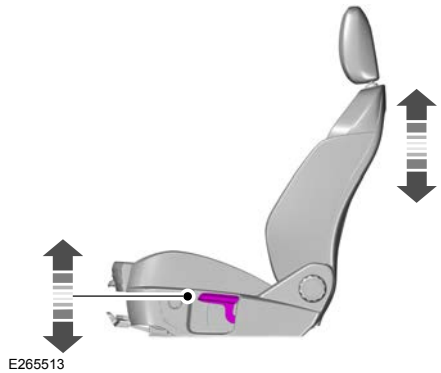


WARNING: Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's seatbelt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a crash.



E265512

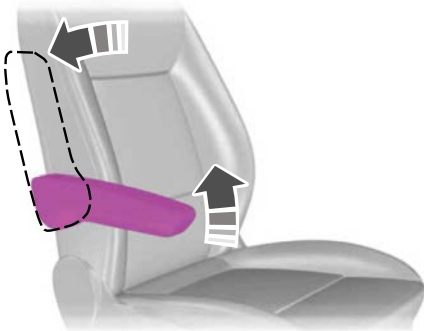
ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



E265513

ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL LUMBAR

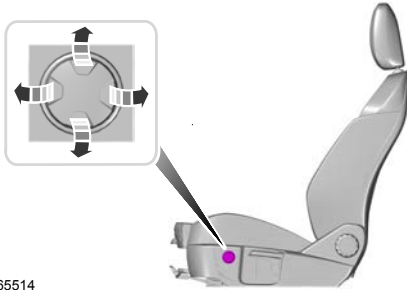
FOLDING THE SEAT ARMREST



E249179

Front Seats

ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT - VEHICLES WITH: POWER LUMBAR

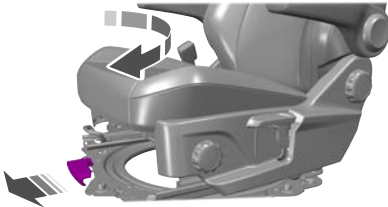


E265514

SWIVELING THE SEAT



WARNING: Make sure the seat locks into place and is facing forward when your vehicle is moving.



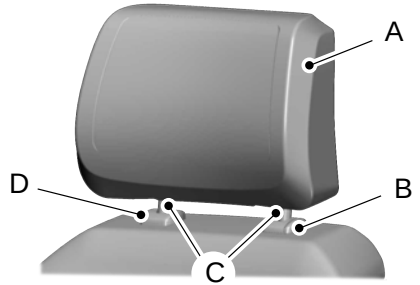
The seat can swivel through 180 degrees in an inboard direction.

You may need to adjust the seat to allow sufficient clearance for it to swivel in a single motion.

Note: We recommend that the seat is unoccupied.

POWER SEATS

HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS



The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Guide sleeve lock and release button.
- C Two steel stems.
- D Guide sleeve.

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

Front Seats



WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

Raising the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

Lowering the Head Restraints

1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Push the head restraint downward.
3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

Tilting Head Restraints

The front head restraints tilt for extra comfort. To tilt the head restraint, do the following:



1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving or riding position.

2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the desired position.

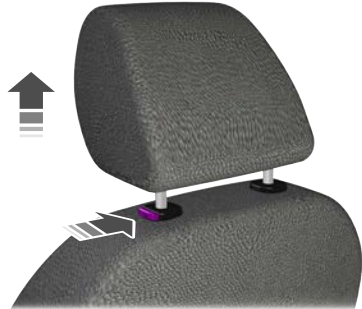
After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivoting it forward again releases it to the rearward, un-tilted position.

REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

1. Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.



2. Press the locking button and remove the head restraint.

INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

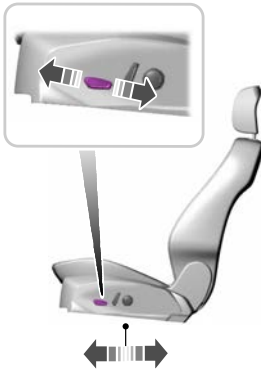
Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

Front Seats

MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD

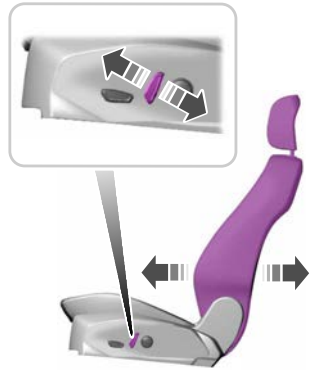
WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the seatbelt from retracting correctly. This could cause the seatbelt to become slack which could increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



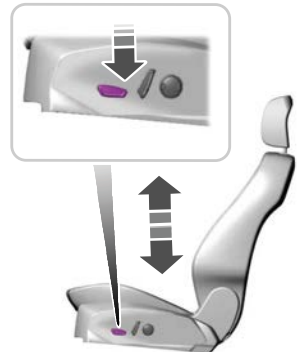
ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST

WARNING: Reclining the seat back can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's seatbelt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.



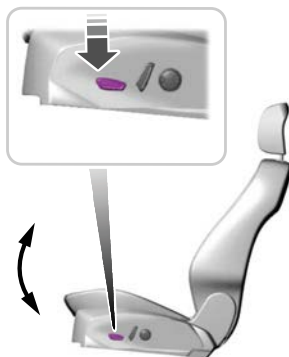
ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT

Adjusting the Seat Height

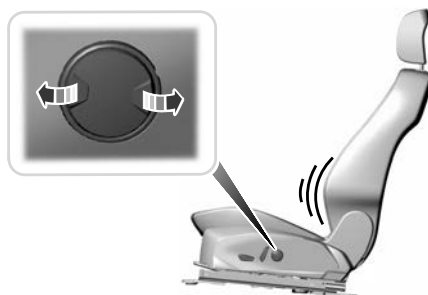


Front Seats

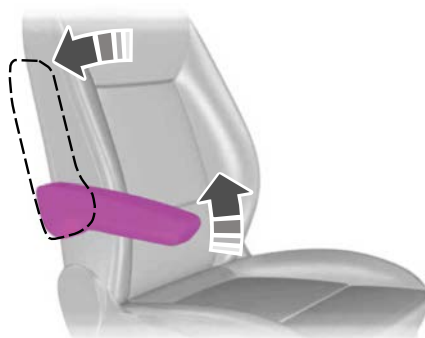
Tilting the Seat Cushion



2-Way Lumbar Support

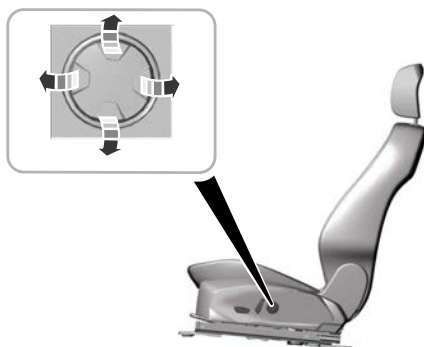


FOLDING THE SEAT ARMREST



ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT

4-Way Lumbar Support



Front Seats

HEATED SEATS

HEATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. The more indicators that display, the warmer the temperature of the seat.

Note: Only the outboard seat on a dual passenger seat is heated.

Note: Based on your remote start settings, the heated seats may remain on after you remote start your vehicle. The heated seats may also turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.

Automatic Heated Seats

When you switch on the auto setting, the heated seats switch on to match your climate control setting.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

SWITCHING THE HEATED SEATS ON AND OFF

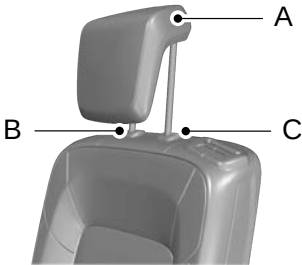
The vehicle must be on to use this feature.

Rear Seats

MANUAL SEATS

HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS - BUS/KOMBI

Rear Seat Head Restraints

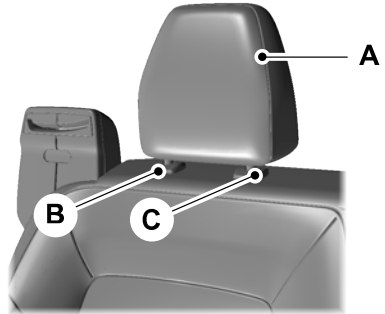


The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Guide sleeve.
- C Locking guide sleeve.

HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS - DOUBLE CAB IN VAN

Rear Seat Head Restraints



The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Guide sleeve.
- C Locking guide sleeve.

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT - BUS/KOMBI



WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.



WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Rear Seats

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

Pull the head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the head restraint:

1. Press and hold the adjust and release button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT - BUS/KOMBI

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the adjust and release button and the unlock and remove button.
3. Pull up the head restraint.

INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT - BUS/KOMBI

1. Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

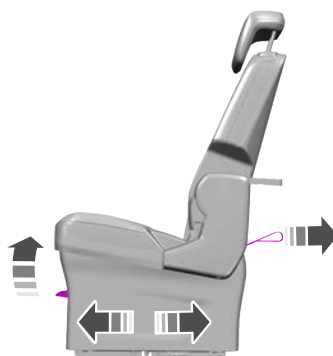
MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD - BUS



WARNING: Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford could prevent the seatbelt from retracting correctly. This could cause the seatbelt to become slack which could increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



Lift the front handle or pull the rear strap to move seat backward and forward.



There is an end stop between the second and third row seats to limit backward movement of the second row seat when occupied and connected to the vehicle with a kettle cable. If you need extra space, you can push unoccupied and flat fold third row seats forward over the end stop and you can lift unoccupied and flat fold second row seats over the end stop to move them backward. See **Folding the Seat Backrest** (page 194).

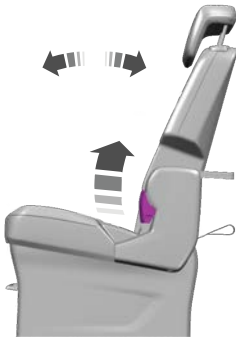
Rear Seats

Note: Do not force the rear seats over the stopper in any direction.

ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST - BUS

WARNING: Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

WARNING: Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's seatbelt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a crash.



Lift the recline lever to adjust the seat backrest.

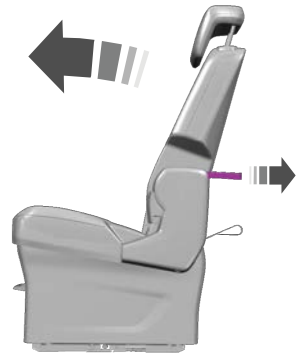
FOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST - BUS

WARNING: When folding the seat backrest down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.

WARNING: Do not sit in a seat facing a folded seat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: While driving, unsecure objects on a folded seat may become projectiles in a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.



When the seat is unoccupied pull the strap from behind to fold the seat backrest.

FOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST - KOMBI

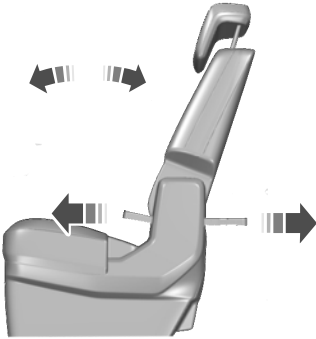
WARNING: When folding the seat backrest down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.

WARNING: Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

Rear Seats



WARNING: While driving, unsecured objects on a folded seat may become projectiles in a sudden stop or crash.



When the seat is unoccupied pull the strap to fold the seat backrest.

UNFOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST - BUS/KOMBI



WARNING: When unfolding the seat backrests, make sure that the seatbelts are not trapped behind the seat.



WARNING: Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

Lift the seat backrest until it latches in the upright position.



ACCESSING THE THIRD ROW SEATS - MI KOMBI



WARNING: Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.



WARNING: Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seat backrest before returning it to the original position. Pull on the seat backrest to make sure that it has fully latched after returning the seat backrest to its original position. An unlatched seat may become dangerous if you stop suddenly or have a crash.

1. Tilt the seat forward by pulling the release lever on the seat backrest.
2. Move the seat back into the sitting position until the rear latches engage.

REMOVING THE SEATS - BUS



WARNING: Make sure that the floor catches are free from obstruction before installing the seats.

Rear Seats

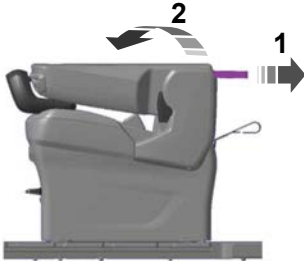


WARNING: Seats can weigh up to 60 kg (132 lb). Do not attempt to lift or carry any seat on your own.

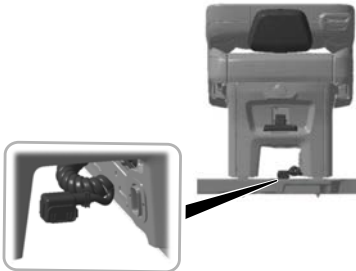


WARNING: When folding the seat backrest down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.

Note: Removing the seats is only possible, when the backrest is folded.



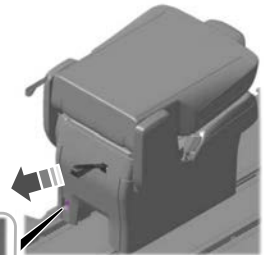
1. Pull the recliner release strap to fold the seat backrest.



2. Disconnect the kettle cable from the floor connector.



3. Fix the kettle cable to the seat dummy plug.



4. Pull the track release strap until the red latch indicator is visible.
5. Remove the seat from the vehicle.

Note: Make sure you remove the seat in a vertical direction.

Note: To remove seats from your vehicle, use lifting points on the backrest and biteline between cushion and backrest.

Rear Seats

REMOVING THE SEATS - KOMBI



WARNING: Make sure that the floor catches are free from obstruction before installing the seats.



WARNING: Seats can weigh up to 60 kg (132 lb). Do not attempt to lift or carry any seat on your own.



WARNING: While driving, unsecured objects on a folded seat may become projectiles in a sudden stop or crash.



WARNING: Do not sit in a seat facing a folded seat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



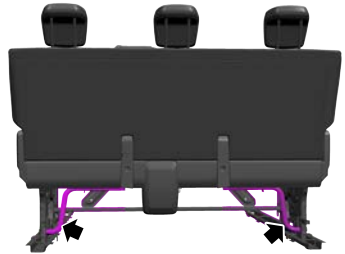
WARNING: When folding the seat backrest down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.



WARNING: Do not drive your vehicle with a seat that is unlatched or in the folded position. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

1. Pull the recliner release strap to fold the seat backrest.
2. Pull the latch release strap and tilt the seat forward.
3. Pull the seat backwards to disengage the front hooks.
4. Remove the seat from the vehicle.

Note: To remove single seats from your vehicle, use lifting points on the backrest and biteline between the cushion and the backrest.

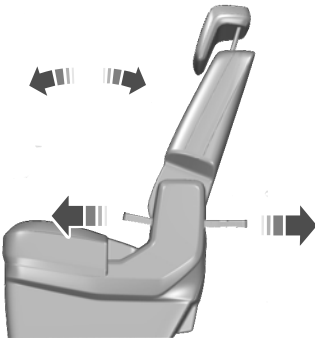


Note: To remove triple seat from your vehicle, use the carry handle on the seat.

ROTATING THE SECOND ROW SEATS - BUS



WARNING: Do not sit in a rearward facing second row seat if any of the third row seats have been removed and the vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



Rear Seats

The second row seats are reversible. To rotate the seats remove and reinstall each seat in the required direction. See

Removing the Seats (page 195). See **Installing the Seats** (page 198).

INSTALLING THE SEATS - BUS



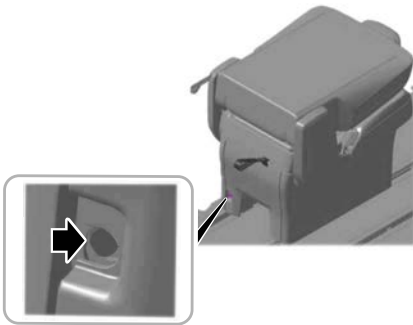
WARNING: Make sure that the floor catches are free from obstruction before installing the seats.



WARNING: Make sure that you securely fasten the seat catches when installing. Make sure that the latches are correctly engaged by checking the red latch indicators.

Note: Make sure you install the seat to the same location you removed it from.

Note: Make sure you install the seat in a vertical direction.



After you installed the seat, make sure that the red indicator is not visible.

Note: Make sure you connect the kettle cable to the floor connector.

Note: When you install a seat, check that all seats are displayed correctly in the instrument cluster display.

Note: If you install new seats, or seats from another identical vehicle, please contact an authorized dealer. See **Seatbelt Reminder Indicators** (page 60).

INSTALLING THE SEATS - KOMBI



WARNING: Make sure that the floor catches are free from obstruction before installing the seats.



WARNING: Make sure that you securely fasten the seat catches when installing. Make sure that the latches are correctly engaged by checking the red latch indicators.

Note: Make sure you install the seat to the same location you removed it from.

Note: When you install a seat, make sure that all seats are displayed correctly in the instrument cluster display.

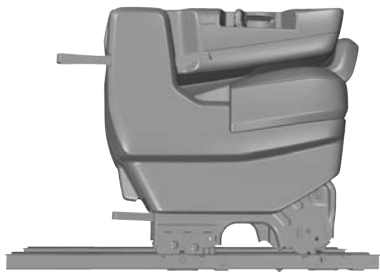
1. Align the seat frame front catches.



2. Push the seat forward to engage the seat frame front catches.

Rear Seats

3. Align the seat frame rear catches.



4. Allow the seat to drop under its own weight for the last 15–20 cm (5–10 in).

Note: If you install new seats, or seats from another identical vehicle, please contact an authorized dealer. See **Seatbelt Reminder Indicators** (page 60).

HEATED SEATS

HEATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

SWITCHING THE HEATED SEATS ON AND OFF

The vehicle must be on to use this feature.

The rear seat heat control switch is on the front lower part of the seat.



Press the heated seat symbol to turn the heated seats on and off.

The heated seats turn off when you switch off the vehicle.

Rear Seats

REAR SEATS VIDEOS - BUS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

Moving the Seat Backward and Forward

[Tourneo Custom Moving the Seat Backward and Forward Video Link](#)

For more information scan here:



Adjusting the Seat Backrest

[Tourneo Custom Adjusting the Seat Backrest Video Link](#)

For more information scan here:



Folding the Seat Backrest and Removing the Seats

[Tourneo Custom Removing the Seats Video Link](#)

For more information scan here:



Rotating the Second Row Seats

[Tourneo Custom Rotating the Second Row Seats Video Link](#)

For more information scan here:



Installing the Seats

[Tourneo Custom Installing the Seats Video Link](#)

For more information scan here:



Rear Occupant Alert System

WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the ignition off. The notifications can be in the form of warnings inside the vehicle and sounding of the horn if activated for a short period of time.

HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

When **Child Seat Installed** is selected, the system monitors only the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

When **Child Seat Installed** is not selected, the system monitors the rear seatbelt buckle activity and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message displays in the touchscreen and an audible warning sounds when you switch the ignition off after any of the following conditions have been met:

- A rear door is opened or closed while the ignition is on.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of the alert having displayed or sounded.

If you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding and driver door open to close, the horn sounds for a short period of time.

Note: *Horn sounds only when the **Rear Occupant Alert** is set to **Alert & Horn**. If you change the setting, then there is no horn sound.*

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors.

Note: *It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.*

Rear Occupant Alert System

Note: It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Rear Occupant Alert**.
4. Select **Alert & Horn** or **Alert Only** or **Off**.

Note: The default setting is **Alert Only**.

Note: If you choose **Alert Only**, the horn does not sound even when the alert conditions are met.

Note: Performing a vehicle system reset causes the system to switch on again.

Switching Child Seat Installed On and Off

When the system is switched on, it monitors the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Rear Occupant Alert**.
4. Switch **Child Seat Installed** on or off.

Note: The default setting is **on**.

Switch the system on when the child restraint is mounted on any of the following:

- Forward facing seat.
- Rear facing seat.
- Toddler in a latch system baby seat.

Switch the system off when the child is using any of the following:

- Seatbelt.
- Booster seat.

Semiannual Reminder

When you switch the system off, a message appears every six months as a reminder that the system is off. You can switch the system back on or leave it off.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM INDICATORS



Message
Check rear seats for occupants.

Displays when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The message displays for a short period of time. Press **Close** to acknowledge and remove the message.

Note: Depending on your SYNC version, the graphic may look different from what you see [here](#).

Rear Occupant Alert System

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM AUDIBLE WARNINGS

The first audible warning is an alert tone within the vehicle, which sounds when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

The second audible warning is from the horn. It sounds when you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding, and driver door open to close. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

USB Ports

LOCATING THE USB PORTS

Data Transfer USB Ports



The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.

Note: These USB ports can also charge devices.

Note: Not all USB ports in your vehicle have data transfer capabilities.

Note: We recommend using only USB-IF certified cables and adapters. Non-certified cables and adapters may not work.

Charge Only USB Ports



The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- On the upper instrument panel.
- Inside the media bin.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- Behind the first row seats.
- In the cargo area.

PLAYING MEDIA USING THE USB PORT



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

1. Connect your device to a data transfer USB port.
2. Press the audio system tile on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Sources**.



Press the USB option.



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.



Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous

tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.

CHARGING A DEVICE

Connect your device to the USB port.

USB Ports

Data Transfer USB Ports



You can charge your device through the data transfer USB port when SYNC is on.

Charge Only USB Ports



You can charge your device through the charge only USB port when the vehicle is in accessory mode or when the vehicle is running.

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 220-240V Power Outlet

WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet can power devices that require up to the rating on the outlet cover.

Note: *The total power delivered is divided if more than one outlet is used.*

POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not keep electrical devices plugged into the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. The outlet provides power when the vehicle is on. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not use an extension cord or connect multiple devices to the power outlet. Doing so could result in overloading the power outlet. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or property damage.

Note: *This feature has a maximum output of 400 watts when the vehicle is in park (P).*

Note: *While in drive (D), the maximum outlet output is 300 watts.*

POWER OUTLET LIMITATIONS

Devices could exceed the power rating shown the device label when plugged in. Unplug the device and switch the ignition on and off to reset the system.

Do not use the power outlet for these types of electric devices:

- Cathode ray tube televisions.
- Motor loads, for example vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools, or compressor-driven refrigerators.

- Measuring devices which process precise data, for example medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply, for example microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch sensor lamps.

LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

The power outlet could be located on either the driver's or the passenger's seat base.



POWER OUTLET INDICATORS

The power outlet indicator illuminates to let you know the status of the system.

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 220-240V Power Outlet

Indicator Status	Description
On	The power outlet is on.
Off	The power outlet is off.
Flashing	The power outlet is in fault mode.

Note: Due to different technologies used on its construction, some devices may exceed the capacity shown on its label when they are initially plugged in.

Note: The power outlet temporarily turns off power when in fault mode if the device exceeds the Watt limit. Unplug your device and switch the ignition off. Open the driver door to reset the power outlet. Switch the ignition back on and make sure the indicator light remains on. Do not plug your device back in if it exceeds the maximum outlet output.

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 12V Power Outlet

WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet can power devices using a 12 V outlet adapter.

POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not use a power point for operating a cigar lighter. Incorrect use of the power points can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

When you switch the vehicle on, you can use the socket to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 A. Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 V DC 180 W or a fuse could blow. Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power points. This could result in damage to vehicle systems. Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug. Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use. Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is off.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

Power outlets could be in the following locations:

- On the instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- Inside the cargo area.

Onboard Generator - Vehicles With: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet

WHAT IS THE ONBOARD GENERATOR

The vehicle functions as a portable generator and can power devices that require up to the rating listed on the power outlet label.

Note: *The total power delivered is divided if more than one outlet is used.*

ONBOARD GENERATOR PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not connect any vehicle power outlets to any premises. This can create a backfeed to utility lines. Failure to follow this instruction could result in property damage, fire, electrical shock or death.



WARNING: Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. Power outlets power up during remote start.

When you switch the rear power outlet on, the vehicle power down timer is disabled and the vehicle continues to be powered on.

Note: *We recommend using region specific approved devices for use with the power outlet.*

Note: *Do not exceed 2.3 kW capacity. Electrical overload can cause ground faults or system errors.*

Note: *Make sure there is no damage to the outlets before driving your vehicle.*

Note: *Power could be limited during extreme hot or cold temperatures to optimize the performance of the system.*

Note: *Pro Power Onboard is available when your vehicle is charging. Using the power outlets while the vehicle is charging could increase the vehicle charging time.*

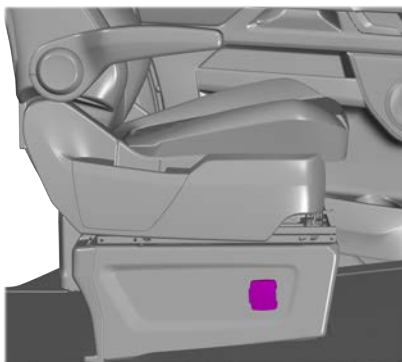
Grounding Type

Neutral bonded: The neutral of the inverter generator is bonded to system ground. Connecting loads that also have neutral bonded to ground causes the ground fault detection to trip.

Note: *If additional grounding measures are required, consult with a qualified electrician.*

LOCATING THE OUTLETS

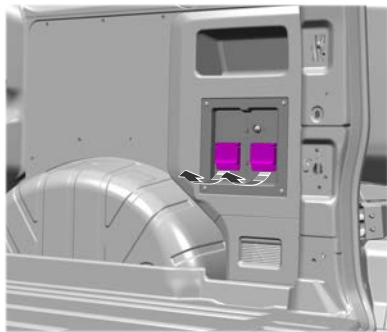
Front Location



The market specific front power outlets are either on the driver or passenger side seat console, behind the cover.

Onboard Generator - Vehicles With: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet

Rear Location (If Equipped)



The market specific rear power outlets are at the rear of the vehicle, behind the cover.

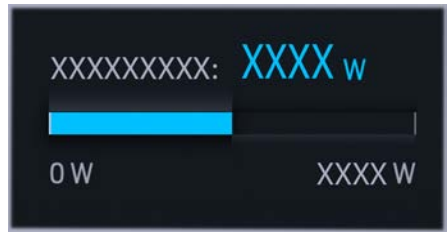
ONBOARD GENERATOR INDICATORS

Power Outlet Status Indicator

The power outlet indicator illuminates to let you know the status of the system.

Indicator Status	Description
On	The power point is working and the vehicle is on.
Off	The power point is off and the vehicle is off.
Flashing	The power point is in fault mode.

Power Mode Indicator



The power mode indicator displays the currently used power and total available power level on the touchscreen. When you switch the power outlets off, the indicator displays a reduced available power level. When you switch the power outlets on, the indicator displays the full available power.

Note: Make sure that plugged in devices do not exceed the available power displayed on the power mode indicator.

SWITCHING THE REAR OUTLET ON AND OFF

Using the Center Display

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Pro Power Onboard**.
3. Switch **Rear Outlets** on or off.

Onboard Generator - Vehicles With: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet

Using the Rear Outlet Control



Press the button to switch the rear outlet on and off.

SETTING THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY RESERVE LIMIT

When the vehicle is in Park (P) you can set a high voltage battery reserve limit to save a range which you can drive your vehicle before recharging.

You can set the high voltage battery reserve limit on the touchscreen.

A notification indicates when the vehicle reaches the pre-set limit and **Pro Power Onboard** turns off.

Note: After your vehicle reaches the pre-set limit, the vehicle power down timer is enabled again. See **What Is the Vehicle Power Down Timer** (page 227). See **What Is Automatic Engine Stop** (page 221).

WHAT IS GENERATOR MODE

Generator mode uses the vehicle engine to increase power to the power outlets up to the rating listed on the power outlet label.

SWITCHING GENERATOR MODE ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Pro Power Onboard**.
3. Press Generator Mode.

RESETTING GROUND FAULT DETECTION

Disconnect all electrical loads before you reset the ground fault.

Use the controls on the touchscreen to test the ground fault detection circuit.

Onboard Generator - Vehicles With: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet

ONBOARD GENERATOR – TROUBLESHOOTING

ONBOARD GENERATOR – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Item(s) plugged in exceeded the system's maximum capacity. Try unplugging one or more items and reset. See Owner's Manual for details.	Make sure that plugged in devices do not exceed the available power displayed. Devices could exceed the power rating shown the device label when plugged in. Unplug the device and switch the vehicle on and off to reset the system.
Generator System is outside its operating temperature and capability is reduced. See Owner's Manual for details.	Power could be limited during extreme hot or cold temperatures to optimize the performance of the system.
Another power source is trying to supply power to your vehicle's AC outlets. Disconnect vehicle from that power source. See Owner's Manual for details.	Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power outlets. This could result in damage to vehicle systems.
This button tests outlets for proper operation of ground fault detection. In a successful test, Pro Power Onboard detects the ground fault and turns off. See Owner's Manual for details.	The power outlet is in fault mode. Make sure that all devices are unplugged from the system. Use the controls on the touchscreen to reset the system. Switch your vehicle on and off if the touchscreen controls are unable to reset the system. See an authorized dealer if these steps do not fix the fault.

Onboard Generator - Vehicles With: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet

ONBOARD GENERATOR – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is there a warning about something being plugged into the rear power outlet when I do not have anything plugged in?

- One or more of the rear power outlet covers could be ajar or broken. Make sure the generator is off and check the outlet covers. Select OK on the instrument cluster display to acknowledge the warning.

Why can I not shift my vehicle out of Park (P)?

- Make sure the rear power outlet covers are closed and not damaged. Press OK on the instrument cluster display to acknowledge the warning to be able to move the transmission from Park (P).

What do I do when my instrument cluster display is malfunctioning and I cannot acknowledge the warning to put the transmission in Drive (D).

- Power the vehicle off and make sure nothing is plugged into the rear power outlet and all outlet covers are closed. Start the vehicle and select OK on the instrument cluster display to acknowledge the warning. Have your vehicle serviced soon.

Wireless Accessory Charger

WHAT IS THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER

The wireless accessory charger allows you to charge one compatible Qi wireless charging device on the charging area.

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. If you have any implanted medical devices, we recommend that you consult with your physician.



WARNING: Remove all metal objects like coins and keys from the charging surface and remove any metal objects attached to your mobile phone before placing the device on the charging surface. Some mobile devices or cases may attract metal objects. Metal objects on the charging surface or attached to the phone may become hot while charging is active. If an object is left on or near the charging surface or attached to the phone while the device is charging, let the objects cool before removing to prevent personal injury.

Keep the charging area clean and remove foreign objects prior to charging a device.

Do not place items with a magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip, for example passports, parking tickets, transportation passes or credit cards, near the charging area when charging a device. Damage could occur to the magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip.

Do not place metal objects, for example remote controls, coins and candy wrappers, on or near the charging area when charging a device. Metal objects may heat up and degrade the charging performance, in addition to causing interruptions in charging.

Charging could be interrupted, degraded, or could stop if any of the following occur:

- The system detects a foreign object.
- The device is misaligned on the charging area.
- The device moves on the active charging area when the vehicle is in motion.
- The vehicle ambient temperature is too high.
- You attempt to charge a non-Qi compatible device on the wireless charger.

Note: During charging, the device and the charger could heat up, this is normal. If the battery gets hotter than usual, the device may stop charging.

LOCATING THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER



The charging area is on the center console.

Wireless Accessory Charger



CHARGING A WIRELESS DEVICE

Place the device on the center of the charging surface with the charging side down. The charging stops after your device reaches a full charge.

You can use the charger when the vehicle is in accessory mode, when the vehicle is running or when the touchscreen is on.



Displays on the status bar when wireless charging is in progress.



Displays on the status bar when wireless charging has been interrupted.

Note: The charging performance may be affected if your device is in a case. It may be necessary to remove the case to wirelessly charge your device.

Note: Software and firmware updates may affect device compatibility, including the use of unofficial software or firmware. You should verify charging functionality with your specific devices in-vehicle.

Storage

CUP HOLDERS

CUP HOLDER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Use only soft cups in the cup holders. Hard objects can injure you in a crash.

Stow items in the cup holder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or crashes, including hot drinks which may spill.

OVERHEAD STORAGE

LOCATING THE OVERHEAD STORAGE



WARNING: Do not place heavy objects in the overhead console. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



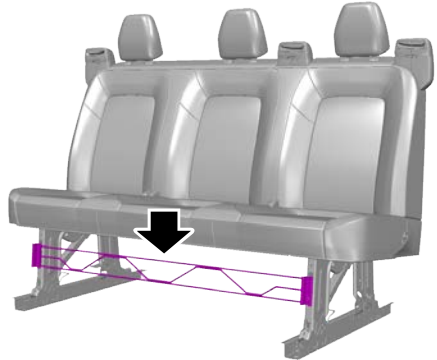
E169073

OVERHEAD STORAGE LOAD CAPACITIES

The maximum evenly distributed shelf load is 20 kg (44 lb.).

UNDER SEAT STORAGE

LOCATING THE UNDER SEAT STORAGE COMPARTMENT - DOUBLE CAB IN VAN



The under seat storage guard may be set to two different positions. Lift up the guard and pull out to remove.

LOCATING THE UNDER SEAT STORAGE COMPARTMENT - VEHICLES WITH: PASSENGER DOUBLE SEAT

The under seat storage compartment is under the front passenger seat.

Storage

2. To close, slide the drawer in and push it down.



2



E154714

1. Lift the front of the passenger seat cushion.
2. Pull the seat cushion forward.
3. Tilt the seat cushion forward.

Note: Both the inboard and outboard seats have a storage compartment.

LOCATING THE UNDER SEAT STORAGE COMPARTMENT - VEHICLES WITH: REAR SEATS

The under seat storage drawers are under the second row center seat and the third row left-hand seat.

1. To open, lift the drawer and pull it out.

Starting and Stopping the Engine - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not use starting fluid, for example ether, in the air intake system. Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.



WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.



WARNING: Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.



WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 3 cm (1 in).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

PUSH BUTTON IGNITION SWITCH



Switching the Ignition Off

When the ignition is on or in accessory mode, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

When the ignition is off, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Note: Your vehicle has a battery saver feature that shuts your vehicle off when it detects a certain amount of battery drain or inactivity in accessory mode.

Starting the Engine

Press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

Note: A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

Starting and Stopping the Engine - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

STARTING THE ENGINE

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in neutral.

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

Glow Plug Indicator



The engine does not start until the glow plug indicator turns off. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

Glow Plug Indicator



The engine does not start until the glow plug indicator turns off. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.

STARTING A HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE SYSTEM

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P).

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

Starting and Stopping the Engine - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

1. Fully press the brake pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

READY When you start your vehicle, a green indicator light appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving. Since your vehicle is equipped with a silent key start, the engine may not start when your vehicle starts.

When the engine starts for the first time on your drive, the idle speed increases, this helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

RESTARTING THE ENGINE AFTER STOPPING IT

The system allows you to start the engine within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 10 seconds of switching the engine off, fully press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

When you start the engine, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door when the engine is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

STOPPING THE ENGINE

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

1. Shift into neutral.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Press the push button ignition switch.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Press the push button ignition switch.

Starting and Stopping the Engine - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - MANUAL TRANSMISSION



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Apply the parking brake.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The

steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

Automatic engine stop automatically shuts down your vehicle if it has been idling for an extended period of time. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power.

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP WORK

Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down.

Starting and Stopping the Engine - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

After the shutdown, another message appears in the information display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down in order to save fuel.

Start your vehicle as normal.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **30min Max Idle** on or off.

Note: You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

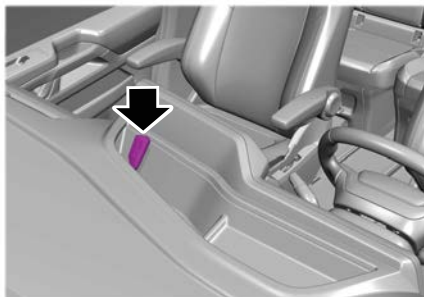
OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

You can stop the shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the **OK** or **Reset** button during the 30-second countdown.

ACCESSING THE PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION

If you are unable to start your vehicle, follow the steps below.



1. Place the remote control in the instrument panel slot as shown with the buttons facing upward.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Press the push button start to switch the power on and start your vehicle.

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – TROUBLESHOOTING

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – WARNING LAMPS



Malfunction Indicator Lamp
Check Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

Starting and Stopping the Engine - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.



Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Cranking time exceeded	Displays if you exceed the starting time limit. You cannot attempt to start the engine for 15 minutes. If you cannot start the engine after 15 minutes passes, have your vehicle immediately checked.
Starting system malfunction	Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
No key detected	Displays if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

Starting and Stopping the Engine - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - DIESEL

Why is the engine idle speed high when I am starting the engine?

- The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

Why does the engine not crank?

- You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

- If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

Why can I not start the engine?

- If you cannot start the engine, do the following:
 1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

Note: Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

Note: Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).



2. Press the push button ignition switch until the engine starts.

Why does the system not detect a passive key?

- If the system does not detect a passive key and you are unable to start the engine, insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 222).

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Why does the engine not crank?

- When you start your vehicle, a green indicator light appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving. Since your vehicle is equipped with a silent key start, the engine may not start when your vehicle starts.

Why is the engine speed high when the engine first starts?

- When the engine starts for the first time on your drive, the idle speed increases, this helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Why can I not start my vehicle when the high voltage battery is charged?

- Your vehicle has a high voltage to low voltage energy transfer feature that keeps the 12-volt battery charged by the high voltage battery. However 12-volt battery depletion can still occur, and in such case you are unable to start your vehicle. See **12V Battery** (page 465).

Why does the system not detect a passive key?

- If the system does not detect a passive key and you are unable to start your vehicle, insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start your vehicle. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 222).

Starting and Powering Off - Battery Electric Vehicle

STARTING AND POWERING OFF PRECAUTIONS

- The system may not function if the remote control is close to metal objects or electronic devices, such as keys or a cell phone.
- A valid remote control must be inside your vehicle to switch the power on and start your vehicle.
- Remote controls left inside your vehicle when locked are disabled. A message may appear in the information display indicating that there is no key detected when you try to start your vehicle. Press the unlock button on the remote control to enable it, and then start your vehicle.
- Make sure all occupants fasten their seat belt.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the vehicle is in park (P).
- Make sure there is no charge cord coupler connected to the vehicle.

STARTING THE VEHICLE

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button start.

POWERING OFF



WARNING: Do not switch off your vehicle when it is moving. This results in a significant decrease in braking and steering assistance. If the vehicle is switched off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, could also turn off. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: If you unintentionally switch your vehicle off, shift into neutral (N) and restart your vehicle.

When your vehicle is not moving and is started, or the power is in accessory mode, press and release the push button start without pressing the brake pedal. This shuts off the vehicle and all electrical accessories.

Only in a case of emergency, when your vehicle is moving, press the push button start three times within two seconds, or press and hold for at least one second. Shift into neutral (N) and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop. When your vehicle comes to a complete stop, shift into park (P).

RESTARTING THE VEHICLE AFTER POWERING OFF

Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart your vehicle within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid remote control.

Within 10 seconds of switching your vehicle off, press the brake pedal and press the push button start. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start your vehicle if it does not detect a valid remote control.

Starting and Powering Off - Battery Electric Vehicle

Once your vehicle starts, it remains on until you press the push button start, even if it does not detect a valid remote control.

If you open and close a door while your vehicle is on, the system searches for a valid remote control. You cannot start your vehicle if the system does not detect a valid remote control within 10 seconds.

VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER

WHAT IS THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER

Vehicle power down timer automatically shuts down your vehicle if it has been idling for an extended period of time. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power.

HOW DOES THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER WORK

Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down.

After the shutdown, another message appears in the information display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down in order to save battery power.

Start your vehicle as normal.

SWITCHING THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle settings**.
3. Switch **Vehicle Power Down Timer** on or off.

Note: You cannot permanently switch off the vehicle power down timer. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the vehicle on.

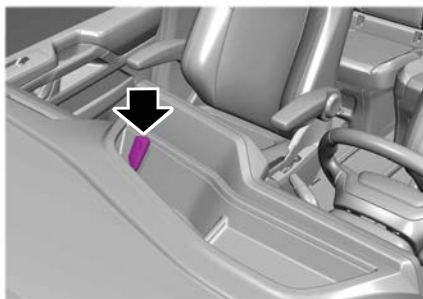
OVERRIDING THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER

You can stop the shutdown or reset the timer before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the **OK** or **RESET** button during the 30-second countdown.

ACCESSING THE PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION

If you are unable to start your vehicle, follow the steps below.



1. Place the remote control in the instrument panel slot as shown with the buttons facing upward.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Press the push button start to switch the power on and start your vehicle.

STARTING AND POWERING OFF – TROUBLESHOOTING

STARTING AND POWERING OFF – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the vehicle not start?

- The system does not function if the remote control frequencies are jammed, or if the remote control battery has no charge. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 227).

Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

WHAT IS A HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE

A hybrid vehicle has an electric motor and a high voltage battery combined with a gasoline engine.

HOW DOES A HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE WORK

The hybrid vehicle combines electric and gasoline propulsion to provide optimal performance and improved efficiency.

HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE DRIVING CHARACTERISTICS

The gasoline engine starts and stops to provide power when required and to save fuel when not needed. When coasting at low speeds, coming to a stop or standing, the gas engine normally shuts down and your vehicle operates in electric-only mode.

Conditions that may cause the gasoline engine to start or remain running include:

- Considerable vehicle acceleration.
- Driving uphill.
- The high voltage battery charge level is low.
- Heating or cooling the vehicle interior in high or low outside temperatures.
- The gasoline engine is below normal operating temperature.
- Towing a trailer.
- Certain selectable drive modes could cause the engine to run. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 359).

Your hybrid vehicle also comes with standard hydraulic braking and regenerative braking. Regenerative braking is performed by your transmission and captures brake energy and stores it in the high voltage battery.

You could also notice that your engine continues to run instead of shutting off during extended downhill driving. The engine stays on during this engine braking but is not using any fuel.

You could also hear a slight whine or whistle when operating your vehicle. This is the normal operation of the electric motor in the hybrid system.

Note: *Having your engine running is not always an indication of inefficiency. In some cases, it is actually more efficient than driving in electric mode.*

HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INDICATORS

READY

When you start your vehicle, a green READY indicator light appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving.

The engine may not start because your vehicle has a silent key start feature. This fuel saving feature allows your vehicle to be ready to drive without requiring the gas engine to be running.

The indicator remains on when your vehicle is on, whether the engine is running or not, to indicate your vehicle is capable of movement using the electric motor, gas engine or both.

Typically, the engine does not start unless the vehicle is cold, a climate control change is requested or you press the accelerator pedal.

Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INFORMATION – TROUBLESHOOTING

PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INFORMATION – WARNING LAMPS

 Illuminates if your vehicle's electrical system requires service to identify the cause for your vehicle to shut down or enter a limited operating mode. A message may appear in the instrument cluster display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INFORMATION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Vehicle plugged in? Yes No	Your vehicle needs confirmation that you unplugged it before allowing a start. You must make sure your vehicle is unplugged and you respond to the message prompt before starting your vehicle.
Unplug prior to starting vehicle	Your vehicle detects it is still plugged in after you attempt to start it.
Engine enabled due to defrost setting	Your vehicle enables the engine due to the climate control defrost setting. This is normal operation.

Message	Action
Press EV button for full defrost	For full defrost heat, press the EV button to select either EV Later or EV Auto. The engine may run to provide more cabin heat.
Engine enabled for system performance	Your vehicle enables the engine for system performance. This is normal operation.
Press OK to enable engine	You can press OK to enable the engine temporarily for increased performance when in EV Now mode.
In neutral depletes HV battery. Shift out of neutral for full vehicle function.	Displays when in neutral gear with the vehicle on. Shift out of neutral to maintain full vehicle function.
Fuel freshness Engine may run to maintain fuel freshness	EV functionality is disabled and the engine is running to maintain fuel freshness.
Stop safely now	Displays when a malfunction occurs in the high voltage electric system. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **Auto StartStop** on or off.

STOPPING THE ENGINE

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch pedal and the accelerator pedal.

Note: *To obtain maximum benefit from the system, shift into neutral and release the clutch pedal whenever you stop your vehicle for more than three seconds.*

Note: *Power assist steering turns off when the engine stops.*

RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Press the clutch pedal.

A message appears in the instrument cluster display if the system requires you to take action.

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the accelerator pedal, brake pedal or clutch pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but cannot because the transmission is in gear.	Shift into neutral to restart the engine.

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



WARNING: The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

Note: You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.

AUTO-START-STOP AUDIBLE WARNING

The Auto-Start-Stop audible warning sounds if you open the driver door when the system has stopped the engine.

AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Condition	Details
Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Shift into neutral and restart the engine yourself.

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO₂ emissions.

Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **Auto StartStop** on or off.

STOPPING THE ENGINE

Stop your vehicle, keep your foot on the brake pedal and the transmission in drive (D).

Note: *The engine stops when you shift into park (P) whether you have your foot on the brake pedal or not.*

Note: *Power assist steering turns off when the engine stops.*

RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

A message appears in the information display if the system requires you to take action.

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press brake to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal to restart the engine.

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



WARNING: The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

Note: You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.

AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Condition	Details
Shift to P, then restart engine	The system is not functioning.	Shift into park (P) and restart the engine yourself.
Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Restart the engine yourself.

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver seatbelt is unfastened.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The transmission is in manual (M).
- Your vehicle is on a steep grade.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.

- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO₂ emissions.

Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

Fuel and Refueling - Diesel/Gasoline

FUEL AND REFUELING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



WARNING: Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



WARNING: Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.



WARNING: Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Switch the engine off before refueling.

- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses, if worn, flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

Fuel and Refueling - Diesel/Gasoline

FUEL QUALITY

SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL - DIESEL



WARNING: Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.

Use diesel that meets the specification defined by EN 590 or the relevant national specification.



Your vehicle is suitable for use with biodiesel blends up to 7% (B7).

Note: We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments. Your Warranty does not cover repairs or replacement of parts needed to correct the effects of using such unadvised products.

SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



WARNING: Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.



WARNING: Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds, for example manganese-based. They could damage the emission system.

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.



E268502

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).

Note: We recommend that you only use high quality fuel. We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments.

LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER FUNNEL

The fuel filler funnel is in the left-hand side of the luggage compartment. If your vehicle has a tire sealant and inflator kit, the funnel is in the tire sealant and inflator kit bag. If your vehicle has a jack and tool kit, the funnel is next to the jack and tools. See **Changing a Flat Tire** (page 523).

Fuel and Refueling - Diesel/Gasoline

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

FILLING A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER



WARNING: Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

ADDING FUEL FROM A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER



WARNING: Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.



WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel** (page 238).

Note: Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.



2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

Fuel and Refueling - Diesel/Gasoline

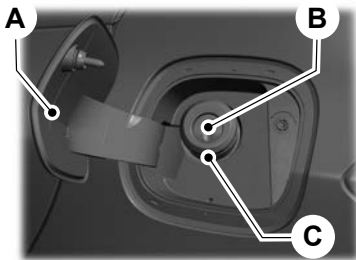
Note: If your vehicle runs out of fuel add a minimum of 5 L (1.1 gal) of fuel to restart the engine.

Note: You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

Note: Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

REFUELING

REFUELING SYSTEM OVERVIEW



- A Fuel filler door.
- B Fuel filler inlet.
- C Fuel tank filler pipe.

REFUELING YOUR VEHICLE - DIESEL

WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

WARNING: Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.

WARNING: Keep children away from the fuel pump. Never let children pump fuel.

WARNING: Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle.

WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

WARNING: Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

Fuel and Refueling - Diesel/Gasoline

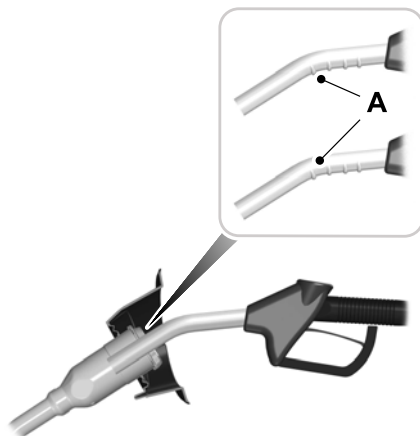
WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

WARNING: Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

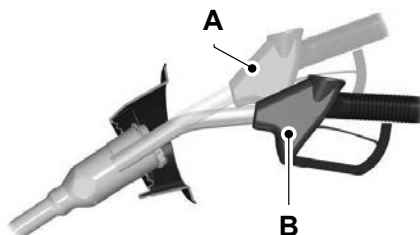
WARNING: Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.



1. Open the left-hand front door.
2. Fully open the fuel filler door.
3. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.

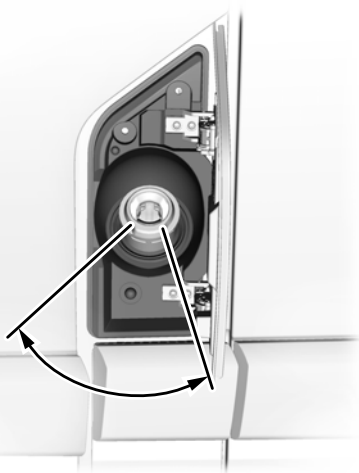


4. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.



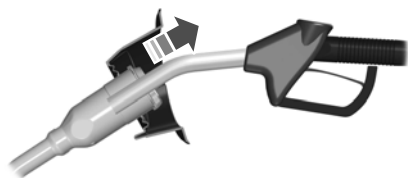
5. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.

Fuel and Refueling - Diesel/Gasoline



E162792

6. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



7. When the nozzle shuts off, wait at least 5 seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
8. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Note: To close the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

REFUELING YOUR VEHICLE - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.



WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



WARNING: Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.



WARNING: Keep children away from the fuel pump. Never let children pump fuel.



WARNING: Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle.



WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

Fuel and Refueling - Diesel/Gasoline



WARNING: Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.



WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



WARNING: Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

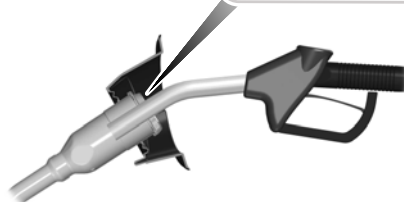
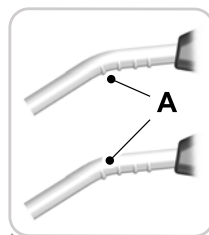


WARNING: Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

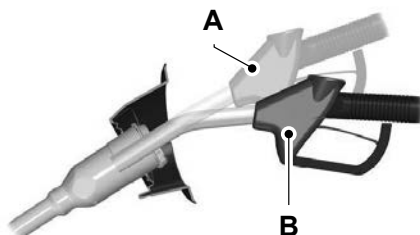
1. When you stop your vehicle, shift into park (P) and switch the ignition off.



2. Press the button on the instrument panel next to the headlamp switch to open the fuel filler door. The fuel filler door can take up to 15 seconds to open before you can insert a fuel filler nozzle.
3. Fully open the fuel filler door.
4. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.



5. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on nozzle A. Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel tank filler pipe opening.



6. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.

Fuel and Refueling - Diesel/Gasoline

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

MANUALLY OPENING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR

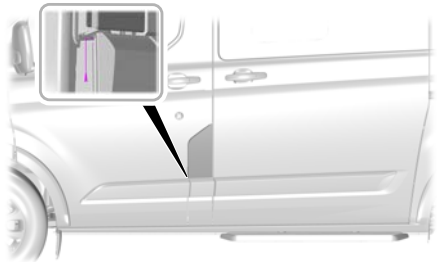


WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

Note: The transmission must be in park (P) or neutral (N).

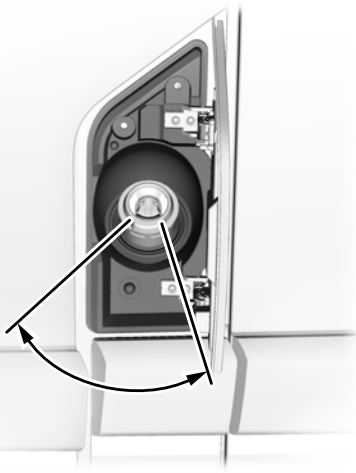
When using the fuel filler door override cord do the following:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Open the left-hand front door.



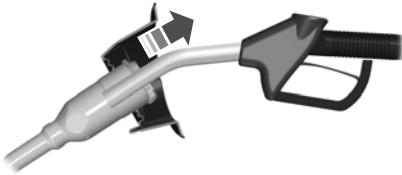
3. Pull the fuel filler door override cord.
4. Switch the ignition off.
5. Complete the refueling process within 20 minutes.

Note: Only follow this procedure if the fuel filler door fails to open. If the problem remains, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



E162792

7. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



8. When the nozzle shuts off, wait a few seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
9. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Note: To close the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.

Complete the refueling process within 20 minutes. If 20 minutes elapse, press the button on the left side of the instrument panel again. Fuel pump nozzle automatic shut off could occur if you do not press the button on the left side instrument panel.

Fuel and Refueling - Diesel/Gasoline

FUEL TANK CAPACITY

Advertised Capacity

The advertised capacity is the maximum amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank after running out of fuel. Included in the advertised capacity is an empty reserve. The empty reserve is an unspecified amount of fuel that remains in the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

Note: *The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.*

FUEL CONSUMPTION REGULATIONS

Energy Consumption (Off-Vehicle Charging) Fuel Economy (Internal Combustion Engine and Not Off-Vehicle Charging) and CO2 Emissions

The declared WLTP fuel/energy consumptions, CO2 emissions and electric range are determined according to the technical requirements and specifications of the European Regulations (EC) 715/2007 and (EU) 2017/1151 as last amended. The applied standard test procedures enable comparison between different vehicle types and different manufacturers.

European Directive 1999/94/EC

In addition to the fuel/energy efficiency of a car, driving behaviour as well as other non-technical factors play a role in determining a car's fuel/energy consumption, CO2 emissions and electric range. CO2 is the main greenhouse gas responsible for global warming. A guide on fuel economy and CO2 emissions which contains data for all new passenger car models is available at any point of sale free of charge.

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - DIESEL

Low	Medium	High	Extra-High	Combined	CO ₂ Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
12.4–8.4 (23–34)	9.8–6.3 (29–45)	9.6–5.7 (29–50)	13.3–7.2 (21–39)	11.3–6.8 (25–42)	178–296

Fuel and Refueling - Diesel/Gasoline

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

WLTP

Low	Medium	High	Extra-High	Combined	CO ₂ Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
9.3–6.6 (30–43)	6.3–4.2 (45–67)	8–5.9 (35–48)	12.2–8.6 (23–33)	9.2–6.8 (31–42)	155–211

Fuel and Refueling - Diesel/Gasoline

FUEL AND REFUELING AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when the vehicle is low on fuel.

FUEL AND REFUELING – TROUBLESHOOTING

FUEL AND REFUELING – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

FUEL AND REFUELING – INFORMATION MESSAGES - DIESEL

Message	Action
Fuel level low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition. Refill your vehicle.
Check fuel fill inlet	Check to make sure the fuel fill inlet is fully closed.

Fuel and Refueling - Diesel/Gasoline

FUEL AND REFUELING – INFORMATION MESSAGES - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Message	Action
Fuel level low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition.
Check fuel fill inlet	The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.
Please wait for fuel door to open	Appears while the fuel system is depressurizing with the fuel filler door closed. Wait for the fuel system to depressurize and for the fuel filler door to unlatch.
Fuel door open	Appears when the fuel system has depressurized and opened the fuel filler door. Open the fuel filler door to refuel and close the fuel filler door when refueling is complete.
Fuel door open Close fully to avoid Check engine light	Your vehicle is equipped with a sealed fuel system that requires the fuel filler door to be closed after refueling. This warning message appears when the fuel filler door is ajar. Close the fuel filler door to avoid the Check Engine light. If you see this message and the Check Engine light illuminates, close the fuel filler door. The Check Engine light should clear within five seconds. If the Check Engine light persists, see your dealer.
Refuel error See manual	Appears when the fuel system fails to depressurize, or the fuel filler door fails to open. You have to use the fuel filler door manual override lever when opening the fuel door.

Diesel Particulate Filter

WHAT IS THE DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER

The diesel particulate filter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful diesel particulates from the exhaust gas.

HOW DOES THE DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER WORK

The diesel particulate filter reduces emissions by trapping exhaust particles before they reach the tailpipe. The system must periodically clean the exhaust particles that gather inside the filter. This is carried out in three ways, passive regeneration, active regeneration and manual regeneration.

Passive Regeneration

In passive regeneration, the normal exhaust system temperature cleans the filter by oxidizing the soot. Cleaning occurs during normal vehicle operating conditions due to driving patterns.

Active Regeneration

Once the diesel particulate filter is full, active regeneration raises the exhaust temperature to eliminate the particles.

When the engine control module detects that the diesel particulate filter is nearly full of particulates, and you are not operating your vehicle in a manner to allow effective regeneration, messages appear in the information display as a reminder for you to drive your vehicle in order to clean the diesel particulate filter. If you drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective regeneration, the information display shows a cleaning exhaust filter message.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.



WARNING: When the **Exhaust filter cleaning** message appears in the information display, do not park near flammable materials, vapors or structures until filter cleaning is complete.



WARNING: The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter or the diesel particulate filter. The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and the diesel particulate filter heat up to very high temperatures after only a short period of engine operation and remain hot after you switch the engine off.

Note: Avoid running out of fuel.

Note: During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you may smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to high temperatures reached during regeneration and is normal.

Note: Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.

Diesel Particulate Filter

Failure to perform active or manual regeneration when instructed could result in a clogged diesel particulate filter. If the diesel particulate filter fills beyond the regeneration threshold, your vehicle disables the ability for active and manual regeneration. This could result in irreversible damage your vehicle Warranty may not cover.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER REQUIREMENTS

The diesel particulate filter on your vehicle requires periodic regeneration to maintain its correct function.

If your journeys meet one of the following conditions:

- You drive only short distances.
- You frequently switch the ignition on and off.
- Your journeys contain a high level of acceleration and deceleration.

You must carry out occasional trips with the following conditions to assist the regeneration process:

- Drive your vehicle in more favorable conditions, which you will find at higher vehicle speeds in normal driving, on a main road or freeway for a minimum of 20 minutes. This drive may include short stops that will not affect the regeneration process.
- Avoid prolonged idling and observe speed limits and road conditions.
- Do not switch the ignition off.
- Select a suitable gear to ideally maintain engine speed between 1500 and 3000 RPM.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION

WHAT IS DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION

Diesel particulate filter manual regeneration allows you to manually start regeneration of the diesel particulate filter at idle to clean the filter.

Note: *If you are not sure whether your vehicle has this feature, contact your authorized dealer.*

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Stay clear of the exhaust tailpipe during regeneration. Hot exhaust gases can burn you badly.

You may not be able to use manual regeneration if the service engine soon warning lamp appears in the information display.

Note: *During the use of manual regeneration, you may observe a light amount of white smoke. This is normal.*

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION REQUIREMENTS

You can use the manual regeneration feature when a message appears in the information display and you are not able to drive in a manner that allows effective automatic active regeneration or if you choose to manually start the regeneration of the diesel particulate filter while the vehicle is idle.

Diesel Particulate Filter

Before you start manual regeneration, do the following:

- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Shift into park (P) or neutral (N), on stable, level ground.
- Park your vehicle outside of any structure.
- Park your vehicle 3–5 m (10–15 ft) away from any obstructions and away from materials that can easily combust or melt, for example paper, leaves, petroleum products, fuels, plastics and other dry organic material.
- Make sure there is a minimum of 1/8 tank of fuel.
- Make sure all fluids are at proper levels.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION LIMITATIONS

You cannot use manual regeneration until the diesel particulate filter load percentage has reached 100%. The diesel particulate filter load percentage fluctuates up and down when driving your vehicle due to active and passive regenerations.

If your vehicle is operated with significant stationary operation, low speed drive cycles less than 40 km/h (25 mph), short drive cycles, drive time less than 15 minutes or the vehicle does not fully warm up, passive and active regeneration may not sufficiently clean the diesel particulate filter system.

Aftermarket devices or modifications to the exhaust system may reduce the effectiveness of the exhaust system as well as cause damage to the exhaust system or engine. This may also degrade vehicle performance and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

STARTING DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION

Start your vehicle and when the engine has reached normal operating temperature, press the information display control button on the steering wheel. See **Instrument Cluster Display** (page 142).

If the diesel particulate filter is near or at saturation, a message appears in the information display to initiate filter cleaning. See **Diesel Particulate Filter – Information Messages** (page 252). Follow the prompts to initiate manual regeneration. If you are unsure about the messages, contact an authorized dealer. The display confirms when the operation has started and when it has finished.



When the system is at the point of oversaturation, the malfunction indicator lamp illuminates and a message appears in the information display. You cannot initiate filter cleaning. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Once manual regeneration starts, engine speed increases and the cooling fan speed increases. Due to a change in engine speed and cooling fan speed, you may notice a change in sound.

It is not necessary to open the hood on the engine compartment. Once manual regeneration completes, the engine speed returns to normal idling. The exhaust system remains very hot for several minutes even after regeneration is complete. Do not reposition the vehicle over materials that could burn until the exhaust system has had sufficient time to cool. Depending on the amount of soot collected by the diesel particulate filter, ambient temperature and altitude, manual regeneration lasts approximately 30 minutes.

Diesel Particulate Filter

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER – WARNING LAMPS



If there are any issues with the diesel particulate filter system, or when the system is at the point of oversaturation, the powertrain warning lamp and the malfunction indicator lamp illuminate to inform you that your vehicle requires service. You may not be able to initiate filter cleaning. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Exhaust filter cleaning	Your vehicle has entered the cleaning mode. Various engine actions will raise the exhaust temperature in the Diesel Particulate Filter system to burn off the particles (exhaust soot). After the vehicle burns the particles off, the exhaust temperature will return to normal levels. This message is NORMAL.
Exhaust filter overloaded Drive to clean	The diesel particulate filter is full of particles (exhaust soot) and you are not operating the vehicle in a manner that allows normal cleaning. Drive the vehicle above 50 km/h (30 mph) when it is safe to do so, until the message turns off.
Exhaust filter overloaded Clean now	
Exhaust filter at limit Clean now	The diesel particulate filter is full of particles (exhaust soot) and you are not operating the vehicle in a manner that allows normal cleaning. Drive the vehicle above 50 km/h (30 mph) when it is safe to do so, until the message turns off.
Exhaust filter at limit Drive to clean now	
Exhaust filter drive completed	Your diesel particulate filter is clean.
Exhaust filter cleaned	Your diesel particulate filter is clean (OCR Only).
Exhaust filter cleaning stopped	The manual regeneration process has stopped (OCR Only).
Exhaust filter over limit Service now	You must have your vehicle serviced by an authorized dealer. Ignoring this warning message could lead to reduced drivability and customer expense, including damage to the diesel particulate filter. Your new vehicle warranty may not cover this damage.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

WHAT IS THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM

The selective catalytic reduction system helps reduce emission levels of oxides of nitrogen from the exhaust system.

HOW DOES THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM WORK

The selective catalytic reduction system injects diesel exhaust fluid into the exhaust system to enable correct selective catalytic reduction system function.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Keep AdBlue® out of reach of children. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. In case of contact with your eyes, immediately flush with water and get prompt medical attention. In case of contact with your skin, immediately clean with soap and water. If you swallow any AdBlue®, drink plenty of water and immediately seek medical attention.



WARNING: Only refill the AdBlue® tank in a well-ventilated area. When you remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap or an AdBlue® container cap, ammonia vapors may escape. Ammonia vapors can be irritating to skin, eyes and mucous membranes. Inhaling ammonia vapors can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose and cause coughing and watery eyes.



WARNING: Tampering with or disabling the selective catalytic reduction system results in severe vehicle performance limitation, eventually your vehicle not starting.



WARNING: Immediately refill the AdBlue® fluid when low and replace when contaminated. Drive with caution and be careful where you stop because you cannot restart your vehicle until you refill or replace the fluid.

Do not dilute the AdBlue® with water or any other liquid.

Do not put AdBlue® in the vehicle fuel tank. This can cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not put fuel or any additives in the AdBlue® tank. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not overfill the AdBlue® tank.

Immediately remove any residue on painted surfaces when filling with AdBlue®.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Only use AdBlue® certified to ISO-22241.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM GUIDELINES

Note: *The use and refilling of Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) is mandatory for your vehicle to comply with the legal emission requirements.*

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

- Only use AdBlue® certified to ISO-22241.
- Do not add fuel or any additives to the AdBlue tank. This will cause damage not covered by vehicle warranty.
- Do not overfill the AdBlue® tank.
- Do not dilute with water or any other liquid.
- Do not reuse an empty fluid container.
- Do not store in direct sunlight.
- Store the AdBlue® at temperatures between -5°C (23°F) and 20°C (68°F).
- Do not store fluid containers in your vehicle.
- The fluid is non-flammable, non-toxic, colorless and water-soluble.
- Make sure you immediately rinse any spills of AdBlue® on painted surfaces. Damage to the painted surface could occur.



The AdBlue® tank filler pipe is next to the fuel tank filler pipe and has a blue cap. Fill the tank using a fluid pump at an AdBlue® filling station or an AdBlue® container.

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK IN COLD WEATHER

AdBlue® may freeze when the temperature is below -11°C (12°F). Your vehicle has a preheating system which allows the fluid to operate below -11°C (12°F). If you overfill the AdBlue® tank and the fluid freezes, it may cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: *It may not be possible to fully fill the AdBlue® tank when the temperature is below -11°C (12°F).*

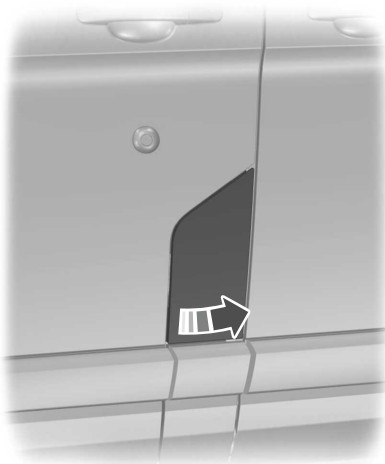
Note: *If the AdBlue® tank is frozen, it could not correctly display the fluid level or recognize when you fill the tank. The AdBlue® level updates when the tank completely thaws out.*

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK USING A FUEL STATION PUMP

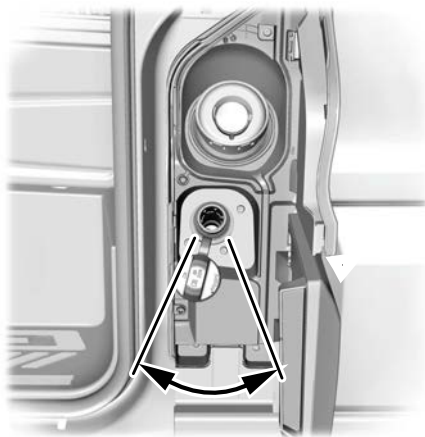
Filling the AdBlue® tank using a fuel station pump is similar to refueling your vehicle.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System



2. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.
3. Fully insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle.



4. Operate the AdBlue® pump nozzle within the area shown.

Note: The pump nozzle shuts off when the tank is full.

5. Slightly raise the AdBlue® pump nozzle and then slowly remove it.
6. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Incorrect fluid use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK USING A PORTABLE CONTAINER

Use containers that have a seal on the spout.

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions.

1. Remove the fluid container cap.
2. Place the spout onto the container and tighten it until you feel a strong resistance.
3. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.
4. Insert the spout into the AdBlue® tank filler pipe until the seal on the spout fully seats.
5. Pour the fluid into the tank.

Note: The fluid stops flowing when the tank is full.

6. Return the container to the vertical position slightly below the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.
7. Allow any fluid remaining in the spout to drain back into the container.
8. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

9. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® container and replace the cap.
10. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Incorrect fluid use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

CHECKING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION FLUID LEVEL

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle Maintenance**.
4. Select **AdBlue® level**.

CHECKING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM STATUS

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle Maintenance**.
4. Select **AdBlue® Info**.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION FLUID CONSUMPTION

AdBlue® consumption is directly related to fuel consumption and is governed by many factors, for example driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, add-on accessories, payload and towing. The AdBlue® consumption may vary between 1% and 6% of the fuel consumption but could be more under extreme conditions such as heavy towing.

AdBlue® consumption is specified for a vehicle variant and not for a single car.

ADBLUE® CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Advertised Capacity

The advertised capacity is the difference between the amount of AdBlue® in a full tank and a tank when the fluid level gauge indicates empty. In addition, a tank contains an empty reserve, which is the amount of fluid in the tank after the fluid gauge indicates empty.

Note: *The amount of usable fluid in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.*

For filling information please refer to the Capacities and Specifications section of the owner's manual. See **AdBlue® Capacity and Specification** (page 541).

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



The warning lamp illuminates if the system detects the fluid level

is low or if there is a system malfunction.

If the warning lamp illuminates, the information display messages give you an indication whether the concern is fluid related or if there is a selective catalytic reductant system malfunction. If the warning lamp illuminates when your vehicle is moving, and the fluid is at a sufficient level, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

AdBlue® Level

Message	Action
AdBlue® low Range : XXXX km Refill soon AdBlue® low Range : XXXX mls Refill soon	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible.
AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX km AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX mls	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible.
AdBlue® level empty. Refill to start engine	The AdBlue® tank is empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank. The minimum AdBlue® refill quantity required to restart the engine is available in the information display.

Note: When filling the AdBlue® tank from empty, there may be a short period before the increased AdBlue® level is registered.

Note: If the AdBlue® tank freezes at low level, the displayed remaining distance could be reduced.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

AdBlue® Malfunction

Message	Action
AdBlue® system malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX km AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX mls	Indicates the approximate distance before a detected system fault would restrict the engine from starting. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdBlue® system Service required to start engine	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What is that noise after switching off the engine?

- When you switch off the engine the selective catalytic reduction system pump runs for a short period of time. This is normal.

Catalytic Converter

WHAT IS THE CATALYTIC CONVERTER

The catalytic converter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful pollutants from the exhaust gas.

CATALYTIC CONVERTER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



WARNING: The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.



WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 428).

- Use the correct fuel. See **Fuel and Refueling** (page 237).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

Note: Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, or services a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working.

CATALYTIC CONVERTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

CATALYTIC CONVERTER – WARNING LAMPS

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this may indicate that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.



Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Failure to respond to a warning lamp may cause damage that your vehicle Warranty may not cover. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Gasoline Particulate Filter

WHAT IS THE GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER

The gasoline particulate filter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful particulates from the exhaust emissions.

HOW DOES THE GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER WORK

Particles in the exhaust emissions collect in the gasoline particulate filter causing a gradual restriction over time. This restriction is removed through a regeneration process controlled by the engine control system. The regeneration process converts the particles captured by the filter into harmless gases.

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables.
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not ignore warning lamps, indicators or information messages.

If the filter is saturated or is approaching saturation, a warning lamp could illuminate or a message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

If you do not take action when a warning lamp illuminates or a message appears in the information display, you could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER REQUIREMENTS

Regeneration occurs during normal driving, to varying degrees depending on how you drive. Regeneration occurs when you drive at moderate to high speed but if you generally drive short distances at low speed, the engine control system could actively raise the exhaust emissions temperature to remove the particles that have collected in the filter to make sure that it continues to correctly operate.

To assist regeneration, we recommend that you make occasional journeys that allow you to:

- Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for a minimum of 20 minutes.
- Avoid prolonged engine idling.
- Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER – WARNING LAMPS



Malfunction indicator lamp.

Gasoline Particulate Filter

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Exhaust filter at limit Drive to clean now	• Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for 20 minutes or until the message disappears. • Avoid prolonged engine idling. • Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.
Exhaust filter over limit Service now	• Drive at a moderate speed. • Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration. • Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

High Voltage Battery - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

WHAT IS THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

The high voltage battery is a highly sophisticated lithium ion battery system, used to store electrified energy to power your vehicle.

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: This battery pack should only be serviced by an authorized electric vehicle technician. Improper handling can result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the cooling fan.

Your vehicle consists of various high-voltage components and wiring. All of the high-voltage power flows through specific wiring assemblies labeled as such or covered with a solid orange convolute, or orange striped tape, or both. Do not come in contact with these components.

PRESERVING YOUR HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

When using the battery at a low state of charge, your vehicle could start disabling accessory features.

If your vehicle reaches a 0% state of charge, recharge your vehicle as soon as possible.

In everyday use it is acceptable to use the full state of charge window, however there are a few best practices we recommend in order to maintain the health and life of your battery.

Overnight Charging

You can increase the longevity and performance of your high voltage battery by using the charge scheduling and departure and comfort settings on your touchscreen or in the FordPass app.

With Charge Scheduling you can improve the high voltage battery's longevity by delaying the start of charging and setting a maximum charging limit. Setting the maximum charge level to be 80% for everyday usage reduces strain on the battery.

You can improve driving range and performance by scheduling departure times and cabin comfort level with the Departure and Comfort features. This not only to warm or cool the cabin but also to condition the battery to ensure best driving range and performance by the set departure time.

Storage Temperature

Storing your vehicle in temperatures between 0°C (32°F) and 45°C (113°F) is the most beneficial for the high voltage battery.

Plug in your vehicle at temperatures just above the freezing point or lower to maintain battery performance and maximize driving range.

Storage State of Charge

Storing your vehicle's high voltage battery at higher states of charge is less favorable than storing at lower states of charge.

High Voltage Battery - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

To store your vehicle at a low state of charge, you can set a low charge limit for your location. See **Charging Settings** (page 287). See **Charging Settings** (page 292).

PRESERVING YOUR HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

When using the battery at a low state of charge, your vehicle could start disabling accessory features.

If your vehicle reaches a 0% state of charge, recharge your vehicle as soon as possible.

In everyday use it is acceptable to use the full state of charge window, however there are a few best practices we recommend in order to maintain the health and life of your battery.

Overnight Charging

You can increase the longevity and performance of your high voltage battery by using the charge scheduling and departure and comfort settings on your touchscreen or in the FordPass app.

With Charge Scheduling you can improve the high voltage battery's longevity by delaying the start of charging and setting a maximum charging limit. Setting the maximum charge level to be 80% for everyday usage reduces strain on the battery.

You can improve driving range and performance by scheduling departure times and cabin comfort level with the Departure and Comfort features. This not only to warm or cool the cabin but also to condition the battery to ensure best driving range and performance by the set departure time.

DC Charging

Note: *DC charging is only available for battery electric vehicles.*

Minimizing the use of DC fast charging can help to preserve the health of the high voltage battery through the life of the vehicle. See **DC Charging** (page 282).

Storage Temperature

Storing your vehicle in temperatures between 0°C (32°F) and 45°C (113°F) is the most beneficial for the high voltage battery.

Plug in your vehicle at temperatures just above the freezing point or lower to maintain battery performance and maximize driving range.

Storage State of Charge

Storing your vehicle's high voltage battery at higher states of charge is less favorable than storing at lower states of charge.

To store your vehicle at a low state of charge, you can set a low charge limit for your location. See **Charging Settings** (page 287). See **Charging Settings** (page 292).

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

Please recycle in accordance with local regulations.

High Voltage Battery - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

ENERGY CONSUMPTION REGULATIONS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Energy Consumption (Off-Vehicle Charging)

The declared WLTP energy consumptions and electric range are determined according to the technical requirements and specifications of the European Regulations (EC) 715/2007 and (EU) 2017/1151 as last amended. The applied standard test procedures enable comparison between different vehicle types and different manufacturers.

In accordance with the Worldwide Harmonized Light Vehicles Test Procedure (WLTP) the certified electric range can be achieved with a fully charged battery depending on the existing series and battery configuration. The actual electric range may vary due to various factors such as weather conditions, driving style, route profile, vehicle condition, age and condition of the lithium-ion battery.

European Directive 1999/94/EC

In addition to the fuel/energy efficiency of a car, driving behaviour as well as other non-technical factors play a role in determining a car's fuel/energy consumption, CO₂ emissions and electric range. CO₂ is the main greenhouse gas responsible for global warming. A guide on fuel economy and CO₂ emissions which contains data for all new passenger car models is available at any point of sale free of charge.

ENERGY CONSUMPTION FIGURES - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Electric Range City	Electric Range	Electric Energy Consumption	Weighted, Combined CO ₂
km (mi)	km (mi)	kWh/100km (mi/kWh)	g/km
251 - 504 (156 - 313)	173 - 337 (108 - 209)	41.4 - 21.5 (1.5 - 2.9)	0

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the powertrain requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

CHARGING EQUIPMENT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Read all instructions and warnings in this publication before using the charging equipment.



WARNING: Do not use an electrical outlet that is immersed or submerged in water, snow, or in an electrical storm. When using the charging equipment, avoid moisture, water and snow at all times. Failure to follow these instructions could result in fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The wall outlet and charging equipment must be in good condition and installed to comply with provisions of up-to-date local codes and regulations. Do not use an ungrounded wall outlet. Have a qualified, licensed electrician install and check the wall outlet, if you suspect that it is not properly grounded, the connection feels loose, or the outlet is damaged. The wall plug must fit firmly and fully into the outlet. Do not use extension cords, surge protectors, timers or other adapters. Failure to follow these instructions could result in electric shock, property damage, personal injury, or death.



WARNING: Do not drop the control box or coupler. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, fire, electric shock, death or property damage.



WARNING: Visually inspect the charging equipment before each use. Do not use the charging equipment if it is damaged. Do not attempt to open or repair any part of the charging equipment components as it will not

operate. Charging equipment components contain critical safety devices in the wall outlet plug and connector that cannot be serviced. Contact your local dealer for assistance. Failure to follow these instructions could result in fire, electric shock, or personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the charging equipment in temperatures outside of the operation range of -30°C (-22°F) to 50°C (122°F). Store the charging equipment in a clean dry place between the temperatures of -30°C (-22°F) to 85°C (185°F). Stow the control box indoors on the hanger or all the charging equipment in the bag after use to prevent damage to the charging equipment and personal injury.



WARNING: Do not connect or disconnect any pluggable components of the charging equipment when in use or charging. Do not put fingers or any object into the electric charge coupler. Supervise any children in the vicinity of the charging equipment when plugged into the wall outlet. Failure to follow these instructions could cause damage to the charging equipment or cause personal injury or death.



WARNING: This equipment has arcing or sparking parts. Do not expose to flammable vapors. Position this equipment at least 450 mm (18 in) above the floor.



WARNING: High voltage is present in your electric meter housing and power distribution panel. Contact with high voltage can result in fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

CHARGING EQUIPMENT OVERVIEW

Public Charge Cord

Your vehicle comes with a public charge cord located under the passenger seat or safely secured and clipped in the cargo area.



You can charge your high voltage battery with the public charge cord at a public AC charge station that has no cables attached. See **Charging Using Your Public Charge Cord** (page 279).

A charge wall box can be purchased separately as an accessory to utilize the public charge cord at home.

Specification Type	Specification Value
Charger Model	Type 2
Voltage (PHEV)	230 V
Voltage (BEV)	230–400 V
Maximum Current (PHEV)	16 amps max continuous
Maximum Current (BEV)	32 amps max continuous (per phase)
Phases (PHEV)	1

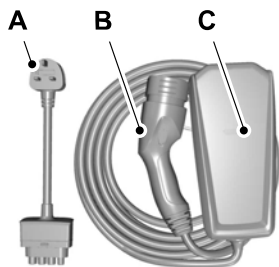
Specification Type	Specification Value
Phases (BEV)	1-3
Frequency	50Hz
Power (PHEV)	3.5 kW max
Power (BEV)	Vehicle 11kW max, Public charge cord 22 kW max
Cable length	5–10 m (16–33 ft)
Operating temperature	-30°C (-22°F) to 50°C (122°F)
Storage temperature	-30°C (-22°F) to 85°C (185°F)
Environmental	IP65
Ventilation	Not required
Maximum Altitude	4000m

Universal Home Charge Cord (if Equipped)

You can charge your vehicle's high-voltage battery using a standard household outlet with the universal home charge cord. See **Charging at Home** (page 275).

The universal home charge cord can be purchased separately as an accessory. It has a low power connector to use with a 230V outlet. A high power connector can also be purchased separately. Connector type varies by market.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)



- A Connector.
- B Coupler.
- C Control Box.

You must plug the connector into the control box first. Then plug the connector into the household outlet, and then plug into the vehicle charge port.

The power indicator illuminates blue when the connector is properly inserted into the control box and dedicated wall outlet.

Note: To insert the connector, firmly grasp the connector by the cable or plug and push into the control box until an audible click is heard. Make sure the connector is fully inserted and flush with the control box before inserting it into the outlet. Improper insertion causes a longer charge session or faults.

Note: Follow the installation instructions provided with the charger.

Note: We recommend using the supplied plugs and connectors.

Note: Use the correct connector for the appropriate market in which you are charging your vehicle.

Note: If you do not use a dedicated circuit, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If a dedicated circuit is not available, contact a licensed professional electrician regarding the installation of a dedicated outlet.

Note: The universal home charge cord will not charge and give a fault indication, if ground is not present.

Note: Plug the connector for the universal home charge cord directly into the wall plug receptacle. Do not plug the universal home charge cord into any form of extension cord.

Note: If the wall bracket is not used for mounting the charging equipment, plug the charging equipment into an outlet closer to ground.

Note: Handle the coupler with care. Do not drop the coupler. The coupler and the cable should be mounted to the wall when not in use.

Specification Type	Specification Value
Charger Model	IEC
Voltage	230 V
Maximum Current	16 amps max continuous
Frequency	50Hz
Power draw when idle	< 2 Watts
Power draw when charging	< 4 Watts
Cable length	6.1 m (20 ft)
Operating temperature	-30°C (-22°F) to 50°C (122°F)
Storage temperature	-30°C (-22°F) to 85°C (185°F)

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Specification Type	Specification Value
Environmental	IP65
Ventilation	Not required
Maximum Altitude	4000m

Universal Home Charge Cord Auto-Restart

Auto-restart helps make sure that your vehicle is charged and ready for use when needed. A charge could be interrupted if errors are detected. Charging resumes once the error is no longer detected. The red indicator illuminates during an error condition.

The exception to the immediate auto-restart is when the interruption is due to a charger ground fault circuit interruption (GFCI) event. The charger attempts to restart 15 minutes after a (GFCI) event. After the fourth attempt to restart, the charger shuts down and the red indicator stays on.

If the fault persists, do not continue to try to charge your vehicle. Contact your authorized dealer.

MOVING AND STORAGE INSTRUCTIONS

Make sure you wrap the universal home charge cord after charging. Store the universal home charge cord in the storage bag supplied with the universal home charge cord when not in use.

Note: Do not hold the universal home charge cord by the power cable. Hold the complete unit and carefully place back in the storage bag.

Note: To remove the connector, firmly grasp the connector by the cable or plug and pull away from the control box.

CARE INSTRUCTIONS

Do not use cleaners or solvents as this could damage the universal home charge cord. Do not place stress on the charger cables. If the unit overheats, remove the universal home charge cord from direct sunlight.

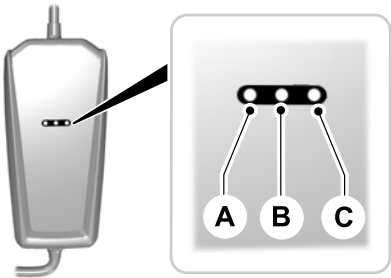
SAFETY FEATURES

The charger includes the following safety features to protect against the risk of electric shock:

- Service ground check: The charger constantly checks for the presence of a service ground connection. If the service ground ever fails, the charger's red indicator illuminates and shuts down power to the vehicle.
- Thermal event sensor: Charger module senses out-of-ordinary thermal events and decreases charging current or shut the unit down if required.
- GFCI protection: The charger has a ground fault circuit interruption (GFCI) reaction system to protect against electric shock. If the charger module detects an output ground fault, it shuts down power to the output cable and the red indicator illuminates.
- Insulation: The charger module, connector, cable assembly, and charge coupler are completely insulated, no exposed live parts, to protect against electric shock.
- Unintentional disconnection: The charge coupler is designed to minimize unintentional disconnection. A pilot signal wire in the cable and charge coupler eliminates the possibility of electric shock when not connected to a vehicle or if an unintended disconnect occurs during a charge. Disconnection during charging is safe.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

CHARGING EQUIPMENT INDICATORS



- A Amber fault indicator
- B Blue status indicator
- C Red trouble indicator

Note: When first plugged into a wall outlet the amber, blue and red indicators blink once. Then the blue indicator turns on, followed by a blink of the red indicator. After, the blue indicator turns off then back on. This cycle happens twice if a different connector is used from a previous charge.

Unpowered

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	OFF	The mobile power cord is not powered.

Make sure the outlet is operational, and the circuit breaker is in the ON position or try using another outlet. Ensure the connector is fully inserted into mobile power cord. Ensure the plug is not severely degraded. If the error persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Charging

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	PULSING	OFF	The mobile power cord is charging.

No action required.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Standby

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	ON	OFF	The mobile power cord is powered and ready to charge. At the current time the mobile power cord is not charging the vehicle.

If you expect the mobile power cord to be charging the vehicle, make sure the vehicle coupler is properly inserted into the vehicle. Check and adjust your charging time preferences in the on screen display. If your vehicle is still not charging, contact your authorized dealer.

Startup and Rebooting

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
ON	ON	ON	The mobile power cord is recovering after encountering an error.

Universal home charge cord is powering up or recovering after an error. If the mobile power cord cycles for more than 2-3 minutes, unplug the vehicle coupler. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the issue persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Charging Reduced, Internal Issue

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
ON	PULSING	OFF	The mobile power cord is charging at a reduced rate due to overheating.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Make sure the connector and the control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the mobile power cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area.

Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. If the error persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Charging Reduced, AC Plug Or Wall Outlet

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
BLINK	PULSING	OFF	The mobile power cord is charging at a reduced rate due to overheating of the connector or the wall outlet.

Make sure the connector and control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. Ensure the connector is fully seated. If the universal home charge cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. Have a licensed electrician check for missing ground, utility under or overvoltage. If the error persists, contact your authorized dealer.

User Troubleshooting

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
ON	OFF	OFF	The mobile power cord has encountered a fault that requires troubleshooting.

Make sure the connector and control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the mobile power cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. If the error persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Non - Recoverable Fault

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	ON	There is an internal fault in the mobile power cord that cannot be recovered.

Try a different connector if you have one available. If error persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Non - Recoverable Fault

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	BLINK	There is an internal fault in the connector that cannot be recovered.

Try using another connector if you have one available. If not, contact your authorized dealer about obtaining a replacement. If your warranty has expired, you can order a replacement from your dealer.

Ground Leakage Fault

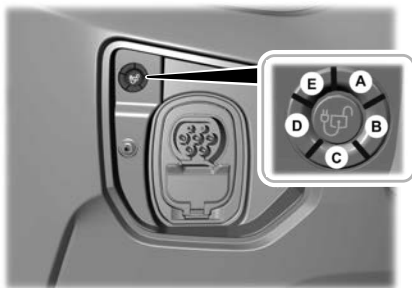
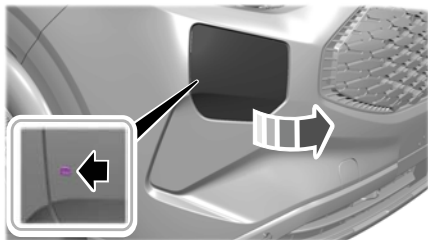
AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	PULSING	Electrical current is leaking through a potentially unsafe path.

Note: When plugging into an unfamiliar wall outlet, let the vehicle charge for several minutes before leaving it unattended. The red indicator illuminates if it is not charging. The unit turns off if the breaker or infrastructure ground fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) is tripped. You can view your vehicle charging status remotely via the Ford Pass app.

LOCATING THE CHARGE PORT

The charge port is on the front-right side of your vehicle. To open, press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door and then release.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)



Note: Do not apply excessive force. Forcing the door open or closed damages the charge port.

CHARGE PORT INDICATORS

The charge status indicator is next to the charging port behind the charge port door. It indicates the charge status of the high voltage battery in your vehicle.

Divided into five zones, the charge status indicator displays the state of charge in 20 percent increments.

The charge status indicator displays how far along the charge is:

- When zone A is pulsing, the charge is between 0-20 percent.
- When zone A illuminates, and zone B is pulsing, the charge is between 20-40 percent.
- When zones A and B illuminate and zone C is pulsing, the charge is between 40-60 percent.
- When zones A, B, and C illuminate, and zone D is pulsing, the charge is between 60-80 percent.
- When zones A, B, C, and D illuminate, and zone E is pulsing, the charge is between 80-100 percent.
- When all zones illuminate, the charge is 100 percent.

Note: When charging stops, the charge status indicator shows all the completed zones solidly illuminated in a blue color for 30 seconds before turning off. For example, if charging stops at 70 percent, then A, B, and C light up solidly to indicate a battery charge level of at least 60 percent but less than 80 percent. Charging stops when complete or when paused due to charge settings or charge station actions.

Note: If the charge status indicator does not light up or pulse after plugging in, please verify that the charge port light setting is On. If you do not wish to have the charge status indicator light up at all while charging, then you can turn it Off. Locate the charge port light under the access menu on your in-vehicle touchscreen.

There are three charge port indicator light colors, which indicate a specific action:

White is used as a courtesy light to help with plugging in and to acknowledge actions such as plugging in and unplugging.

Blue is used when the vehicle is plugged in and either charging or waiting to charge.

Red is used to indicate charge faults.

Note: Faults can occur within the vehicle charging system or outside the vehicle, such as with the universal home charge cord, charge station or electrical supply.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Note: If the system detects a fault in the vehicle charging system at any point in a charge cycle, the entire charge port indicator illuminates solidly in red color for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens, unplug the charge coupler and then plug it back into the charge port receptacle. If the problem persists, contact your dealer.

Note: If the system detects a fault outside the vehicle, such as with the charge station or universal home charge cord, the entire charge port indicator flashes red continuously for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens check the universal home charge cord and the charge station or electrical supply.



This indicator also show up on the instrument cluster if a charge fault occurs.

AC CHARGING

CHARGING AT HOME

Charging through a standard household outlet with the universal home charge cord.

Universal home charge cords are optional equipments. For more information, contact your authorized dealer.



AC charging is the preferred method of charging. AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

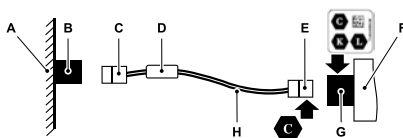
When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery for best performance.

CAUTION: TO REDUCE THE RISK OF

FIRE - The plug must be properly grounded. Use a dedicated circuit. If you do not use a dedicated circuit, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If you do not have a dedicated circuit, contact a licensed professional electrician for proper installation.

You must unwrap the universal home charge cord completely before charging.

When using the universal home charge cord, plug the charge coupler into the vehicle charge port where the same identifier symbol can be seen.

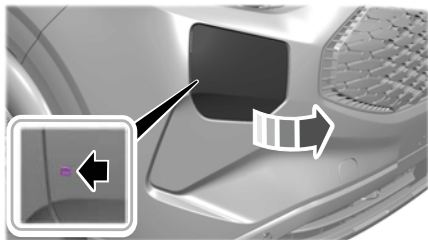


- A Mains.
- B Socket Outlet (Household).
- C Plug.
- D Control box.
- E Charge coupler.
- F Vehicle.
- G Charge port receptacle.
- H Universal home charge cord.

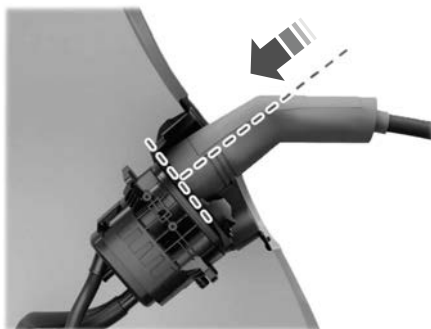
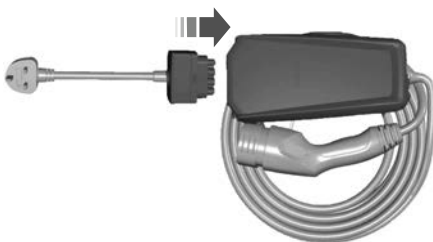
1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge and for the charge status indicator to illuminate.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)



2. Press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.



3. Select the appropriate connector for the wall outlet you will use and plug the connector into the universal home charge cord control box.

Note: To insert the connector, firmly grasp the connector by the cable or plug and push into the control box until it clicks. Make sure the connector is fully inserted and flush with the control box before inserting it into the outlet. Improper insertion will cause a longer charge session or faults.

4. Plug the connector into the wall outlet.
5. Confirm that the universal home charge cord's LEDs illuminate.
6. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.



Note: Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Note: When you plug in your vehicle, it will start charging to 100% by default unless scheduled charging has been set up for this location.

Note: Plug the connector into the wall outlet before connecting the charge coupler to your vehicle's charge port.

Note: When the handle is properly engaged the light ring will illuminate. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

Note: There could be a delay in light ring illumination due to vehicle internal communications.

Note: If charging for your vehicle fails, please contact the Customer Relationship Center. To ensure superior service, please take note of the serial number when contacting customer support.

For more information, visit www.owner.ford.com.

Stopping Charging



1. Push the coupler unlock button on the light ring and remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

Note: Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

Note: You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.

Note: You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance or try the manual release method. See **Charge Coupler Manual Release** (page 285). See **Charge Coupler Manual Release** (page 286).

Note: If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time. Charging does not resume.

Note: You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler handle.



2. Press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

CHARGING IN PUBLIC

Charging at an AC charge station with cables attached.

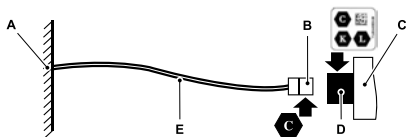


AC charging is the preferred method of charging. AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery for best performance.

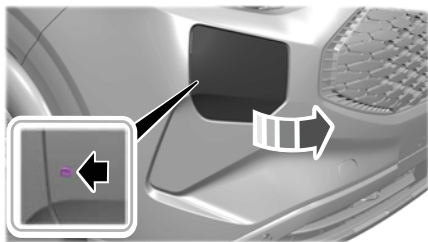
When using an AC charge station with cables attached, choose charge station cord coupler where the same identifier symbol can be seen.



- A AC charge station.
- B Charge coupler.
- C Vehicle.
- D Charge port receptacle.
- E Cable.

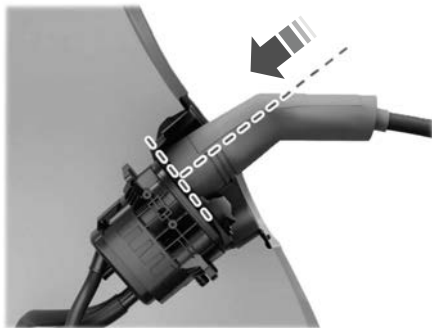
1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge.



2. Press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.

3. Select the appropriate charge station coupler.
4. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.



Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Note: Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.

Note: When you plug in your vehicle, it will start charging to 100% by default unless scheduled charging has been set up for this location.

Note: When the handle is properly engaged the light ring will illuminate. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

Note: There could be a delay in light ring illumination due to vehicle internal communications.

Information about public charge stations, pricing, power levels and real time availability is available through the in-vehicle screen as well as the vehicle app. Rates for charging will vary by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

When charging your vehicle at a BlueOval Charge Network station, use the vehicle App to activate and pay for charging. You can also just plug in to activate charging at Plug & Charge capable stations. If the charging station is not in the BlueOval Charge Network, use the directions on the charge station to activate the charger.

For more information, visit www.owner.ford.com.

Stopping Charging



1. Push the coupler unlock button on the light ring and remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

Note: Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

Note: You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.

Note: You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance or try the manual release method. See **Charge Coupler Manual Release** (page 285). See **Charge Coupler Manual Release** (page 286).

Note: If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time. Charging does not resume.

Note: You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler handle.



2. Press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

CHARGING USING YOUR PUBLIC CHARGE CORD

Charging at an AC charge station without cables attached or at a wall box.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Charge wall boxes are optional equipments. For more information, contact your authorized dealer.

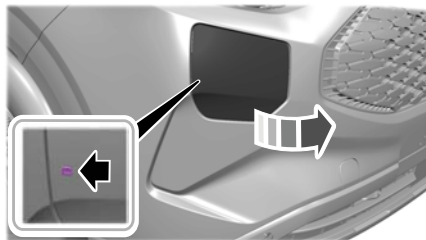


AC charging is the preferred method of charging. AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

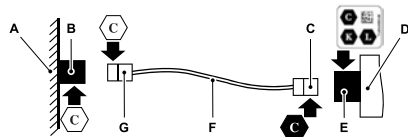
When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery for best performance.

When using an AC charge station without cables attached, plug your public charge cord into the charge station and the vehicle charge port where the same identifier symbol can be seen.

You must unwrap the public charge cord completely before charging.



2. Press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.
3. Select the appropriate charge station port.



- A AC charge station.
- B Charge station port.
- C Vehicle charge coupler.
- D Vehicle.
- E Charge port receptacle.
- F Public charge cable.
- G Charge station charge coupler.

1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge.

4. Plug the charge station side coupler into the charge station port.

Note: To insert the coupler, firmly grasp the handle and push into the charge station port.

5. Plug the vehicle side coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)



Note: When you plug in your vehicle, it will start charging to 100% by default unless scheduled charging has been set up for this location.

Note: When the handle is properly engaged the light ring will illuminate. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

Note: There could be a delay in light ring illumination due to vehicle internal communications.

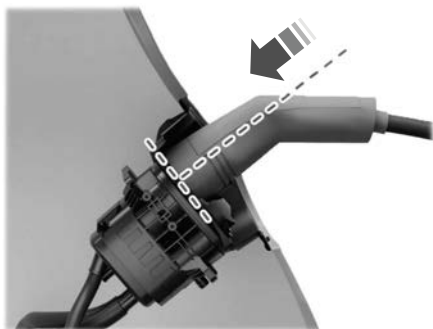
Information about public charge stations, pricing, power levels and real time availability is available through the in-vehicle screen as well as the vehicle app. Rates for charging will vary by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

When charging your vehicle at a BlueOval Charge Network station, use the vehicle App to activate and pay for charging. You can also just plug in to activate charging at Plug & Charge capable stations. If the charging station is not in the BlueOval Charge Network, use the directions on the charge station to activate the charger.

For more information, visit

www.owner.ford.com.

Stopping Charging



Note: Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.



1. Push the coupler unlock button on the light ring and remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Note: Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

Note: You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.

Note: You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance or try the manual release method. See **Charge Coupler Manual Release** (page 285). See **Charge Coupler Manual Release** (page 286).

Note: If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time. Charging does not resume.

Note: You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler handle.



2. Press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

DC CHARGING - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



DC charging allows you to charge the vehicle's high voltage battery in significantly less time than the standard charge method. You can charge on the go before the battery has exhausted all of its power, or when traveling using the trip planner as part of your vehicle app.

We recommend ending DC charges at 80% state of charge.

In cold temperatures, you may notice that DC charging takes longer when the ambient temperature drops below 10°C (50°F). Shutting off climate control or reducing climate control temperature and fan settings for the first 10 to 15 minutes of DC charging allows the battery to warm up and improve the charging rate.

For the convenience of DC charging and time, there is a different fee structure depending on the charging station and network you choose.

Note: The system could reduce DC fast charging rate to preserve the battery. This is based on battery temperature, battery state of charge and battery health.

Note: When the temperature is below freezing, fully turning off cabin heat for the first 10 to 15 minutes of DC charging could significantly improve the charging rate.

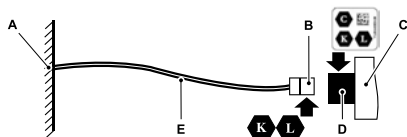
Note: Charge times vary depending on outside air temperature, power level, charger type, and location in which you are charging.

Note: The system could reduce the DC charging rate to maximize the life of the battery.

To charge the high-voltage battery at a charge station:

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

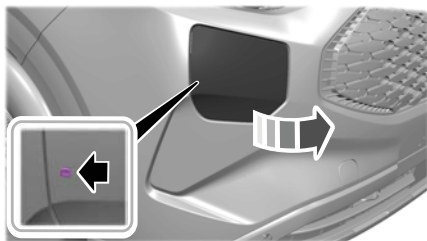
When using charge station with cables attached, choose the charge station cord coupler where the same identifier symbol can be seen.



- A DC charge station.
- B Charge coupler.
- C Vehicle.
- D Charge port receptacle.
- E Cable.

1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge and for the charge status indicator to illuminate.



2. Press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.

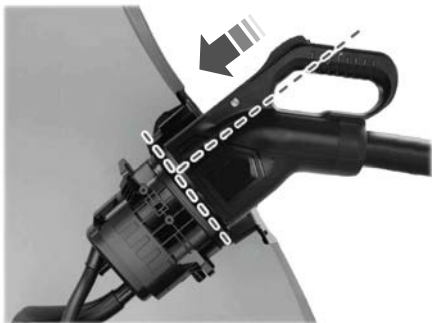


3. Open the dust cap cover on the charge port to expose lower connectors.



4. Select the appropriate DC charge station coupler.
5. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)



Note: Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.

Note: When the charge coupler is properly engaged, the light ring illuminates. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

Note: The vehicle monitors battery health and may take actions including, but not limited to, reducing the DC fast charge rate to protect the battery hardware from damage, and to maintain battery health.

Information about public charge stations, pricing, power levels and real time availability is available through the in-vehicle screen as well as the vehicle app. Rates for charging will vary by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

Stopping Charging

1. Push the coupler unlock button on the light ring and remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.



2. Close the dust cap cover.

Note: Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

Note: You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.

Note: You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance or try the manual release method. See **Charge Coupler Manual Release** (page 286).

Note: If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time. Charging does not resume.

Note: You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler handle.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)



3. Press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door to close.



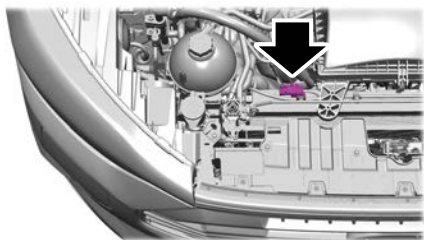
4. Press the latch and pull the low voltage service disconnect switch to the off position.

CHARGE COUPLER MANUAL RELEASE - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

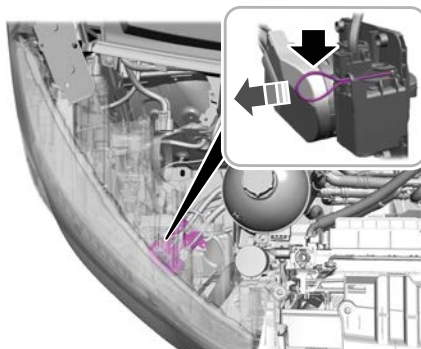
In the event that your vehicle does not unlock the charge coupler after pressing the unlock button or through the vehicle access menu, you can manually release it.

Releasing the charge coupler:

1. Switch off your vehicle.
2. Open the hood.



3. Locate the low voltage service disconnect switch.



5. Locate and pull the manual release ring in the direction shown.

Note: The ring is located on the back of the charge port, under the right-hand side headlamp. It is accessible by hand.

6. Remove the charge coupler from the vehicle charge port.
7. Push the low voltage service disconnect switch to the on position.
8. Close the hood.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Note: The next time you start your vehicle or plug in to charge, the locking mechanism re-engages and the manual release latch resets.

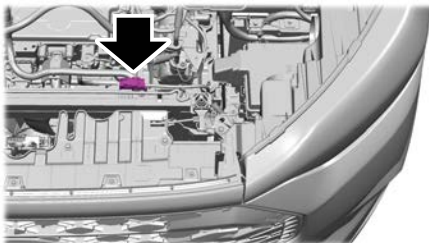
Note: If the issue persists, have your vehicle checked.

CHARGE COUPLER MANUAL RELEASE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

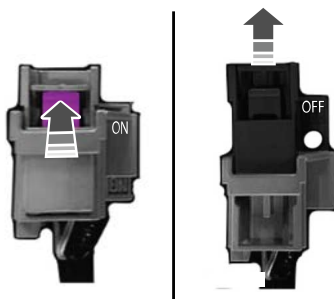
In the event that your vehicle does not unlock the charge coupler after pressing the unlock button or through the vehicle access menu, you can manually release it.

Releasing the charge coupler:

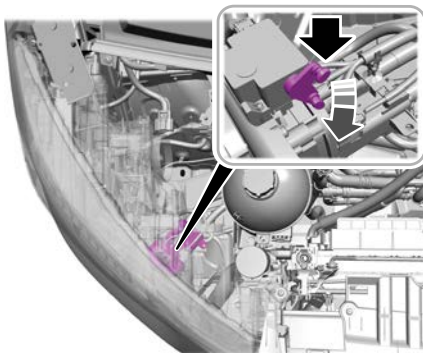
1. Switch off your vehicle.
2. Open the hood.



3. Locate the low voltage service disconnect switch.



4. Press the latch and pull the low voltage service disconnect switch to the off position.



5. Locate and press the manual release latch down as shown.

Note: The latch is located on the back of the charge port, under the right-hand side headlamp. It is accessible by hand.

6. Remove the charge coupler from the vehicle charge port.
7. Push the low voltage service disconnect switch to the on position.
8. Close the hood.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Note: The next time you start your vehicle or plug in to charge, the locking mechanism re-engages and the manual release latch resets.

Note: If the issue persists, have your vehicle checked.

CHARGING SETTINGS - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

 You can schedule charging to take advantage of lower cost electricity rates during off-peak hours if you have signed up for a time of use pricing plan with your utility provider. You can also set a max charge limit for your battery and a departure time and cabin temperature so your vehicle is ready to go when you are.

Scheduled charging can be set up on the touchscreen or in the FordPass app.

To view your charge settings:

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press Charge Settings on the touchscreen.

Charge Settings Screen



- A Charging status icon.
B Charging status.

- C High voltage battery state of charge.
D Charging time information.
E One-time max charge limit.
F Departure and comfort settings.



- A Charging locations.

Charging Status Icons

Displays when your vehicle is plugged in.



Not charging due to a fault.



Not currently charging.



Charging.



Waiting to charge based on charge time settings.

Charging Status

Shows the present state of the charging system.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Charge Status	Action
Will charge when plugged in	The vehicle is unplugged and starts charging once plugged in.
Will wait for preferred charging time	The vehicle is unplugged at a location with charging time preferences enabled. Charging is scheduled to start at the time displayed based on your vehicle settings. You must plug your vehicle in prior to the start time to begin charging at that time.
Waiting for preferred charging time	The vehicle is plugged in at a location with charging time preferences enabled. Charging starts at the time displayed, which is based on your charge time settings.
Charging stopped	The vehicle is plugged in and charging has been stopped through the FordPass app.
Charging	The vehicle is plugged in and charging.
Charged	The vehicle finished charging to the max charge limit setting.
Charging 12V battery	The vehicle is plugged in and charging the 12V battery.
Conditioning the cabin	The vehicle is plugged in and the climate control system is operating according to the departure and comfort settings.
Conditioning the battery	The vehicle is plugged in and conditioning the high voltage battery.
Vehicle charging fault	The vehicle is plugged in and there is a fault within the vehicle charging system. Unplug and plug back in. If the fault is still present, contact your authorized EV certified dealer.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Charge Status	Action
Charging station fault	The vehicle is plugged in and a fault has been detected with the charge station or charging cord. Check the charging cord and the charging station or electrical supply.
Charging station not detected	A charging coupler has been plugged into the vehicle but there is no connection with a charging power source.
Charging station paused	The vehicle is plugged in and charging has been paused at the charge station.

High Voltage Battery State of Charge

Displays the remaining charge percentage with 100% representing the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge.

Charging Time Information

When charging, the start and estimated end time displays.

When your vehicle is at a saved charging location and not plugged in, the start and end times display based on known charging infrastructure.

Note: *Charging time information is estimated. Certain conditions could result in longer charging times.*

One-Time Max Charge Limit

Select to set a one-time max charge limit.

To temporarily adjust the charge level at which charging stops, you can set a one-time max charge limit which only applies to your next charging session. If the vehicle is already plugged in, the one-time max charge limit applies to the current

charging session. The one-time max charge limit expires after one charging event. The vehicle then reverts to your saved charging location max charge setting or system default if not at a saved charging location.

Departure and Comfort



Press the edit button for departure and comfort settings.

Setting departure times allows you to control charging schedules and warm or cool your cabin and the high voltage battery when your vehicle is plugged in, so your vehicle is ready to drive when you are. By setting a departure time, your vehicle can use your charging time preferences to minimize your electricity costs but still prioritize finishing charging before your scheduled departure. The calendar view allows you to program two departure times per day for each day of the week.

Note: *By using energy from your charging source while plugged in, battery temperature can be managed for best driving performance and less energy is needed for heating or cooling of the cabin at the start of your drive. This helps maximize your driving range.*

Note: *You can also access this feature using the FordPass app.*

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Departure and Comfort Setup

Follow these steps to set departure and comfort level preferences.



The edit button for departure and comfort setup is on the charge settings screen.

1. Press the edit button for departure and comfort.
2. Select a time.

Note: Two time settings show for each day of the week on the departure times schedule screen.

3. On the departure times settings screen, set your desired time, cabin comfort level and days of the week to repeat.
4. Press save.

Note: Your settings are now shown on the departure times schedule screen.

5. Press back to return to the main charge settings screen.

Note: The next departure time and cabin temperature display.

Note: Cabin conditioning comfort level may vary depending on whether you plug into a normal household outlet or a higher power outlet or charging station. The power available for conditioning is limited to the charging station power available. At low ambient temperatures and low charge power, a small amount of high voltage battery power could be used in addition to the charging power to heat the cabin.

Charging Locations



Press the edit button to set preferred charging times for a specific charging location.

Your vehicle prioritizes charging based on your preferred time settings. You can set two preferred charging time windows for weekdays and two for weekends. This feature allows you to take advantage of electric utility rate plans that offer lower pricing during certain times of day. Contact your utility company to see what plans are available.

Note: Your vehicle charges during your preferred time windows. Charging outside these windows only occurs when additional charging time is needed to reach the maximum charge limit set for this location by your next departure time. In this case, the vehicle begins charging right away after plugging in.

Note: You can also access this feature using the FordPass app.

Charging Location Setup

Follow these steps to set time and charge level preferences for a charging location.



The edit button for charging locations is on the charge settings screen.

1. Press the edit button for charging locations.
2. On the charging locations screen select add new location.

Note: You can also edit settings for previously saved locations listed on this screen.

3. Select an address from the list of recent charge locations.
4. Confirm that this is the location you want to save with the help of the map view.

Note: Depending on the GPS location, the address on the navigation may not precisely match up with your charging location. Confirm on the map that the pin is in the expected location.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

5. Edit the location name if desired and set a maximum charge limit.

Note: The name of locations cannot start with a blank character and cannot contain special characters.

Note: Charging stops when your vehicle reaches the maximum charge limit setting.

6. Press continue to schedule.



7. Set preferred charging times for weekday and/or weekend by pressing and dragging along the 24 hour time wheel.

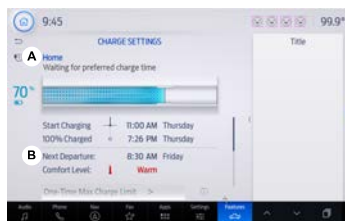
Note: You can set up to two blocks of time (charge windows).

Note: Selecting all or none of the 24 hours results in any time of day given equal priority for charging.

8. Press continue once you have your desired time settings for weekday and weekend.
9. The summary screen displays your settings for this location. Press save or press back to change your settings.

Note: Whenever your vehicle is at a saved charging location, the charge settings screen displays the location name. The charging times are based on your preferred time settings for that location plus the next departure time.

Note: Reaching your max charge limit by your next departure time is always the priority. When charging time preferences are set, charging outside your preferred charging time windows could be necessary to finish by your next departure time. In this case, the vehicle begins charging immediately after plugging in. Charging pauses when the rest of the charge can be done within the preferred charging windows.



- A Charging location name.
- B Next departure time and cabin temperature.



- A On/Off switch for departure and comfort.
- B On/Off switch for charging locations.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Charging Location Name

Displays when your vehicle is at a saved charging location.

Next Departure Time and Cabin Comfort Level

Displays the next departure time and associated cabin comfort setting.

On/Off Switch for Departure and Comfort

This switch is visible when you have at least one departure time set. Use this switch to turn all departure times off and on. Switching off departure and comfort does not delete your settings, however, you must switch back on to re-enable them.

On/Off Switch for Charging Locations

This switch is visible when your vehicle is at a saved charging location. Use this switch to turn your settings off and on for this location only. Switching off for this location does not delete your settings, however, you must switch back on to re-enable them.

Note: *If the charging locations switch is off, the vehicle begins charging to 100% once plugged in.*

CHARGING SETTINGS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



You can schedule charging to take advantage of lower cost electricity rates during off-peak hours if you have signed up for a time of use pricing plan with your utility provider. You can also set a max charge limit for your battery and a departure time and cabin temperature so your vehicle is ready to go when you are.

Scheduled charging can be set up on the touchscreen or in the FordPass app.

To view your charge settings:

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press Charge Settings on the touchscreen.

Charge Settings Screen



- A Charging status icon.
- B Charging status.
- C High voltage battery state of charge.
- D Charging time information.
- E One-time max charge limit.
- F Departure and comfort settings.



- A Charging locations.

Charging Status Icons

Displays when your vehicle is plugged in.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)



Not charging due to a fault.



Not currently charging.



Charging.



Waiting to charge based on charge time settings.

Charging Status

Shows the present state of the charging system.

Charge Status	Action
Will charge when plugged in	The vehicle is unplugged and starts charging once plugged in.
Will wait for preferred charging time	The vehicle is unplugged at a location with charging time preferences enabled. Charging is scheduled to start at the time displayed based on your vehicle settings. You must plug your vehicle in prior to the start time to begin charging at that time.
Waiting for preferred charging time	The vehicle is plugged in at a location with charging time preferences enabled. Charging starts at the time displayed, which is based on your charge time settings.
Charging stopped	The vehicle is plugged in and charging has been stopped through the FordPass app.
Charging	The vehicle is plugged in and charging.
Fast charging	The vehicle is plugged into a DC Fast Charge station and charging.
Charged	The vehicle finished charging to the max charge limit setting.
Charging 12V battery	The vehicle is plugged in and charging the 12V battery.
Conditioning the cabin	The vehicle is plugged in and the climate control system is operating according to the departure and comfort settings.
Conditioning the battery	The vehicle is plugged in and conditioning the high voltage battery.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Charge Status	Action
Vehicle charging fault	The vehicle is plugged in and there is a fault within the vehicle charging system. Unplug and plug back in. If the fault is still present, contact your authorized EV certified dealer.
Charging station fault	The vehicle is plugged in and a fault has been detected with the charge station or charging cord. Check the charging cord and the charging station or electrical supply.
Charging station not detected	A charging coupler has been plugged into the vehicle but there is no connection with a charging power source.
Charging station paused	The vehicle is plugged in and charging has been paused at the charge station.

High Voltage Battery State of Charge

Displays the remaining charge percentage with 100% representing the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge.

Charging Time Information

When charging, the start and estimated end time displays.

When your vehicle is at a saved charging location and not plugged in, the start and end times display based on known charging infrastructure.

Note: Charging time information is estimated. Certain conditions could result in longer charging times.

One-Time Max Charge Limit

Select to set a one-time max charge limit.

To temporarily adjust the charge level at which charging stops, you can set a one-time max charge limit which only applies to your next charging session. If the vehicle is already plugged in, the one-time max charge limit applies to the current charging session. The one-time max charge limit expires after one charging event. The vehicle then reverts to your saved charging location max charge setting or system default if not at a saved charging location.

Note: If connected to a DC fast charger and charging has stopped, you must unplug and plug back in for a new one-time max charge limit to be applied.

Departure and Comfort



Press the edit button for departure and comfort settings.

Setting departure times allows you to control charging schedules and warm or cool your cabin and the high voltage battery when your vehicle is plugged in, so your vehicle is ready to drive when you are. By setting a departure time, your vehicle

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

can use your charging time preferences to minimize your electricity costs but still prioritize finishing charging before your scheduled departure. The calendar view allows you to program two departure times per day for each day of the week.

Note: By using energy from your charging source while plugged in, battery temperature can be managed for best driving performance and less energy is needed for heating or cooling of the cabin at the start of your drive. This helps maximize your driving range.

Note: You can also access this feature using the FordPass app.

Departure and Comfort Setup

Follow these steps to set departure and comfort level preferences.

Note: Departure and comfort settings do not apply to DC fast chargers.



The edit button for departure and comfort setup is on the charge settings screen.

1. Press the edit button for departure and comfort.
2. Select a time.

Note: Two time settings show for each day of the week on the departure times schedule screen.

3. On the departure times settings screen, set your desired time, cabin comfort level and days of the week to repeat.
4. Press save.

Note: Your settings are now shown on the departure times schedule screen.

5. Press back to return to the main charge settings screen.

Note: The next departure time and cabin temperature display.

Note: Cabin conditioning comfort level may vary depending on whether you plug into a normal household outlet or a higher power outlet or charging station. The power available for conditioning is limited to the charging station power available. At low ambient temperatures and low charge power, a small amount of high voltage battery power could be used in addition to the charging power to heat the cabin.

Charging Locations



Press the edit button to set preferred charging times for a specific charging location.

Your vehicle prioritizes charging based on your preferred time settings. You can set two preferred charging time windows for weekdays and two for weekends. This feature allows you to take advantage of electric utility rate plans that offer lower pricing during certain times of day. Contact your utility company to see what plans are available.

Note: Your vehicle charges during your preferred time windows. Charging outside these windows only occurs when additional charging time is needed to reach the maximum charge limit set for this location by your next departure time. In this case, the vehicle begins charging right away after plugging in.

Note: You can also access this feature using the FordPass app.

Charging Location Setup

Follow these steps to set time and charge level preferences for a charging location.

Note: Charging location settings do not apply to DC fast chargers.



The edit button for charging locations is on the charge settings screen.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

1. Press the edit button for charging locations.
2. On the charging locations screen select add new location.

Note: You can also edit settings for previously saved locations listed on this screen.

3. Select an address from the list of recent charge locations.
4. Confirm that this is the location you want to save with the help of the map view.

Note: Depending on the GPS location, the address on the navigation may not precisely match up with your charging location. Confirm on the map that the pin is in the expected location.

5. Edit the location name if desired and set a maximum charge limit.

Note: The name of locations cannot start with a blank character and cannot contain special characters.

Note: Charging stops when your vehicle reaches the maximum charge limit setting.

6. Press continue to schedule.



7. Set preferred charging times for weekday and/or weekend by pressing and dragging along the 24 hour time wheel.

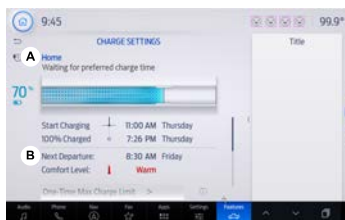
Note: You can set up to two blocks of time (charge windows).

Note: Selecting all or none of the 24 hours results in any time of day given equal priority for charging.

8. Press continue once you have your desired time settings for weekday and weekend.
9. The summary screen displays your settings for this location. Press save or press back to change your settings.

Note: Whenever your vehicle is at a saved charging location, the charge settings screen displays the location name. The charging times are based on your preferred time settings for that location plus the next departure time.

Note: Reaching your max charge limit by your next departure time is always the priority. When charging time preferences are set, charging outside your preferred charging time windows could be necessary to finish by your next departure time. In this case, the vehicle begins charging immediately after plugging in. Charging pauses when the rest of the charge can be done within the preferred charging windows.



- A Charging location name.
- B Next departure time and cabin temperature.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)



- A On/Off switch for departure and comfort.
- B On/Off switch for charging locations.

Charging Location Name

Displays when your vehicle is at a saved charging location.

Next Departure Time and Cabin Comfort Level

Displays the next departure time and associated cabin comfort setting.

On/Off Switch for Departure and Comfort

This switch is visible when you have at least one departure time set. Use this switch to turn all departure times off and on. Switching off departure and comfort does not delete your settings, however, you must switch back on to re-enable them.

On/Off Switch for Charging Locations

This switch is visible when your vehicle is at a saved charging location. Use this switch to turn your settings off and on for this location only. Switching off for this location does not delete your settings, however, you must switch back on to re-enable them.

Note: If the charging locations switch is off, the vehicle begins charging to 100% once plugged in.

USING YOUR VEHICLE APP AND CHARGING

The vehicle app allows you to do the following:

- Monitor and manage your vehicle's charging, including charge schedules and preferences.
- Locate a charger and activate a charger on the Charging Network.
- Plan a trip and charging options along your route.
- Check charging station plug availability.
- Initiate a charge session automatically at Plug and Charge capable charge stations.
- Control your Connected Charge Station remotely.
- Override charge preferences and starting and stopping charging.

For more information, visit www.owner.ford.com.

CHARGING EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION SYMBOLS



Identifier symbol visible on vehicle cord couplers, charge station cord couplers and vehicle charge ports.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
AC	EN 62196-2	Type 2	Vehicle coupler, charge station coupler and vehicle charge port.	Lower or equal to 480 volt RMS



Identifier symbol visible on charge station ports and your public charge cord coupler.

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
AC	EN 62196-2	Type 2	Charge station port, public charge cord coupler.	Lower or equal to 480 volt RMS



Charge station coupler identifier symbol.

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
DC	EN 62196-3	FF	Vehicle coupler, vehicle charge port, and charge station coupler.	50 volt to 500 volt



Charge station coupler identifier symbol.

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
DC	EN 62196-3	FF	Vehicle coupler, vehicle charge port, and charge station coupler.	200 volt to 920 volt

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates when your vehicle is plugged in.

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Vehicle plugged in? Yes No	Your vehicle needs confirmation you unplugged it before allowing a start. You must make sure you unplugged your vehicle and you respond to the message prompt before starting your vehicle.
Plug in to Maintain 12V Battery	Indicates that the high voltage battery can no longer support the 12 volt battery due to its low range. Plug in your vehicle to charge the high voltage battery and maintain the 12 volt battery at a healthy state.
Charge Station Fault See Manual	Your plugged in vehicle detects a fault with the charge station or charging cord. Please check the charging cord and the charging station or electrical supply.
Charge Station Communication Error Contact Station Provider	Your plugged in vehicle cannot communicate with the charging station. Please contact the station provider.

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

My vehicle does not charge

- Ensure you properly connect the connector and control box. Unplug the charge coupler from your vehicle and unplug the connector from the wall outlet. Then check the connector to be sure that the connector is properly connected into the mobile charger control box. If the mobile charger is warm, or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet or a different connector if you have one available. If the problem persists, contact an authorized EV certified dealer.

Manual Transmission

MANUAL TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS

Do not rest your hand on the gearshift lever or use the gearshift lever to hang and support objects. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

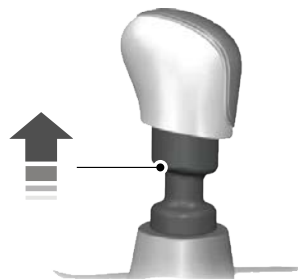
Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to keep your vehicle stationary when waiting on a hill. This could cause damage to the clutch not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Failure to fully press the clutch pedal could cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage to the transmission.

SHIFTING INTO REVERSE

Do not shift into reverse when your vehicle is moving. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral.



3. Raise the collar and shift into reverse.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION SHIFT INDICATORS



It illuminates to advise you that shifting gear may give better fuel economy or lower emissions.



CHECKING THE CLUTCH FLUID LEVEL

The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 311).

CLUTCH FLUID SPECIFICATION

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

MANUAL TRANSMISSION – TROUBLESHOOTING

MANUAL TRANSMISSION – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What should I do if any gear is not fully engaged?

Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, fully press the clutch pedal again and shift into gear.

Automatic Transmission

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.



WARNING: Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds limits vehicle performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the vehicle off and remove the key or remote control before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: You may not be able to shift out of park (P) if a fuse is blown.

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.

Note: The electric parking brake could apply when you power your vehicle on with the selector in park (P).

Note: The electric parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) without fully pressing the brake pedal.

Note: The electric parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) on a slope.

Note: Do not manually release the electric parking brake when the selector is in park (P). See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 315).

Note: Your vehicle could shift into park (P) if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the vehicle in park (P). See **How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work** (page 308).

Note: A tone could sound when you select park (P).

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITIONS

PARK (P)



WARNING: Shift into park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In park (P), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

Note: A tone sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the transmission in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if the 12V battery has run out of charge.

REVERSE (R)



WARNING: Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In reverse (R) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

NEUTRAL (N)



WARNING: In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

In neutral (N), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

Automatic Transmission

DRIVE (D)

In drive (D) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

LOW (L) - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

In low (L) your vehicle decelerates more noticeably than in drive (D) when the accelerator pedal is released.

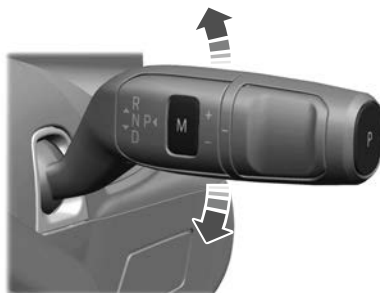
Note: We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 417).

MANUAL (M) - DIESEL

In manual (M) you can select a specific gear. See **Manually Shifting Gears** (page 307).

Note: We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 417).

SHIFTING YOUR VEHICLE INTO GEAR - DIESEL

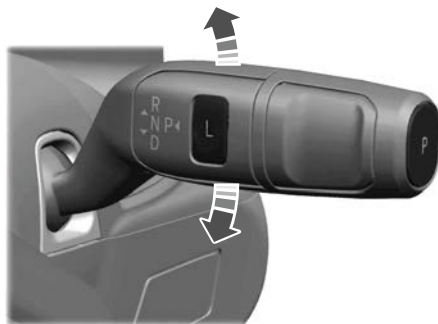


The selector is on the steering column.

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Move the selector one position up or down to select neutral (N).
3. Move the selector two positions up to select reverse (R).
4. Move the selector two positions down to select drive (D).
5. Press the park (P) button to select park (P).
6. Press the manual (M) button when your vehicle is in drive (D) to enter or exit mode.

Automatic Transmission

SHIFTING YOUR VEHICLE INTO GEAR - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



The selector is on the steering column.

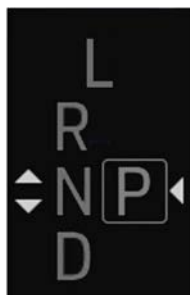
1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Move the selector one position up or down to select neutral (N).
3. Move the selector two positions up and hold for a second to select reverse (R).
4. Move the selector two positions down to select drive (D).
5. Press the park (P) button to select park (P).
6. Press the low (L) button when your vehicle is in drive (D) to enter or exit mode.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITION INDICATORS - DIESEL



The instrument cluster displays the current position.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITION INDICATORS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE/ PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



The instrument cluster displays the current position.

Automatic Transmission

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION SHIFT INDICATORS



Shift indicators illuminate when shifting gear is recommended.



SHIFTING YOUR IMMOBILE VEHICLE OUT OF PARK (P)



WARNING: When doing this procedure, you need to take your vehicle out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.

Use this procedure to shift your vehicle out of park (P) in the event of an electrical malfunction or emergency.

Note: Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the 12 V battery to run out of charge.

Note: If the battery is out of charge, use an external power source.

Note: This mode could be unavailable if your vehicle is below operating temperature. Warm up your vehicle and attempt the procedure again.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Shifting Your Vehicle Out of Park (P)

1. Apply the parking brake.

Note: If the battery is out of charge, use an external power source to apply the parking brake.

2. Power your vehicle on without your foot on the brake pedal.

3. Fully press and hold the brake pedal.

4. Fully press and hold the accelerator pedal.

5. Shift into neutral (N).

6. Shift into neutral (N) again.

7. Attempt to start your vehicle.

Note: A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.

Note: You must complete this procedure within 15 seconds. If your vehicle shifts into park (P) attempt the procedure again.

8. Release accelerator and brake pedals.

9. Release the parking brake.

Note: Your vehicle is free to roll.

10. Switch your vehicle off.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

Returning Your Vehicle to Normal Mode

1. Press the brake pedal.

2. Shift into park (P).

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Transmission Not in Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds if you exit the driver seat before shifting into park (P).

Automatic Transmission

Park Selection Audible Warning

Sounds when you shift into park (P).

MANUALLY SHIFTING GEARS - DIESEL

SHIFTING USING THE BUTTONS ON THE COLUMN SHIFTER

The instrument cluster displays the current gear. The current gear flashes when your vehicle cannot shift into the requested gear. Your vehicle will not shift if the requested gear raises or lowers the engine speed beyond the limit.

Your vehicle could shift when you fully press the accelerator or brake pedal.

Note: Prolonged driving with high engine speed could cause vehicle damage not covered by vehicle warranty.

Note: Drive modes could affect when the vehicle shifts into the requested gear.

Manually Shifting Gears in Drive (D)

Use this feature to temporarily change gear.

Note: We recommend using this feature for engine braking, driving on hilly or mountainous roads.



Rotate the control to switch the feature on.

- Rotate the control away from you (+) to upshift.
- Rotate the control toward you (-) to downshift.
- Rotate the control away from you (+) and hold for a few seconds to switch the feature off.

Note: The feature switches off after a short period of time if you do not rotate the control.

Manually Shifting Gears in Manual (M)

Use this feature to select a specific gear.

Note: We recommend using this feature for engine braking, driving on hilly or mountainous roads, or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 417).



Press the manual (M) button when your vehicle is in drive (D) to switch the feature on.

- Rotate the control away from you (+) to upshift.
- Rotate the control toward you (-) to downshift.
- Press the manual (M) button again or shift to drive (D) to switch the feature off.

Automatic Transmission

TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

HOW DOES TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE WORK

Use this mode to keep your vehicle in neutral (N), for a limited time, when you exit your vehicle or switch your vehicle off. For example, if you exit your vehicle before an automatic car wash.

Note: *You do not need to use this mode at an automatic car wash if you shift into neutral (N) and stay in your vehicle with power on.*

Note: *Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.*

Note: *Automatic return to park (P) is delayed when your vehicle is in this mode. See **How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work** (page 308).*

TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE LIMITATIONS

This mode could be unavailable if your 12 V battery charge level is low. Connect an external power source and attempt the procedure again.

Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the 12 V battery to run out of charge.

This mode could be unavailable if your vehicle is below operating temperature. Warm up your vehicle and attempt the procedure again.

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

ENTERING TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Power your vehicle on.
4. Shift into neutral (N).

Note: *An instructional message appears.*

5. Shift into neutral (N) again.

Note: *A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.*

6. Release the brake pedal.

Note: *Your vehicle is free to roll.*

7. Switch your vehicle off.

Note: *Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.*

Note: *The neutral (N) indicator on the information display may flash in this mode.*

EXITING TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P), or power your vehicle on and shift into drive (D) or reverse (R).

AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P)

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P) WORK

Your vehicle shifts into park (P) when your vehicle is stationary and any of the following occur:

- You switch the vehicle off.
- You open the driver door with the driver seatbelt unfastened.
- You unfasten the driver seatbelt when the driver door is open.

Automatic Transmission

Note: Do not use automatic return to park (P) when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. See **Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving** (page 221). See **Powering Off** (page 226).

AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P) LIMITATIONS

Automatic return to park could not work if any of the following occur:

- The driver seatbelt is incorrectly fastened, for example, behind the body of the driver.
- The driver seat sensor is malfunctioning.
- The driver seatbelt buckle switch is malfunctioning.

See an authorized dealer if any of the following occur:

- Seatbelt indicator illuminates or tone sounds with the driver seatbelt fastened.
- Transmission not in park message appears after you shift out of park (P).

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Transmission Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission not in Park	Displays as a reminder to shift into park (P).
To stay in neutral when exiting vehicle select N again	Displays when your vehicle is trying to enter Temporary Neutral Mode.
30min Neutral Mode enabled Not a tow mode	Displays when your vehicle successfully enters Temporary Neutral Mode.

All-Wheel Drive

HOW DOES ALL-WHEEL DRIVE WORK

The all-wheel drive system is designed to continuously monitor and adjust power delivery to the front and rear wheels to optimize both traction and handling. The AWD system turns on when needed and does not require input from you.

Your all-wheel drive vehicle is not intended for off-road use. The AWD feature gives your vehicle some limited off-road capabilities in which driving surfaces are relatively level, obstruction-free and otherwise similar to normal on-road driving conditions. Operating your vehicle in conditions other than those, could subject the vehicle to excess stress which might result in damage which is not covered under your warranty.

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not become overconfident in the ability of all-wheel drive vehicles. Although an all-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE LIMITATIONS

Using different size tires other than the provided spare could cause system damage or disable the all-wheel drive system.

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE – TROUBLESHOOTING

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
AWD temporarily disabled	The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating or if something (mechanical interference or de-synchronization) prevents all-wheel drive operation.
AWD restored	The all-wheel drive system has resumed normal function due to the system cooling or mechanical synchronization.
AWD off	The all-wheel drive system may turn off to protect itself if you are using a temporary spare tire or if another vehicle system prevents all-wheel drive operation.
AWD malfunction Service required	The all-wheel drive system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer.

Brakes

BRAKE PRECAUTIONS

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when leaving a car wash or driving from standing water to dry the brakes.

Note: Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, your brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this, your hazard lights may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risk of crash when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

Note: If the system activates, the brake pedal could pulse and travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal.

BRAKE OVER ACCELERATOR

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

LOCATING THE BRAKE FLUID RESERVOIR

See **Under Hood Overview** (page 452).

CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID



WARNING: Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



WARNING: The brake system could be affected if the brake fluid level is below the **MIN** mark or above the **MAX** mark on the brake fluid reservoir.

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface.



2. Look at the brake fluid reservoir to see where the brake fluid level is relative to the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the reservoir.

Note: To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 532).

BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

See **Brake Fluid Specification** (page 543).

BRAKES – TROUBLESHOOTING

BRAKES – WARNING LAMPS



WARNING: Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



If the ABS indicator illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock braking system function. See an authorized dealer.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

BRAKE



The brake indicator momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. It may also illuminate when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. See an authorized dealer.

Note: Lamps may vary depending on region.

BRAKES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Is it normal for my brakes to make noise?

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding, or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake lining could be worn-out. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

There is an electrical motor sound after I press the brake pedal or activate the electric parking brake. Is this normal?

Yes, those sounds are from the brake system operating.

Note: *Brake dust could accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is normal as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning Wheels** (page 478).*

Electric Parking Brake

WHAT IS THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

The electric parking brake is used to hold your vehicle on slopes and flat roads.

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



The switch is on the instrument panel. See **Instrument Panel** (page 30). See **Instrument Panel** (page 31).

Pull the electric parking brake switch.

The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

Note: You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.

Note: The electric parking brake could apply when the transmission selector is in park (P). See **Park (P)** (page 303).

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION



WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



The switch is on the instrument panel. See **Instrument Panel** (page 32). See **Instrument Panel** (page 33).

Pull the electric parking brake switch.

The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

Note: You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IN AN EMERGENCY

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.

Pull the switch up and hold it.

Electric Parking Brake

The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on when you use the electric parking brake in an emergency.

The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the switch.

Note: *Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.*

MANUALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Push the switch down.

The red warning lamp turns off.

Pulling Away When Towing a Trailer Uphill

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Pull the switch upward and hold it.
3. Shift into gear.
4. Press the accelerator pedal until engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the hill.
5. Release the switch and pull away in a normal manner.

AUTOMATICALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Close the driver door.
2. Fasten the driver seatbelt.
3. Shift into gear.

4. Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving. If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IF THE VEHICLE BATTERY HAS RUN OUT OF CHARGE



WARNING: The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.

Connect a booster battery to the vehicle battery to release the electric parking brake if the vehicle battery has run out of charge. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 428).

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS



The red warning lamp illuminates when the electronic parking brake is applied or for a few seconds on start up.

If it remains illuminated or flashes when the electronic parking brake is not applied, it indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Electric Parking Brake

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Park brake malfunction Service now	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake not released	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake not applied	The electric parking brake has not applied. Apply the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake Use switch to release	The electric parking brake has not automatically released. Manually release the electric parking brake.
Park brake Press brake and switch to release	You have not pressed the brake pedal. Press the brake pedal to release the parking brake.
Park brake Limited function Service required	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake Maintenance mode	The electric parking brake system has been put into a special mode that is used to allow service of the brakes. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake System overheated	The electric parking brake has overheated. Wait for the electric parking brake to cool down.
Park brake released	The electric parking brake is released.
Release park brake	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake applied	The electric parking brake is applied.

Reverse Brake Assist

WHAT IS REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST

Reverse brake assist is designed to reduce impact damage or assist in avoiding a collision while in reverse (R). Using sensors on the rear of the vehicle, it can detect a possible collision and apply the brakes. If full braking occurs, the system attempts to stop the vehicle a safe distance from the obstacle.

HOW DOES REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST WORK

Reverse brake assist functions when in reverse (R) and traveling at a speed of 2–12 km/h (1–7 mph).

If the system detects an obstacle behind your vehicle, it provides a warning through the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert system.

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



WARNING: Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection. For example low or direct sunlight, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types, and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

The system only applies the brakes for a short period of time when an event occurs. Act as soon as you notice the brakes apply to remain in control of the vehicle. If you do not intervene the vehicle may start to move again.

Note: Certain add-on devices around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bicycle or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.

Reverse Brake Assist

Note: The system does not react to small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

Note: The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia leaving it misaligned or bent, it could alter the sensing zone causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

Note: Vehicle loading and suspension changes can impact the angle of the sensors and may change the normal detection zone of the system resulting in inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

Note: When you connect a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and provide an alert, or the system turns off. If the system does not turn off, manually switch the system off after you connect the trailer.

Note: You may experience reduced system performance on road surfaces that limit deceleration. For example, roads with ice, loose gravel, mud or sand.

SWITCHING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Driver Assistance**.

3. Switch **Reverse Brake Assist** on or off.

Note: The system is unavailable when the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert is off.

Note: If your vehicle is not equipped with cross traffic alert the reverse braking assist relies on input from the rear parking aid and rear camera sensors.

Note: The default setting is on in some regions.

OVERRIDING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST

There could be instances when unexpected or unwanted braking occurs. Firmly pressing the accelerator pedal or switching the feature off overrides the system.

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST INDICATORS

If the system determines that a collision with an obstacle may occur, full braking may apply.



A message and warning indicator appear when the system applies the brakes.

Reverse Brake Assist

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Reverse Brake Assist	Displays when the system applies the brakes and remains on for a few seconds.
Reverse Brake Assist not available See manual	Displays when a related subsystem or feature error has occurred. Make sure the rear view camera and side cameras are clean and not obstructed. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains on, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist malfunction	Displays when a system error has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist off	Displays when reverse brake assist is off.

Reverse Brake Assist

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is reverse brake assist unavailable?

- Make sure you switch the system on. See **Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off** (page 318).
- Make sure that the liftgate or tailgate, hood and all doors are closed.
- Make sure the cross traffic alert system is on. See **What Is Cross Traffic Alert** (page 388).
- Make sure the rear parking aid system is on. See **Switching Parking Aid On and Off** (page 326).
- Your vehicle may have sustained a rear end impact. Have the sensors checked for proper coverage and operation.
- Make sure the exterior cameras are not dirty or obstructed. If dirty, clean the cameras. If the reverse brake assist unavailable message still appears after cleaning the cameras, wait a short time for the message to clear. If the message does not clear, drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains, have the system checked.
- Make sure the sensors are not blocked or faulted. See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors** (page 327). See **Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors** (page 389).
- You recently had your vehicle serviced, or the battery disconnected. Drive your vehicle a short distance to resume system operation.
- The system does not function when you connect a trailer. Operation resumes when you disconnect the trailer.

Note: If you are still having problems with reverse brake assist, have the system checked as soon as possible.

Hill Start Assist

WHAT IS HILL START ASSIST

Hill Start Assist applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring it to a stop on a slope. This makes it easier for you to pull away without using the parking brake.

HOW DOES HILL START ASSIST WORK

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This gives you time to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when you apply the accelerator pedal and the vehicle begins to move forward, or the system exceeds the time allowed for automatically applying the brakes.

The system activates when your vehicle is in any forward gear and facing uphill, or when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and facing downhill.

HILL START ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system turns off if there is a malfunction.

SWITCHING HILL START ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Hill Start Assist** on or off.

The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Note: *There is no indicator to indicate whether the system is on or off.*

HILL START ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

HILL START ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Hill start assist not available	Displays when system is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Auto Hold

HOW DOES AUTO HOLD WORK

Auto hold applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring the vehicle to a stop. This can help when waiting on a hill or in traffic.

SWITCHING AUTO HOLD ON AND OFF - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

You can switch the system on or off by accessing the menu in the SYNC display screen.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.

Note: You can only switch the system on if the driver seat is occupied.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Note: When using an automatic car wash, make sure to switch auto hold off or shift to neutral (N) with the brake pedal applied to ensure auto hold is not active.

SWITCHING AUTO HOLD ON AND OFF - MANUAL TRANSMISSION



WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

You can switch the system on or off by accessing the menu in the SYNC display screen.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.

Note: You can only switch the system on after you close the driver door, and fasten your seatbelt.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Note: When using an automatic car wash, make sure to switch auto hold off, or shift to neutral (N) with the brake pedal applied to ensure auto hold is not active.

USING AUTO HOLD

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the information display.
2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the information display.

Auto Hold

3. Apply the accelerator and drive off in a normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator switches off.

Note: The system only activates if you apply enough brake pressure on the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a standstill.

Note: Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates. The electric parking brake releases when you press the accelerator pedal. See

Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake (page 315).

Note: The system switches off if you shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) while pressing the brake pedal.

There could be actions that can cause the auto hold system not to work when the following occur:

- When you use active park assist.
- Your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode.
- The driver door is open.
- You shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) before the system is active.

AUTO HOLD INDICATORS



Illuminates when the system is active.



Illuminates when the system is on but cannot hold your vehicle at a standstill at this particular time.

Traction Control

WHAT IS TRACTION CONTROL

The traction control system helps to avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

HOW DOES TRACTION CONTROL WORK

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces power in order to increase traction.

SWITCHING TRACTION CONTROL ON AND OFF



WARNING: Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The traction control system turns on each time you switch the power on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Traction Control** on or off.

Note: When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.

TRACTION CONTROL INDICATOR



Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

TRACTION CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRACTION CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

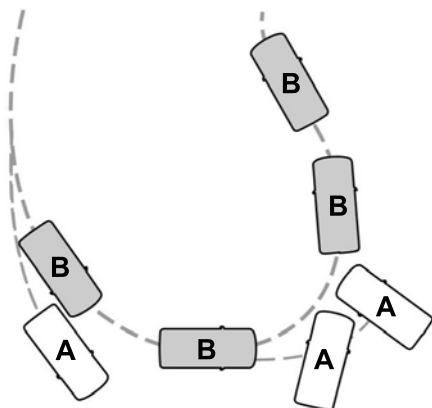
TRACTION CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Traction control off	The status of the traction control system after you switched it off.
Traction control on	The status of the traction control system after you switched it on.

Stability Control

WHAT IS STABILITY CONTROL

The system is designed to support stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path.



- A Without stability control.
- B With stability control.

HOW DOES STABILITY CONTROL WORK



WARNING: Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo speakers may interfere with and adversely affect the

electronic stability control system. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system works by braking individual wheels and reducing engine speed.

SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the power on and you cannot switch the system off.

Note: *The system is disabled when you shift into reverse (R).*

STABILITY CONTROL INDICATOR



If it does not illuminate when you switch the power on, or remains on, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Parking Aids

PARKING AID PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



WARNING: The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



WARNING: The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.



WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid detects the trailer and provides an alert. Mute the parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.

Note: Connected trailers might be detected by the vehicle and parking aid turns off automatically in those instances.

Note: Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts, for example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that could block the normal detection zone of the parking aid system. Aftermarket spare tires or spare tire covers mounted to the rear tailgate could cause false alerts from the park aid system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected.

Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

SWITCHING PARKING AID ON AND OFF



Press the parking aid button and use the menu to set the system on mute.

The system can also be muted using the pop-up message that appears when you are in reverse (R).

Parking aid visual indication remains on and can not be turned off when the transmission is in reverse (R)

Parking Aids

REAR PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE REAR PARKING AID

Rear parking sensors detect objects behind your vehicle when in reverse (R).

REAR PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

The rear parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 18 km/h (11 mph).

The sensor coverage area is up to 180 cm (71 in) from the rear bumper.

The rear parking aid detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed and an object is moving towards your vehicle, for example another vehicle at a low speed.

The system shall provide no audible warning for the object behind the vehicle when in neutral (N) gear.

LOCATING THE REAR PARKING AID SENSORS



The rear parking aid sensors are in the rear bumper.

REAR PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the rear bumper.

Note: When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system could reduce the set volume.

FRONT PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE FRONT PARKING AID

Front parking sensors detect objects in front of your vehicle.

Parking Aids

FRONT PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The front parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in any position other than park (P) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The sensor coverage area is up to 70 cm (28 in) from the bumper.

If your vehicle is in reverse (R), the front parking aid detects objects when your vehicle is moving at a low speed or an object is moving toward your vehicle and provides an audible warning, for example another vehicle at a low speed. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning mutes. Visual indication is always active in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in any forward gear, the front parking aid provides audible warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of 8 km/h (5 mph) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication turns off and the audible warning mutes.

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the front and rear sensors provide visual indication only when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 8 km/h (5 mph) and obstacles are detected inside the detection areas. Once your vehicle stops, the visual indication and audible warning stops after a few seconds.

LOCATING THE FRONT PARKING AID SENSORS



The front parking aid sensors are in the front bumper.

FRONT PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when there is an object within 70 cm (28 in) from the front bumper. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases.

The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the front bumper.

Note: *If the detected object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.*

SIDE PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE SIDE PARKING AID

The front and rear outermost parking aid sensors map objects that are near to the sides of your vehicle.

SIDE PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The sensor coverage is up to 60 cm (24 in) from the sides of your vehicle.

Parking Aids

The side parking aid may not function if:

- Your vehicle remains stationary for over two minutes.
- The anti-lock brake system activates.
- The traction control system activates.
- Your vehicle is in park (P).
- The steering wheel angle information is not available. You must drive at least 150 m (492 ft) above 30 km/h (19 mph) to reset the steering wheel angle information.

Note: If you switch traction control off, the side sensing system also turns off.

To reinitialize the system, drive the length of your vehicle.

The side parking aid does not detect an object that is moving toward the side of your vehicle, for example another vehicle moving at a low speed, if it does not pass a front or rear parking aid sensor.

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the side sensing system provides audible warnings. When your vehicle is moving slowly, obstacles are detected within 60 cm (24 in) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning mutes. Visual indication is always present in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the side sensing system provides visual indication only when your vehicle is moving slowly and there is a front or rear parking aid obstacle detected, and the side obstacle is within 60 cm (24 in) from the side of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication turns off.

If the transmission is in drive (D) or any other forward gear, the side sensing system provides audible and visual warnings. When your vehicle is moving slowly, obstacles are detected within 60 cm (24 in) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication turns off and audible warning mutes.

LOCATING THE SIDE PARKING AID SENSORS



The side parking sensors are in the front and rear bumpers.

SIDE PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

When the side parking aid detects an object within the coverage area and the driving path of your vehicle, an audible warning sounds. As your vehicle moves closer to the object, the rate of the tone increases.

Parking Aids

PARKING AID INDICATORS



The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are grey.

Visual indication remains on when the transmission is in reverse (R).

If the parking aids are not available, the side distance indicator blocks do not display.

PARKING AIDS – TROUBLESHOOTING

PARKING AIDS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

If a fault is present in the parking aids, a warning message appears in the instrument cluster or the information display.

Message	Details
Parking aid malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check Park Pilot	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Park Pilot not available sensor blocked See Manual	A sensor is blocked or the system has malfunctioned. Clean the bumper or remove any obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check front Park Pilot	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Parking Aids

Message	Details
Check rear Park Pilot	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Park Pilot On Off	Displays the park aid status.
Rear Park Pilot On Off	Displays the park aid status.

Rear View Camera

WHAT IS THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

The rear view camera provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle when the transmission is in reverse (R). During operation, guide lines appear in the display that represents the path of your vehicle and proximity to objects behind it.

REAR VIEW CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



WARNING: Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.



WARNING: Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Use caution when the liftgate or the rear cargo doors are ajar. If the liftgate or the rear cargo doors are ajar, the camera is out of position and the video image could be incorrect. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

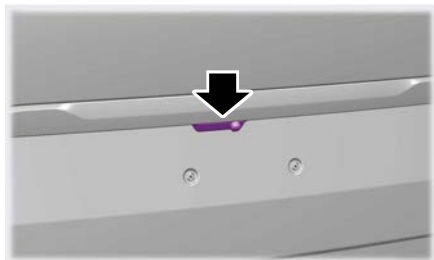
Note: When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects. In some vehicles, the guide lines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.

REAR VIEW CAMERA LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if the reverse lamps are not operating.
- If the camera is obstructed. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The camera is misaligned due to the rear door ajar or damage to the rear of your vehicle.

LOCATING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

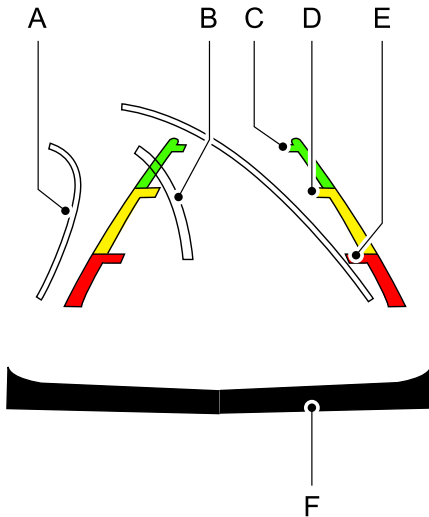


The rear view camera is located above the license plate on the liftgate or on the rear cargo door.

Rear View Camera

REAR VIEW CAMERA GUIDE LINES

Note: Active guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).



- A Active guide lines.
- B Centerline.
- C Fixed guide line: Green zone.
- D Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
- E Fixed guide line: Red zone.
- F Rear bumper.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. To use active guide lines, turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

If the vehicle battery is disconnected, the guidelines are not fully functional directly after the battery is reconnected. The guidelines become fully functional after you drive your vehicle forward as straight as possible for five minutes at a minimum speed of 50 km/h (31 mph).

REAR VIEW CAMERA SETTINGS

ZOOMING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA IN AND OUT



WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Selectable settings for this feature are zoom in (+) and zoom out (-). Press the symbol on the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is zoom off.

Rear View Camera

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

Note: *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

Note: *Only the centerline shows when you enable manual zoom.*

3. Switch **Rear View Camera Delay** on or off.

If you switch this feature on, the image continues to display when you shift from reverse (R) until:

- You shift to a forward gear and the vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift in to park (P).

SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA OBJECT DISTANCE INDICATOR ON AND OFF



You can only switch the audio on or off in the settings.

When the system detects an object, it displays red, yellow and green distance indicators on the information display.

SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA DELAY ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.

180 Degree Camera

WHAT IS THE 180 DEGREE CAMERA

The 180 degree camera provides an extended image of the area behind your vehicle.

HOW DOES THE 180 DEGREE CAMERA WORK

When you switch the 180 degree view on, the view splits into three images. You can use the right and left outer images when reversing to check for cross traffic and pedestrians.

When you use the 180 degree camera view, objects behind your vehicle are shown extremely stretched and do not appear as actual ratio.

180 DEGREE CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



WARNING: Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

Note: If the image comes on while the transmission is not in reverse (R), have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

Note: When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects.

Note: Guide lines do not appear when you switch the 180 degree view on.

SWITCHING THE 180 DEGREE CAMERA ON AND OFF

When you shift to reverse (R) and the rear view camera image appears, press the button in the upper left corner of the touch screen to switch the 180 degree view on. Press the button again to switch it off.

The 180 degree view turns off when you shift into park (P) or into any forward gear and the vehicle speed sufficiently increases.

Note: Whenever you shift to reverse (R) the standard rear view camera image with guidelines is the default view.

360 Degree Camera

HOW DOES THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA WORK

The 360 degree camera system consists of front, side and rear cameras.

The 360 Degree Camera system:

- Allows you to see what is directly in front of or behind your vehicle.
- Provides a cross traffic view in front of and behind your vehicle.
- Allows you to see a top-down view of the area outside your vehicle, including the blind spots and obstacles near your vehicle.

360 DEGREE CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The 360 degree camera system still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with looking out of the windows, and checking the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.



WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

360 DEGREE CAMERA LIMITATIONS

Note: Use caution if a door is ajar. The camera could be out of position and the image could be incorrect.

LOCATING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERAS

Rear View Camera

The rear view camera is located above the license plate. It provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

Front View Camera

The front view camera is in the front grille. It provides a video image of the area in front of your vehicle.

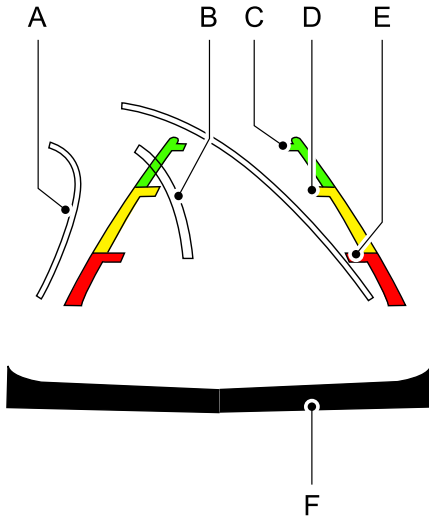
Side View Camera

The side view camera is on the exterior mirror. It provides a video image of the area on both sides of your vehicle to aid you when parking.

360 DEGREE CAMERA GUIDE LINES

Note: Active guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

360 Degree Camera



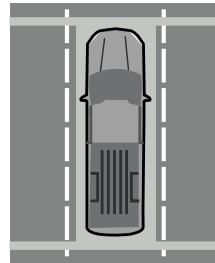
- A Active guide lines.
- B Centerline.
- C Fixed guide line: Green zone.
- D Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
- E Fixed guide line: Red zone.
- F Rear bumper.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. Turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes when reversing, your vehicle could deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines faded in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

Keep Out Zone



The keep out zone is represented by the yellow dotted lines running parallel to your vehicle.

SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA ON AND OFF



The 360 degree camera system button is on the instrument panel. The front and rear cameras have multiple screens which consist of:

- Normal view.
- Normal view with 360.
- Split view.

Note: The rear view camera activates when you switch into reverse (R). Additional views are then accessible on the touchscreen.

When in park (P), neutral (N) or drive (D), the front and 360 degree views display when the button is pressed.

360 Degree Camera

When in reverse (R), the rear and the 360 degree views display.

Note: The 360 degree camera view turns off when the vehicle speed increases, except when in reverse (R).

Note: The rear normal view and hitch view are available when your vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA VIEW



Press to access the different camera views.



Front normal view provides an image of what is directly in front of your vehicle.



Front split view provides an extended view of what is in front of your vehicle.



Normal + 360 degree view contains the normal camera view next to a 360 degree camera view.



Rear normal view provides an image of what is directly behind your vehicle.



Rear split view provides an extended view of what is behind your vehicle.



Invisible van provides the rear facing view and side views as if driver can see through the walls of the van.



The hitch view provides an image of the area around the tow hitch.



Zooms in on the image.



Zooms in on the 360 degree image.

Active Park Assist

WHAT IS ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

Assists you with parking in and out of parking spaces.

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.



WARNING: Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

SWITCHING ACTIVE PARK ASSIST ON AND OFF



Press the parking button .



Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.

The active park assist turns on and automatically searches for parking spaces, or if your vehicle is parked for exiting ways.

Cancelling Active Park Assist

To cancel parking assistance at any time, press the parking button or move the steering wheel.

Note: *Active park assist also cancels when your vehicle exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph).*

Brake System Intervention

When active park assist is controlling the steering, it could under certain conditions apply the brakes to slow or stop your vehicle.

Note: *This could cause the parking assistance to cancel.*

ENTERING A PARKING SPACE

1.  Press the parking button.
2.  Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.
3. Slowly drive your vehicle parallel to the other parked vehicles.

Note: *Park assist automatically searches for possible parking spaces displaying them on the touchscreen, and highlights the preferred parking space.*

Note: *A tone sounds and a message appears in the information display when active park assist finds a suitable parking space.*

4. Bring your vehicle to a complete standstill.

Note: *A circular arrow sign appears over the highlighted parking space if the parking mode can be changed.*

Active Park Assist

5.  Press to select the parking mode if the icon appears over the selected parking space.

6. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Note: You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.

EXITING A PARKING SPACE

1.  Press the parking button.
2.  Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.
3. Use the turn signal to choose the direction to exit the parking space.
4. Press and hold the brake pedal.
5. Release the parking brake.
6. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Note: After active park assist drives your vehicle to a position where you can exit the parking space in a forward movement, a message appears instructing you to take full control of your vehicle.

Note: You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Active Park malfunction	The system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does active park assist not operate correctly?

- The system is unable to detect a vehicle, curb or object to park next to or in between. The system needs boundary objects to operate correctly.

Why does active park assist not search for a parking space?

- You have switched traction control off.
- The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.

Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?

- The sensors could be blocked. For example, snow, ice or large accumulations of dirt. Blocked sensors can affect how the system functions.
- The sensors in the front or rear bumper could be damaged.
- There is not enough room in the parking space for your vehicle to safely park.

- There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space.
- The parking space is more than 1.5 m (1.6 yd) or less than 0.5 m (0.5 yd) away from your vehicle.
- Your vehicle's speed is greater than 35 km/h (21.7 mph).
- You recently disconnected or replaced the battery. After you reconnect the battery you must drive your vehicle on a straight road for a short period of time.

Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?

- An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from correctly aligning your vehicle.
- Vehicles or objects bordering the space could not be correctly parked.
- Your vehicle stopped too far past the parking space.
- The tires are not correctly installed or maintained. For example, using a spare tire, not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes.
- A repair or alteration changed the detection capabilities.
- A parked vehicle has a high attachment. For example, a salt sprayer, snowplow or moving truck bed.
- The parking space length or position of parked objects changes after your vehicle passes the space.
- The temperature around your vehicle quickly changes. For example, driving from a heated garage into a cold outside temperature, or after leaving a car wash.

Delivery Assist

WHAT IS DELIVERY ASSIST?

The system is designed to automatically secure your vehicle when you stop for a delivery.

HOW DOES DELIVERY ASSIST WORK?

When you stop your vehicle, shift into park (P), and exit your vehicle, delivery assist automatically locks the doors, closes the windows and turns the hazard flashers on.

If you stop for less than 10 minutes, the vehicle automatically restarts when you press the brake pedal, and the windows open to their prior position. The hazard flashers automatically turn off when you shift into gear.

If the delivery stop lasts for more than 10 minutes, the automatic restart is suppressed and you have to press the brake and power button to restart the vehicle. The window and hazard light automations will operate as above.

DELIVERY ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive, stop and park with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

DELIVERY ASSIST LIMITATIONS

If the vehicle is parked for more than 2 hours, the system turns off, but the hazard lights continue to flash. You have to restart the vehicle and operate the windows and hazard lights manually. Delivery Assist has to be reactivated.

SWITCHING DELIVERY ASSIST ON AND OFF



Press the button on the instrument panel to set delivery assist into standby mode. Press again to switch delivery assist off.

DELIVERY ASSIST SETTINGS

1. Press **Apps** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Delivery Assist**.

You can perform multiple settings from this menu.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

DELIVERY ASSIST INDICATORS



Illuminates gray when you switch the system on.

Illuminates green when the system is active.



Illuminates when the system is not available.

DELIVERY ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

DELIVERY ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Low battery Delivery Assist not available	Battery charge low, you cannot use delivery assist. Drive the vehicle or plug the vehicle in to recharge the battery.
Delivery Assist unable to operate windows Close manually	Delivery assist cannot reopen or close the windows to their prior position. See What Is Window Bounce-Back (page 125).
Delivery Assist unable to activate hazard lights Apply manually	Delivery assist is unable to switch on or off the hazard lights. Switch on the hazard lights manually.
Delivery Assist not available See manual	Delivery assist has an internal fault and cannot operate. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Cruise Control

WHAT IS CRUISE CONTROL

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

Requirements

Use cruise control when the vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h (20 mph).

SWITCHING CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF



WARNING: Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Cruise Control On



Press the button to put the system in standby mode.

Switching Cruise Control Off



Press the button when in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

Note: When you switch cruise control off the set speed clears.

SETTING THE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

Drive to the speed you prefer.

SET+

Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.

SET-

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Note: The indicator changes color in the information display.

Changing the Set Speed

SET+

Press and release the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button upward to accelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

SET-

Press and release the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button downward to decelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

Note: If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed does not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.

Cruise Control

CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button, or tap the brake pedal to cancel the set speed.

Note: *The system remembers the set speed.*

Note: *The system cancels if the vehicle speed drops below 16 km/h (10 mph) under the set speed when driving uphill.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED



Press the button.

CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch the system on.

Adaptive Cruise Control

HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WORK - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

Adaptive cruise control uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.

HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO WORK - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO

Adaptive cruise control with stop and go uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you while following it to a complete stop. Stop and go can also be set to follow a vehicle directly in front of you and adjust the set speed, while you are at a complete stop.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.



WARNING: Do not use the system with a snow plow blade installed.



WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

When Following a Vehicle



WARNING: When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Hilly Condition Usage

Select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep slopes, for example in mountainous areas.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

Sensor Limitations

WARNING: On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

WARNING: If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h (6 mph).

WARNING: The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

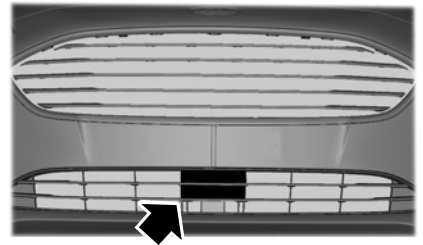
WARNING: The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



The radar is behind the front grille below the license plate.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Note: You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.

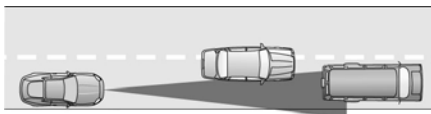
Note: Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.

A message displays if something obstructs the camera or the sensor. When something blocks the sensor, the system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function. See **Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages** (page 357).

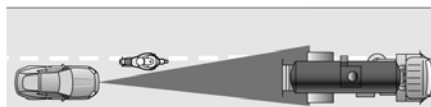
The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle image does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

Detection Issues Can Occur:

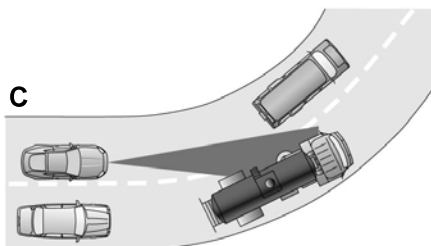
A



B



C



- A When driving on a different lane than the vehicle in front.
- B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.
- C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel. See **What Is Cruise Control** (page 344).

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On



Press the button to set the system in standby mode.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is in standby mode, or switch the ignition off.

Note: You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

The system does not operate if the vehicle speed is below 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units. A tone sounds and adaptive braking releases if the vehicle speed falls below 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units.

Automatic cancellation can also occur when:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

Note: If the engine speed drops too low, the instrument cluster display advises you to shift to a lower gear.

The system could deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO

The system could cancel if any of the following occur:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Automatic parking brake application and cancellation occurs if any of the following occur:

- You unfasten the seatbelt and open the door after you stop your vehicle.
- Your vehicle remains stationary for longer than three minutes.

The system could deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

Drive to the speed you prefer.

SET+ Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.

SET-

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.



A vehicle image illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

Note: When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.

Manually Changing the Set Speed

SET+ Press and release the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.

SET- Press and release the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.

Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the speed you prefer. Press the toggle button upward or downward to select the current speed as the set speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO

Drive to the required speed.

SET+ Press the toggle button upward to set the current speed.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal. The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.



E249552

A vehicle graphic appears in the instrument cluster display if the system detects a vehicle in front of you.

Note: When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer could vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the instrument cluster display.

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Follow a vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Keep the brake pedal fully pressed.
3. Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**.

The set speed adjusts to 20 km/h (10 mph).

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

Changing the Set Speed

SET+

Press the toggle button upward to increase the set speed.

SET-

Press the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed.

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

The system could apply the brakes to slow your vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed continuously displays in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



Press the button to cycle through the four gap settings.



The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image.

Note: The gap setting is time dependent and therefore, the distance adjusts with your vehicle speed.

Note: It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain the gap setting.

Note: When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a turn signal lamp, adaptive cruise control may provide a small, temporary acceleration to help you pass.

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow down your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front of you. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

Note: The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and an indicator flashes when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO



You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.

Note: It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.



E249552

The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image. You can select four gap settings.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically selects the last chosen gap setting.

Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance. A vehicle graphic appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a direction indicator, adaptive cruise control may provide a small temporary acceleration to help you pass.

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level will not be sufficient, an audible warning sounds when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

Following a Vehicle to a Complete Stop

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than three seconds, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.

RES

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for more than three seconds, press and release the button or press the accelerator pedal to follow the vehicle ahead.

Note: The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED

CAN

Press the button, or tap the brake pedal.

The last set speed displays with a strikethrough and the last gap setting appears but does not erase.

Note: The set speed also cancels if you press the clutch pedal for an extended period.

RESUMING THE SET SPEED

RES

Press the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Note: Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.

OVERRIDING THE SET SPEED



WARNING: If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the green indicator illuminates and the vehicle icon does not appear in the instrument cluster display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

White indicates the system is on but inactive.

Blue indicates that you set the speed and the system is active.

SWITCHING FROM ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TO CRUISE CONTROL



WARNING: Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Normal**.

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST

HOW DOES PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST WORK

Predictive Speed Assist works with adaptive cruise control and adjusts the vehicle speed to the road geometry and to the speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. As the system identifies curves and highway exits, the vehicle speed temporarily decreases ahead of and during the changing road geometry. When passing new speed signs, the set speed updates. See **Predictive Speed Assist Precautions** (page 355).

There are limitations that affect the accuracy of the speed sign recognition system and its ability to determine the current speed limit. Predictive speed assist and its ability to determine the current speed limit shares these limitations.

Note: The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally when the feature is enabled.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Note: This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 548). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions. You may need to override the system by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal if the adjusted speed becomes higher or lower than necessary.



WARNING: The system only provides limited braking. Your vehicle may not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary.



WARNING: The system does not activate the turn signal.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to predictive speed assist unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a predictive speed assist precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 346).

The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system with the accelerator pedal or cancel the system by applying the brakes.

The system may adapt to various factors such as time of day, lane width. This could influence speed adjustments and accelerations.

The system may adapt to various drive modes. See **Drive Mode Control** (page 359). This could influence speed adjustments and accelerations.

Note: The system does not activate the turn signal automatically.

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST LIMITATIONS



WARNING: The system may not always adjust vehicle speed in certain road or weather conditions such as crossing traffic, yield or stop signs, right of way, traffic lights, speed bumps, rain, snow, fog. You must always apply the brake or accelerator pedal when necessary.

The road geometry and speed limit information provided by the navigation map data could be inaccurate or out of date.

The system may not detect and read speed limit signs with conditional information, for example, when a sign is flashing, during specific time ranges, or when children are present.

Note: The system does not set the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign.

Under certain conditions, the system may not adjust the vehicle speed until after your vehicle passes the speed limit.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Detection of road geometry operates only where related information is available. Road geometry information may not be available in some areas.

SWITCHING PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST MODE ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Adaptive cruise control**.
5. Switch **Predictive Speed Assist** on or off.

ADJUSTING THE SET SPEED TOLERANCE

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Adaptive cruise control**.
5. Switch **Predictive Speed Assist** on.
6. Press **Tolerance**.
7. Use **+** and **-** to set the tolerance.

Note: You can set tolerance for vehicle speed adjustment based on speed sign recognition only.

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST ALERTS

If the speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit below the minimum adaptive cruise control set speed, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST INDICATORS

A blue marker around the speed sign and a blue arrow next to the set speed indicates that the system is active.

Speed sign indicator



When the system detects a new speed sign, a gray indicator appears above the set speed while the system adjusts the vehicle speed to the speed limit. When the speed limit is reached, the set speed updates and the gray indicator disappears.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Road geometry indicator



When the system detects a curve, turn, roundabout, or highway exit, the vehicle starts to decelerate, and the indicator appears and changes color.

Road geometry indicator symbols



Left curve.



Right curve.



Left intersection.



Right intersection.



Left roundabout.



Right roundabout.

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Adaptive Cruise Control Speed Sign Recognition Not Available	Navigation system based speed limit information is not available. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Driver Resume Control	The system is going to cancel and you must take control.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.

Note: The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Details
Adaptive cruise not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays when the sensor has reduced visibility.
Adaptive cruise not available	Displays when the system is not available.
Adaptive cruise malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Norm. cruise act. Adaptive braking off	You have switched normal cruise control on. Adaptive braking turns off.

Drive Mode Control

WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL

Your vehicle has various drive modes that you can select for different driving conditions. Depending on the drive mode that you select, the system adjusts various vehicle settings.

SELECTING A DRIVE MODE



Press the button on the instrument panel to directly access the drive modes on the touchscreen.

As a secondary option:

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **DRIVE MODES**.
3. Select a setting.

DRIVE MODES - DIESEL, PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

ECO



Vehicle settings suited for economical driving.

NORMAL



Vehicle settings suited for balanced driving.

Note: If you switch off your vehicle in a mode other than Normal, the system prompts you to return to this previous mode when you next start your vehicle. If you ignore the selection prompt, the system defaults to Normal mode.

SLIPPERY



Vehicle settings suited for driving on slippery roads.

SPORT - DIESEL



Vehicle settings suited for sportier driving.

Note: Auto-start-stop could switch off when you select this mode.

SPORT - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



Vehicle settings suited for sportier driving.

TOW/HAUL



Vehicle settings suited for towing or hauling.

TRAIL - VEHICLES WITH: LIMITED-SLIP DIFFERENTIAL



Vehicle settings suited for driving on unpaved roads.

Note: Auto-start-stop is disabled when you select this mode.

DRIVE MODES - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

ECO



Vehicle settings suited for economical driving.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Drive Mode Control

NORMAL



Vehicle settings suited for balanced driving.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

SLIPPERY



Vehicle settings suited for driving on slippery roads.

Note: If you switch off your vehicle in **Slippery** mode, the system prompts you to return to this mode when you next start your vehicle. If you ignore the selection prompt, the system defaults to **Normal** mode.

SPORT



Vehicle settings suited for sportier driving.

TOW/HAUL



Vehicle settings suited for towing or hauling.

Note: If you switch off your vehicle in **Tow/haul** mode, the system prompts you to return to this mode when you next start your vehicle. If you ignore the selection prompt, the system defaults to **Normal** mode.

PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE DRIVE MODES - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

AUTO EV



This mode provides an automatic use of high voltage battery power during the drive, staying in electric mode when possible and running the engine when needed.

EV LATER



In EV Later, your vehicle runs on the engine as needed and saves most of the available electric range for later use in Auto EV or EV Now mode.

For example, your initial drive is at high speeds on open roads, but later your drive is at low speeds in an urban area where electric only driving is most efficient. In this case, you can select EV Later for the higher speed portion of your trip and then select Auto EV or EV Now for the urban portion.

When you enable EV Later, a white EV Later icon appears in the information display. EV Later resets to Auto EV when you switch off your vehicle. You may select EV Later again during your next drive.

When you select EV Later with the vehicle fully charged or near fully charged, some electric-only driving range is used to discharge the battery. This is to allow for full operation of the regenerative braking system.

EV NOW



This mode provides an electric only driving experience.

Drive Mode Control

Do not use EV Now when towing a trailer. The electric drive system is not designed for towing.

Your vehicle could accelerate slower and the top speed could be lower than when in Auto EV mode.

You can enable your engine at any time by using one of the following methods:

- Fully press the accelerator pedal. A pop-up message appears. Press the OK button on the steering wheel to enable the engine. When the engine is no longer needed, your vehicle returns to EV Now. The message disappears if you release the accelerator pedal.
- Select a different EV mode. This exits EV Now mode and permits engine operation. To return to EV Now mode, select it again.

Your vehicle could enter Engine Enabled mode if system conditions require it. A message displays if this occurs. This is a normal function of the system and your vehicle returns to EV Now mode when possible.

When you enable EV Now mode, a blue EV Now icon appears in the information display. If your vehicle is in Engine Enabled mode, the EV Now icon is amber. EV Now exits when your available electric range reaches zero.

Note: *In certain vehicles, cabin air heating is not available in EV Now mode, only heated seats and heated steering wheel.*

Drive Mode Control

PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE DRIVE MODES – TROUBLESHOOTING - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE DRIVE MODES – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
EV now All electric driving	You selected EV now mode with the EV button.
EV later {###}% electric energy saved for later	You selected EV later mode with the EV button.
EV charge Battery charged by engine	You selected EV charge mode with the EV button.
Auto EV normal operation	You selected auto EV mode with the EV button.
EV Now not available	EV Now is not available.
Engine enabled due to defrost setting	Your vehicle enables the engine due to the climate control defrost setting. This is normal operation.
Press EV button for full defrost	Press the EV button and select either EV Later or EV Auto to enable full defrost. The engine may run to provide more cabin heat.
Engine enabled for system performance	Your vehicle enables the engine for system performance. This is normal operation.
Press OK to enable engine	You can press OK to enable the engine temporarily for increased performance when in EV Now mode.

Drive Mode Control

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING - DIESEL, BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Drive mode not available	The system is not available. If it is still not available the next time you switch the ignition on, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

One Pedal Drive - Battery Electric Vehicle

WHAT IS ONE PEDAL DRIVE

One pedal drive allows you to accelerate, slow down and stop using only the accelerator pedal. Pressing the accelerator down accelerates your vehicle, releasing pressure on the accelerator with your foot still on the pedal slows down your vehicle and releasing the pedal completely allows your vehicle to come to a complete stop if the road grade is not excessively steep.

See **One Pedal Drive Precautions** (page 364).

ONE PEDAL DRIVE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: This system is an extra driving aid. It does not replace your attention and judgment, or the need to apply the brakes. This system does NOT automatically brake your vehicle. If you fail to press the brake pedal when necessary, you may collide with another vehicle.

Shifting into neutral (N) does not hold your vehicle at a standstill.

Shifting into drive (D) or reverse (R) does not cause the vehicle to move if the accelerator pedal is not pressed.

Note: Always check the transmission selection before accelerating.

ONE PEDAL DRIVE LIMITATIONS

One pedal drive is unavailable when any of the following occur:

- Shifting into an incorrect transmission position, such as park (P) when driving.
- Using active park assist.

- Using cruise control.
- Selecting a drive mode other than Normal, Eco or Sport disables one pedal drive.

Releasing the accelerator pedal may not bring your vehicle to a complete stop on steep grades.

Increased vehicle load may reduce accelerator pedal ability to slow the vehicle.

SWITCHING ONE PEDAL DRIVE ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **DRIVE MODES**.
3. Switch **1-Pedal Drive** on or off.

ONE PEDAL DRIVE INDICATORS



When one pedal drive is active, the indicator displays in the instrument cluster.

Local Hazard Information

WHAT IS LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

The system is designed to provide near real-time information about the road in front of you.

LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION INDICATORS



Animals on the road.



Approaching vehicle coming the wrong way.



Broken down vehicle or accident.



Broken down vehicle or accident.



Fire.



General.



Hazardous driving conditions.



Objects on the road.



People on the road.



Road works.



Traffic jam.

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all indicators shown are available.

ENABLING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

Note: Make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 547).

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Press **Connected Vehicle Features**.
4. Switch **Local hazard information** on.

CHECKING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION STATUS

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Status Information**.
3. Select **Local Hazard Information**.

Speed Limiter

HOW DOES THE SPEED LIMITER WORK

The system allows you to set a speed to which your vehicle becomes limited. The set speed sets the effective maximum speed of your vehicle. You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

The controls are on the steering wheel.

SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

SWITCHING THE SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF

LIM

Press to switch the system on. The system activates with the current vehicle speed as the set speed. Press again to switch the system off.

SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT

SET+

Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. The set speed is stored and displayed in the instrument cluster display.

SET-

CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

SET+

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button

SET-

upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT



Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

Note: The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.

RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT



Press to resume the set speed limiter.

Speed Limiter

INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily exceed the set speed limit.

The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, or when you fully release the accelerator pedal for a short period of time.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display.

SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS

 It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on.

It illuminates grey if the system is in standby mode.

SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

If you unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display and a tone sounds.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

WHAT IS THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER

Intelligent speed limiter is a driving aid that limits the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system.

HOW DOES THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER WORK

The system allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. For example, if the speed sign recognition system detects a 80 km/h (50 mph) speed limit, the vehicle speed is limited to 80 km/h (50 mph). You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

The controls are on the steering wheel.

A warning appears in the instrument cluster display if any of the following occur:

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.
- You unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill.

Note: *The system does not limit the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign in the instrument cluster display.*

Note: *This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 548). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

SWITCHING THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF



Press to switch the system on. The system activates with the detected speed-limit or, if no speed-limit is detected, the current vehicle speed as the set speed. Press again to switch the system off.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT

SET+ Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. The set speed is stored and displayed in the instrument cluster display.

SET-

Note: The set speed limiter adjusts when the system detects a different maximum speed limit.

Note: If the system cannot detect a maximum speed limit, the system returns to standby mode.

CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

SET+ You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

SET-

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

 Press to cancel the speed limiter and set it in standby mode. The symbol in the instrument cluster display appears gray.

RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

 Press to resume the limiter. The system sets the speed limit to the detected maximum speed limit when it resumes. The symbol in instrument cluster display appears green.

INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily exceed the set speed limit.

The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, or when you fully release the accelerator pedal for a short period of time.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS

LIM It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on.

It illuminates grey if the system is in standby mode.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A tone sounds if:

- You unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill.
- You continue to exceed the set speed.
- The speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit outside the operational speed range, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

SWITCHING FROM INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER TO SPEED LIMITER

You can change between intelligent speed limiter and normal speed limiter using the center display. Intelligent speed limiter allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. Normal speed limiter allows you to manually limit the vehicle speed using controls on the steering wheel.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Speed Limit Assist**.
4. Switch **Intelligent Speed Limiter** off.

Note: If you switch intelligent speed limiter off, the system defaults to manual speed limiter. You can manually set the speed limiter using the controls on the steering wheel.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – TROUBLESHOOTING

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does a warning appear in the instrument cluster display?

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.

Lane Keeping System

WHAT IS THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM

The lane keeping system is a driving aid designed to provide temporary steering assistance when it detects an unintended lane departure.

HOW DOES THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to alert you by providing temporary steering assistance when it detects an unintended lane departure. The system detects and tracks the road lane markings using a camera mounted behind the interior mirror.

Note: *The system works when the camera can detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.*

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by US.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system only operates when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 60 km/h (37 mph).

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The system does not detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.
- You switch the turn signals on.
- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- The vehicle speed is less than 60 km/h (37 mph).
- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- Narrow lane width.

Lane Keeping System

The system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM ON AND OFF



To activate the lane keeping system, press the button on the steering wheel.

To deactivate the lane keeping system, press the button on the steering wheel twice.

Note: When switching the system on or off a message appears in the information display to show the status.

Note: The system always turns on when you start your vehicle.

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM MODE

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Lane-Keeping System**.
4. Press **Mode**.
5. Select a setting.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM SETTINGS

You can select one of the two modes on the touchscreen:

- Aid mode.
- Alert and aid mode.

Note: The system remembers the last mode when you start your vehicle.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel Vibration Intensity

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Lane-Keeping System**.
4. Press **Alert Intensity**.
5. Select a setting.

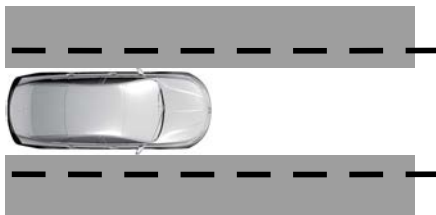
Note: This setting does not affect the aid mode.

AID MODE

WHAT IS AID MODE

Aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the center of the lane.

HOW DOES AID MODE WORK



Lane Keeping System

The lane keeping system aids you when an unintentional lane departure occurs. The system provides a small steering input to move your vehicle towards the center of the lane.

Note: When aid mode is on and the system does not detect any steering activity for a short period of time, for example lightly holding the steering wheel, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel.

Note: The aid mode becomes active again after you have returned your vehicle to the center of the lane.

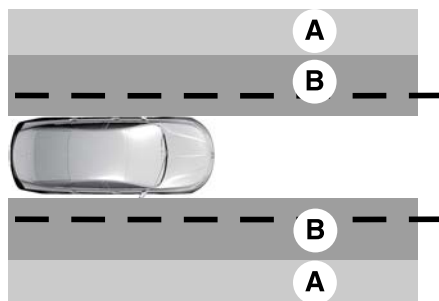
ALERT AND AID MODE

WHAT IS ALERT AND AID MODE

Alert and aid mode combines both, alert mode and aid mode.

HOW DOES ALERT AND AID MODE WORK

Alert and aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure. If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane, the steering wheel vibrates.



A Alert.

B Aid.

Note: The diagram illustrates general zone coverage. It does not provide exact zone parameters.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM INDICATORS



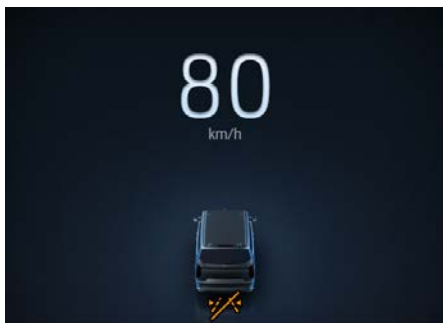
When you switch the system on and the system detects lane markings, a white indicator and white lane markings appear in the instrument cluster display.

Lane Keeping System



When the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 60 km/h (35 mph), and the system does not detect lane markings, a gray indicator and gray lane markings appear.

When the vehicle speed is less than 60 km/h (35 mph), a gray indicator appears and lane markings do not appear.



When you switch the system off, an amber indicator with a strikethrough appears.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST

Blind spot assist is an extension of the lane keeping system that provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance during lane changes if it detects adjacent vehicles.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WORK



Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist.

Blind spot assist does not function under the following conditions:

- When none or only one of the two lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- A trailer is attached to your vehicle.

Lane Keeping System

Note: Bike carriers and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike carrier or a cargo rack.

Note: The system does not recognize the trailer, if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors. We recommend to switch off blind spot assist if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors.

Blind spot assist could have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST INDICATORS

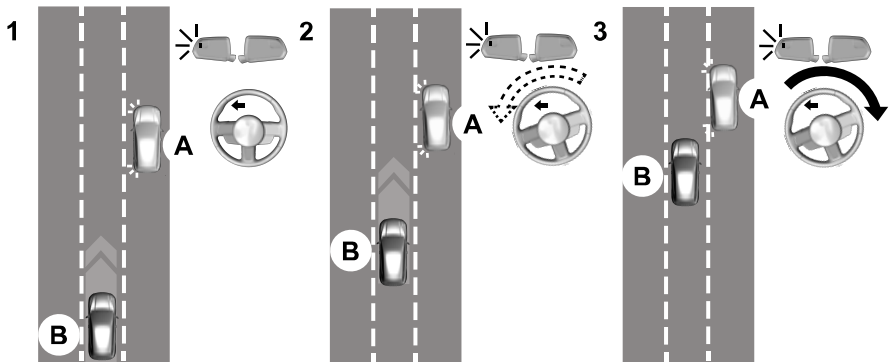


Diagram 1: Vehicle A uses its left turn signal preparing to change from the right lane to the middle lane. Vehicle B is already in the middle lane and just entered Vehicle A's blind spot causing the blind spot information system alert indicator to flash on the exterior mirror.

Diagram 2: The driver of Vehicle A begins to steer into the center lane not aware of Vehicle B.

Diagram 3: Blind spot assist counter steers to help alert the driver of Vehicle A to direct their vehicle back into the right lane to help avoid a possible collision with Vehicle B.

The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. For more information See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 380).

Lane Keeping System

BLIND SPOT ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage is an extension of the lane keeping system that provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance during lane changes if it detects adjacent vehicles.

Note: When attaching a trailer you must configure it so the system can recognize it. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 382).

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK



Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

If a supported trailer is connected, the function is reduced to only detecting vehicles on both sides of your vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 382).

When active, this system functions with or without the use of direction indicators and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist with trailer coverage.

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage does not function under the following conditions:

Lane Keeping System

- When none or only one of the two lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- The attached trailer is not correctly configured or it is not supported by the system. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 382).

Note: *Blind spot assist with trailer coverage could have reduced performance if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.*

Note: *The system does not recognize the trailer, if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors. We recommend to switch off blind spot assist with trailer coverage if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors.*

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage could have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.
- Attaching bike carriers or cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE INDICATORS

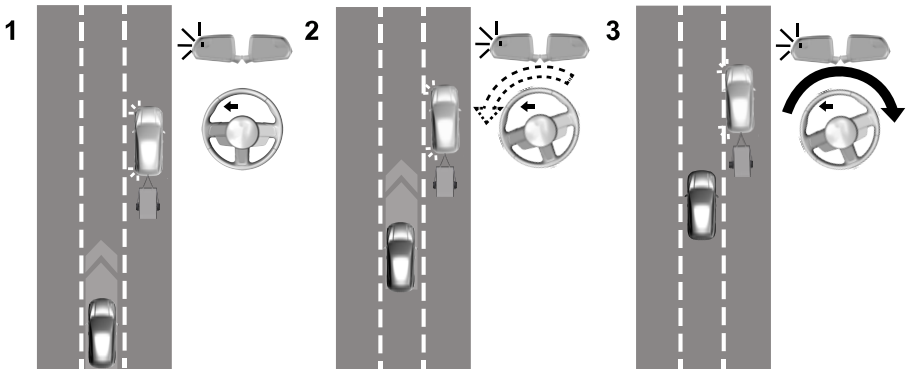


Diagram 1: Vehicle A uses its left turn signal preparing to change from the right lane to the middle lane. Vehicle B is already in the middle lane and just entered Vehicle A's blind spot causing the blind spot information system alert indicator to flash on the exterior mirror.

Diagram 2: The driver of Vehicle A begins to steer into the center lane not aware of Vehicle B.

Diagram 3: Blind spot assist countersteers to help alert the driver of Vehicle A to direct their vehicle back into the right lane to help avoid a possible collision with Vehicle B.

Lane Keeping System

The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist with trailer coverage activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator

flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. For more information See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 380).

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer wider than 2.4 m (7.9 ft), and the total length from the trailer hitch to the rear of the trailer is longer than 10 m (33 ft) to your vehicle. See Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage (page 382).
Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Lane Keeping System

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Lane keeping system malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Keep hands on steering wheel	The system requests that you keep your hands on the steering wheel.

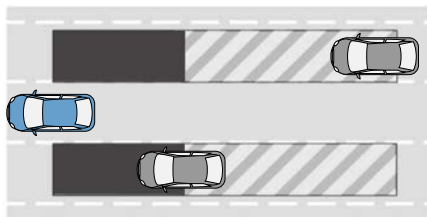
Blind Spot Information System

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

Blind spot information system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 4 m (13 ft) beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 18 m (59 ft) beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 48 km/h (30 mph) to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.



BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

Blind Spot Information System

Note: The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructures.

Note: The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.

Note: Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

Note: The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

Note: The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

Note: The system does not operate in reverse (R).

SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Blind Spot Information System** on or off.

When you switch blind spot information system off, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

LOCATING THE BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS



Blind Spot Information System

The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

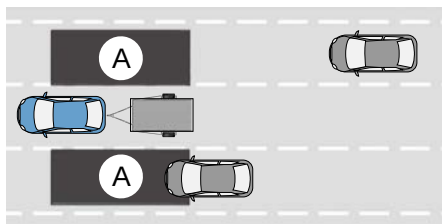
Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display. The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE



The blind spot information system with trailer coverage is designed to detect vehicles that could have entered the blind spot zone.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK

The blind spot information system with trailer coverage is designed to detect vehicles that could have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer. When you attach a trailer and have set up a trailer, the blind spot information system with trailer tow becomes active when driving forward above 10 km/h (6 mph).

You can set up the trailer length, select a trailer or switch blind spot information system with trailer tow off.

Note: The system remembers the last trailer setting when you start your vehicle.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

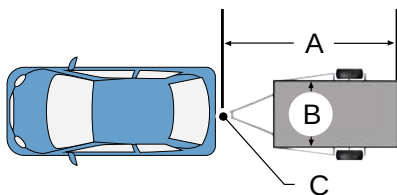
Some trailers may cause a slight change in system performance:

- Wide box trailers, especially those wider than the towing vehicle, may cause false alerts to occur when driving next to infrastructure or near parked cars. A false alert may also occur while making a 90-degree turn or driving through a roundabout.
- Wide trailers that have a total length greater than 6 m (20 ft) may cause delayed alerts when a vehicle is passing at high speed.

Blind Spot Information System

- Box trailers that have a width greater than 2.4 m (7.9 ft) may cause early alerts when you pass a vehicle.
- Clam shell or V-Nose box trailers with a width greater than 2.4 m (7.9 ft) may cause delayed alerts when a vehicle traveling the same speed as your vehicle merges lanes.

SETTING A TRAILER LENGTH



- A Trailer length.
- B Trailer width.
- C Trailer hitch.

The system operates only if the trailer front width is less than 2.4 m (7.9 ft), and the total length from the trailer hitch to the rear of the trailer is less than 10 m (33 ft).

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Towing**.
3. Press **Add trailer** and follow the instructions on the screen.
4. Press **Trailer BLIS** and follow the instructions on the screen.

Note: Proper measurement and measurement entry are required for the system to function as designed.

Note: If you attach load carriers such as bike racks or cargo racks with electrical lighting, enter a length of 1 m (3 ft). Cross Traffic Alert remains on.

SELECTING A TRAILER

If you select a trailer in the center display prior to connecting a trailer, the system loads that configuration and an information message appears in the instrument cluster display when you connect the trailer.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Towing**.
3. Press **Select Active Trailer**.
4. Select an available trailer.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM INDICATORS



When the system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the turn signals on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

Note: The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



If the system detects a fault, it illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the instrument cluster display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Blind Spot Information System

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
BLIS not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
BLIS deactivated Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
BLIS malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *If you deactivate the blind spot information system but blind spot assist remains active the following messages are shown.*

Message	Details
Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

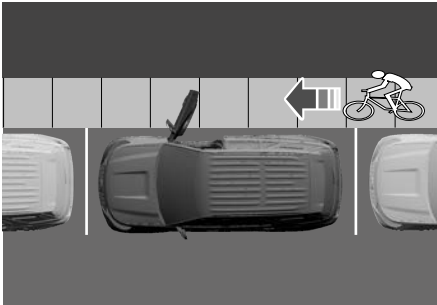
Exit Warning

WHAT IS EXIT WARNING

Exit warning uses radar sensors to alert you to traffic objects approaching your open door.

HOW DOES EXIT WARNING WORK

Exit warning detects traffic objects such as vehicles, cyclists, scooters and motorcycles that approach your vehicle from the rear and cross into the exit warning zone. The exit warning zones are along the left and right sides of your vehicle and extend slightly past a fully open door.



Note: The system cannot detect animals, slow moving pedestrians or any type of stationary object.

EXIT WARNING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



WARNING: The exit warning system becomes active once you have started your vehicle and the vehicle is not moving. Exit warning is only active when your vehicle is on.



WARNING: Always pay attention to the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

EXIT WARNING LIMITATIONS

The exit warning system becomes active once you have started your vehicle and the vehicle is not moving. Exit warning remains on for about 3 minutes after turning your vehicle off. Exit warning turns off immediately when locking the doors. Exit warning will inform you when it turns off and operates in any gear position.

Note: Do not use exit warning as a replacement for paying attention when exiting your vehicle.

Note: The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles by closing the doors automatically.

Note: The system may not inform and/or alert you if a traffic object is approaching too quickly or if the parking position prevents detection.

Exit Warning Alert

Exit warning is designed to provide a visual and audible alert during an exit when an occupant opens any door and a traffic object is approaching on the same side.

Exit Warning

EXIT WARNING INDICATORS



When exit warning detects an approaching traffic object on one side, the corresponding alert indicator in the exterior mirror is illuminated. If exit warning alert is active, the same alert indicator flashes. See **Blind Spot Information System Indicators** (page 383).

In addition to the mirror indicator there is also visual indicator in the touchscreen noting what side a traffic object has been detected on.

SWITCHING EXIT WARNING ON AND OFF

You can switch off the exit warning system by using the touchscreen.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

LOCATING THE EXIT WARNING SENSORS



The sensors are mounted behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

Note: *Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.*

Exit Warning

EXIT WARNING – TROUBLESHOOTING

EXIT WARNING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Right side: check surroundings before exiting	Right exit warning alert is active.
Left side: check surroundings before exiting	Left exit warning alert is active.
Exit Warning turning off Exit safely	Displays if the exit warning system turns off/shuts down.
Exit Warning System malfunction	Displays if the exit warning system detects any system error.

Cross Traffic Alert

WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

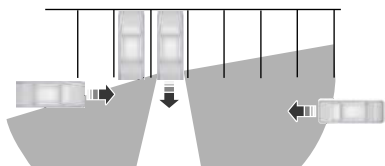
The system is designed to alert you of vehicles approaching from the sides behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R). If you continue to reverse after the system alerts you, the system is designed to apply the brakes if it still detects an approaching vehicle. If the system applies the brakes, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: *The system does not apply the brakes if you override it by firmly pressing the accelerator pedal.*

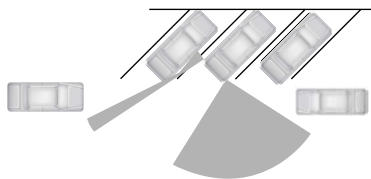
HOW DOES CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WORK

The system is designed to detect vehicles that approach at a speed between 8 km/h (5 mph) and 60 km/h (37 mph). Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed. Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

The system turns on when you start your vehicle and you shift into reverse (R). The system turns off when you shift out of reverse (R).



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

Cross Traffic Alert



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

Note: The system switches on every time you switch the ignition on.

LOCATING THE CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT SENSORS



CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- The sensors are blocked.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Vehicles approach at speeds less than 8 km/h (5 mph) or greater than 60 km/h (37 mph).
- Your vehicle speed is greater than 12 km/h (7 mph).
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

Note: The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

SWITCHING CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Cross Traffic Alert** on or off.

The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display when you shift into reverse (R).

Cross Traffic Alert

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

Cross traffic alert with trailer coverage allows the system to continue operating with a trailer or trailer hitch attachment.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

Cross traffic alert remains on when you attach a trailer in vehicles that come with blind spot information system with trailer coverage under the following conditions:

- You connect a trailer.
- The trailer is a bike rack or cargo rack with a maximum length of 1 m (3 ft).
- You set the trailer length to 1 m (3 ft) in the center display.

Note: The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with an approved trailer tow module and tow bar, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT INDICATORS



When the system detects an approaching vehicle, a tone sounds, an indicator illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror and arrows appear in the center display to show which side the approaching vehicle is coming from.

Note: If the arrows do not display, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you or apply the brakes, even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.

Cross Traffic Alert

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Cross traffic alert	Displays instead of arrows when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic.
Cross Traffic not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays if the cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross traffic system malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross traffic alert deactivated Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Cross traffic alert Applying brakes	Displays if the system applies the brakes. Check for approaching traffic.

Pre-Collision Assist

WHAT IS PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

Pre-collision assist detects other road users and warns you of their presence. If you do not respond, the system automatically applies the brakes.

HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WORK

The system is active at 5 km/h (3 mph) and above. Pedestrian and cyclist detection is active at speeds up to 80 km/h (50 mph).



If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, a pedestrian or a cyclist within your driving path, the system is designed to provide three levels of functionality.

Level of Functionality	Details
Alert	When activated, a warning flashes and an audible warning sounds.
Brake support	The system is designed to help reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system could apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.
Automatic emergency braking	The system is designed to apply the brakes if it detects a crash is imminent. This may help reduce impact or avoid the crash.

Pre-Collision Assist

HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WITH INTERSECTION ASSIST WORK - VEHICLES WITH: CRUISE CONTROL

The system operates when you turn across the path of an oncoming vehicle, or a pedestrian or cyclist crossing the road. Detection of oncoming vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 30 km/h (19 mph). Detection of crossing pedestrians or cyclists at an intersection is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 30 km/h (19 mph).

HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WITH INTERSECTION ASSIST WORK - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

The system operates when you turn across the path of an oncoming vehicle, or a pedestrian or cyclist crossing the road. Detection of oncoming vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 30 km/h (19 mph). Detection of crossing pedestrians or cyclists at an intersection is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 30 km/h (19 mph). The system also operates when you approach the path of a crossing vehicle. Detection of crossing vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 65 km/h (40 mph).

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.



WARNING: The system may operate with reduced function during cold and inclement weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to follow this instruction may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if your vehicle has a non-Ford windshield. Do not carry out windshield repairs in the area around the sensor.



WARNING: System performance could be reduced in situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians or cyclists with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians or fast

Pre-Collision Assist

moving cyclists, partly obscured pedestrians or cyclists, pedestrians or cyclists that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

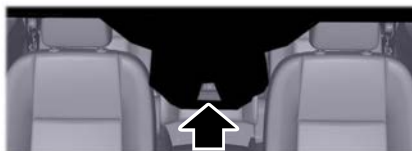


WARNING: The Pre-Collision Assist system with brake support cannot help prevent all collisions. Do not rely on this system to replace your judgment and the need to maintain correct distance and speed.

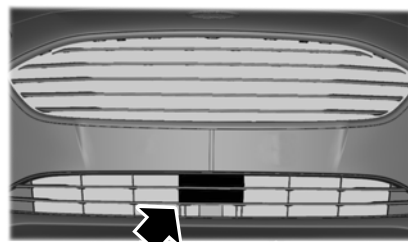
Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



PRE-COLLISION ASSIST LIMITATIONS

The system is not designed to detect animals.

LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: CRUISE CONTROL

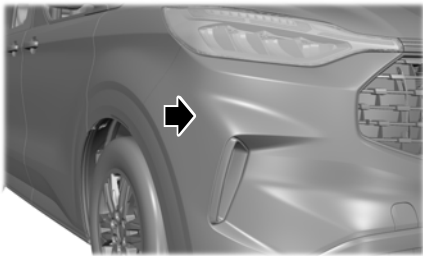


The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Pre-Collision Assist



The radar sensors are behind the front grille below the license plate and behind the front bumper on the left and right sides.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

DISTANCE INDICATION

WHAT IS DISTANCE INDICATION

Distance indication displays in the instrument cluster display the time gap to vehicles ahead of you traveling in the same direction.

Note: The graphic does not display if you switch on cruise control or adaptive cruise control.

SWITCHING DISTANCE INDICATION ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Distance Indication** on or off.

DISTANCE INDICATION INDICATOR

Vehicle Speed	System Sensitivity	Distance Indicator Color	Distance Gap	Time Gap
100 km/h (62 mph)	Normal.	Gray.	Greater than 25 m (82.0 ft) .	Greater than 0.9 seconds.
		Yellow.	17–25 m (55.8–82.0 ft).	0.6-0.9 seconds.
		Red.	Less than 17 m (55.8 ft).	Less than 0.6 seconds.

Pre-Collision Assist

FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

WHAT IS FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

A warning flashes and an audible warning sounds if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Press **Alert Sensitivity**.
5. Select a setting.

AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

Automatic emergency braking is an active safety system that activates the vehicle brakes when a potential crash is detected.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Automatic Emergency Braking** on or off.

Note: Automatic emergency braking turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

Note: If you turn automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist also turns off.

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

WHAT IS EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a road user, evasive steering assist helps you steer around the road user.

After you turn the steering wheel in an attempt to avoid a crash with the road user, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the road user. After you pass the road user, the system applies steering torque when you turn the steering wheel to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the road user.

Note: Road users are defined as pedestrians or bicyclists in your vehicle's path or another stationary vehicle in the same lane or a vehicle traveling in the same lane in the same direction as you. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 393).

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Evasive steering assist only activates when all the following occur:

- Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist are on.
- The system detects a road user ahead and starts to apply the brakes.
- You significantly turn the steering wheel to steer around a road user.

Note: Evasive steering assist does not automatically steer around a road user. If you do not turn the steering wheel, evasive steering assist does not activate.

Pre-Collision Assist

Note: *Evasive steering assist does not activate if the distance to the road user ahead is too small and the system cannot avoid a crash.*

SWITCHING EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Evasive Steering Assist** on or off.

Note: *Evasive steering assist turns on each time you switch the ignition on.*

Note: *If you turn automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist also turns off.*

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates in the instrument cluster display to indicate if the system is disabled, unavailable, or temporarily degraded due to external environmental conditions.

Note: *No action is needed if the warning lamp illuminates without a corresponding information message. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 393).*

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Pre-collision assist not available	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Pre-collision assist not available Sensor blocked	The sensors are dirty. Clean the sensors. Check the list of possible causes and actions in the table below. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Pre-Collision Assist

The following table lists possible causes and actions for when a blocked sensor message could display.

Cause	Details
The surface of the radar in the radiator grille is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the radiator grille in front of the radar or remove any obstruction.
The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the system to detect that there is no obstruction.
Heavy rain, spray, snow, or fog is interfering with the radar signals.	The system is temporarily disabled. The system should reactivate after a short period of time when the weather conditions improve.
The radar is misaligned.	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.
The windshield in front of the camera is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.
Excessive heat around the camera.	Wait for a short period of time. The message should clear when the temperature around the camera decreases.

Driver Alert

WHAT IS DRIVER ALERT

The system is designed to alert you if it calculates that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

HOW DOES DRIVER ALERT WORK

The system calculates your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the instrument cluster display until you cancel it.

DRIVER ALERT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



WARNING: Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.



WARNING: Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

SWITCHING DRIVER ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Driver Alert** on or off.

Note: The system turns on automatically after every ignition cycle.

RESETTING DRIVER ALERT

You can reset driver alert by:

- Switching the ignition off and on when your vehicle is stationary.
- Opening and closing the driver door when your vehicle is stationary.

Driver Alert

DRIVER ALERT INDICATORS



When the system detects an issue, for example, the camera

is blocked or misaligned, an off symbol appears in the instrument cluster display. If the symbol continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

DRIVER ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVER ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Driver fatigue warning Rest suggested	Displays when we recommend that you take a break due to low alertness levels.
Driver fatigue warning Rest now	Displays when you must take a break due to low alertness levels.
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and region not all messages are available.

Traffic Sign Recognition

WHAT IS TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

The system is designed to detect traffic signs to inform you of the current speed limit, overtaking and right of way regulations.

HOW DOES TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION WORK

Traffic sign recognition uses a sensor behind the interior mirror to detect traffic signs.

Map data could influence sign detection. Stored traffic sign data could influence the indicated speed limit value.

Note: *This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 548). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*

The system detects recognizable traffic signs, for example:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.
- No overtaking cancellation signs.
- Stop signs.
- Yield signs.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

Note: *Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.*

Note: *Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.*

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

The system could not detect all speed signs and could incorrectly read signs.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system could not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from correctly functioning.

If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system could not correctly function.

Traffic Sign Recognition

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION INDICATORS



The system can display two traffic signs in parallel.

You can view the status at any time using the instrument cluster display.



When the system detects an issue, for example, navigation map data is not available for a longer period of time, or the camera is blocked or misaligned, an off symbol appears in the instrument cluster display. If the symbol continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The system displays recognizable traffic signs in two stages as follows:

1. All new traffic signs appear brighter than the others in the display.
2. After a predetermined time they display normally.

If the system detects a supplementary traffic sign, it displays below the respective traffic sign. For example, when passing a speed limit for vehicles with a trailer sign.

Note: If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored traffic sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.



When the system does not detect a speed sign, for example, navigation map data is not available for a short period of time, or the system has no input, a speed sign with two hyphens appears in the instrument cluster display.

Traffic Sign Recognition

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION SETTINGS

Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Warning

You can set the system speed warning to alert you when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit recognized by the system.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Speed Limit Assist**.
4. Switch **Speed Warning** on or off.



Press and hold the button to temporarily switch the speed warning off.

Note: The speed warning turns on automatically after every ignition cycle.

Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Chime for Speed Limit Change

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Speed Limit Assist**.
4. Switch **Chime for Speed Limit Change** on or off.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Traffic sign recognition Reduced performance See manual	The traffic sign data provided by the navigation system is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Wrong Way Alert

WHAT IS WRONG WAY ALERT

The system is designed to alert you if it detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road.

HOW DOES WRONG WAY ALERT WORK

The system uses a sensor behind the interior mirror to detect no entry signs and uses information from the navigation system.

If the system detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and a tone sounds. The audio system volume mutes and navigation system guidance pauses.

Note: Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.

Note: This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 548). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.

WRONG WAY ALERT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

Note: Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.

Note: Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.

Note: In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you even if you are not driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road.

WRONG WAY ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system could not detect all traffic signs and could incorrectly read signs.

If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system could not correctly function.

The system does not operate in some countries. We recommend that you check system availability before use.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system could not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from functioning correctly.

The system could not correctly operate in areas under construction or new infrastructure.

SWITCHING WRONG WAY ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Wrong Way Alert** on or off.

Wrong Way Alert

WRONG WAY ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

WRONG WAY ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Check driving direction	The system detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road. Ensure you are driving in the correct direction.

Load Carrying

LOAD CARRYING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



WARNING: Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.



WARNING: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate or the rear cargo doors to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate or the rear cargo doors, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

Note: When loading long objects into your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture be careful not to damage the interior trim.

ROOF RACK - VEHICLES WITHOUT INTEGRATED ROOF RACK

ROOF RACK PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.



WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

Note: If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.

Note: Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.

You must place loads directly on the crossbars fitted to the roof rack side rails. When using the roof rack system, we recommend that you use genuine Ford accessory crossbars specifically designed for your vehicle.

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

Load Carrying

ROOF RACK LOAD CAPACITIES

Maximum Roof Load

Variant	Maximum Roof Load (Including Roof Rack) kg (lb)
Low Roof	170 (375)
Medium Roof	100 (220)

ROOF RACK - VEHICLES WITH: INTEGRATED ROOF RACK

ROOF RACK PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.



WARNING: The crossbars are heavy. To help avoid personal injury take care when lowering the crossbars.



WARNING: When folding the crossbars down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.



WARNING: Do not tether loads near the release lever.



E171581

You must place loads directly on the raised crossbars.

Note: *Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.*

Note: *If you raise the crossbars, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.*

Note: *Make sure the crossbars are in the folded position before entering a car wash.*

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

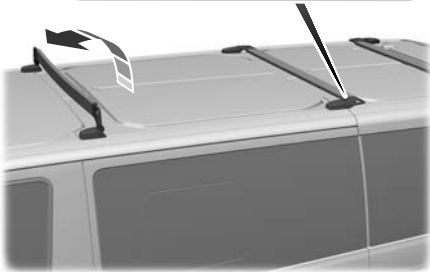
Load Carrying

ADJUSTING A ROOF RACK CROSSBAR



1. Pull the release lever.
2. Raise or lower the crossbars until they lock into place.

Note: Make sure the crossbars are in the folded position before entering a car wash.



E167062

ROOF RACK LOAD CAPACITIES

Maximum Roof Load

Using two adjacent crossbars kg (lb)	Using all three crossbars kg (lb)
100 (220)	155 (342)

Rear Cargo Area

REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINTS

REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINT PRECAUTIONS

⚠ WARNING: Always properly secure cargo to prevent shifting cargo or cargo falling from the vehicle. Failure to do so could result in compromised vehicle stability and serious personal injury to vehicle occupants or others.

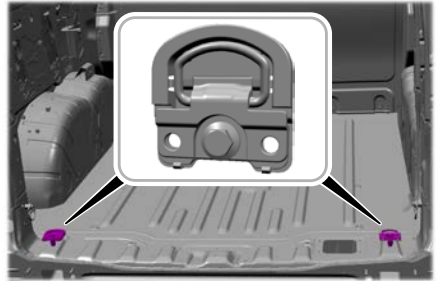
⚠ WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

⚠ WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum load rating of the load retaining fixtures. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

⚠ WARNING: Check the load retaining fixtures for damage before using them. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

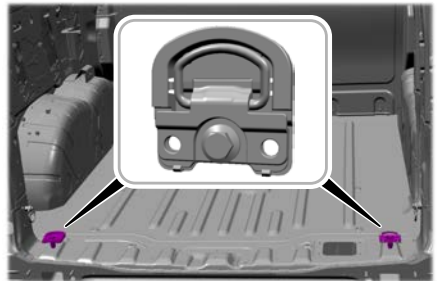
⚠ WARNING: Do not use the load retaining fixtures for towing. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

LOCATING THE REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINTS - BUS, VEHICLES WITH: 2 LOAD RETAINING FIXTURES



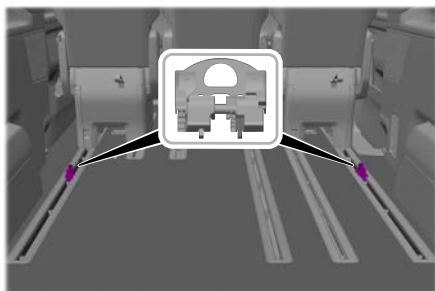
Note: The number of load retaining fixtures could vary depending on your vehicle model.

LOCATING THE REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINTS - BUS, VEHICLES WITH: 4 LOAD RETAINING FIXTURES



The additional, removable load retaining fixtures are provided in the driver's door stowage.

Rear Cargo Area



To use the removable load retaining fixtures, attach them to the seat tracks.

1. Place the fixtures inside the seat tracks in an open position.
2. Close the fixtures to lock them in your preferred location.

Note: Make sure to fully lock the removable load retaining fixtures to the seat tracks before using them. If the fixtures are not correctly locked to the brackets inside the tracks, they allow movement in a longitudinal direction. Do not lock the fixtures to the end positions of the seat tracks.

LOCATING THE REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINTS - VAN



Note: The number of load retaining fixtures could vary depending on your vehicle model.

REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINT LOAD CAPACITIES

Body style	Maximum Load Value
Bus	3,500 N (785 lb)
Van	5,000 N (1,125 lb)

Connecting a Trailer

TOW BALL

TOW BALL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.

You must retract the tow ball arm when not in use.

Do not use your foot or any tools to deploy or retract the tow ball arm.

Do not touch the tow ball arm when it is deploying or retracting to the released position.

Do not use the tow ball arm if no tones sound when deploying the tow ball arm or when you lock it into position. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Never retract the tow ball arm with a trailer attached. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Tow Ball Arm Safety Checks

After you deploy the tow ball arm, check the following:

- Make sure the tow ball arm is fully locked. It must not move if jerked or when you attach a trailer.
- The LED is not flashing and no warning tones sound.

Do not use the tow ball arm if any of these cannot be met. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

TOW BALL LIMITATIONS

The tow ball arm does not retract or deploy if any of the following occur:

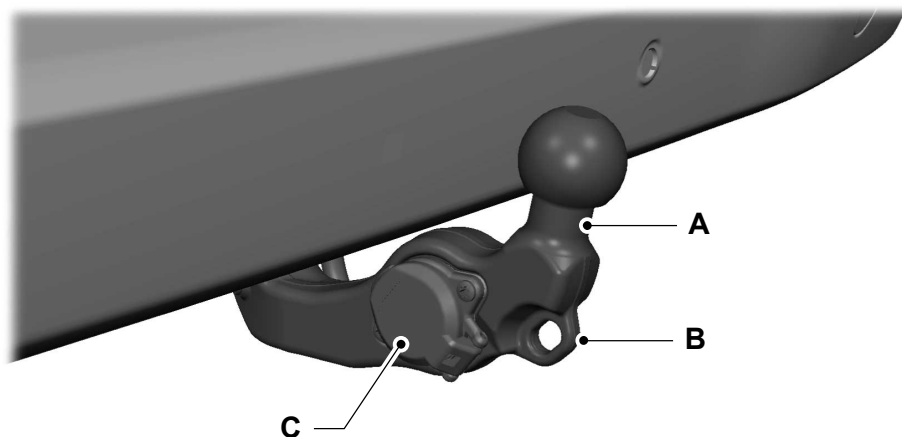
- Your vehicle is moving.
- The trailer wiring connection socket has a trailer wiring plug attached to it.
- The vehicle battery is not fully charged.
- The rear liftgate or cargo doors are closed.

TOW BALL ARM GUIDELINES

- The tow ball arm mechanism is maintenance free. Do not grease or oil the mechanism.
- Remove the trailer wiring plug from the trailer wiring connection socket when not in use. Failure to do so may result in corrosion of the trailer wiring connection socket. Clean the trailer wiring connection socket regularly and make sure the socket cover is fully closed.
- If you use a high pressure water jet to clean your vehicle, disconnect the trailer wiring plug. Do not aim the water jet directly at the trailer wiring connection socket. We recommend that you retract the tow ball arm before washing your vehicle.
- When the tow bar is not in use, always retract the tow ball arm.
- It is advisable that you deploy and retract the tow ball arm at least once per month.

Connecting a Trailer

TOW BALL COMPONENTS



- A Tow ball arm in tow position.
- B Trailer safety cable attachment point.
- C Trailer wiring connection socket.

Do not disassemble or repair the tow ball arm or mechanism.

Connecting a Trailer

DEPLOYING THE TOW BALL ARM



1. Press the button. It is on the right-hand side in the cargo area.

Note: The LED on the button illuminates and a double tone sounds.

2. Press the button again within four seconds to deploy the tow ball arm to the released position. The tow ball arm moves into the tow position.

Note: The LED on the button flashes and a series of tones sound when the tow ball arm deploys and reaches the released position. The LED on the button stops flashing and a double tone sounds when the tow ball arm locks into position.

Note: If you do not press the button again within four seconds, the system signals completion without deploying the tow ball arm. If the LED rapidly flashes and a high pitch tone sounds, repeat the process.

Note: A warning tone sounds for up to 30 seconds if the tow ball arm remains in an unlocked position.

If the deploy process is interrupted, for example tow ball arm movement is obstructed, the system reverses the movement. If the process is obstructed for the second time, the tow ball arm stops and remains in an unlocked position. If possible, remove the obstruction. You must reset the system. Same applies if the tow ball arm stops in an unlocked position due to loss of power supply. To reset the system fully repeat the process.

Note: Never use your foot to move or push the tow ball arm during its deploy process.

RETRACTING THE TOW BALL ARM

1. Disconnect the trailer wiring plug and unhitch the trailer or load carrier.



2. Press the button. It is on the right-hand side in the cargo area.

Note: The LED on the button illuminates and a double tone sounds.

3. Press the button again within four seconds to retract the tow ball arm from the released position. The tow ball arm moves into the stowed position.

Connecting a Trailer

Note: The LED on the button flashes and a series of tones sound when the tow ball arm retracts and reaches the released position. The LED on the button stops flashing and a double tone sounds when the tow ball arm locks into position.

Note: If you do not press the button again within four seconds, the system signals completion without retracting the tow ball arm. If the LED rapidly flashes and a high pitch tone sounds, repeat the process.

Note: A warning tone sounds for up to 30 seconds if the tow ball arm remains in an unlocked position.

If the retract process is interrupted, for example tow ball arm movement is obstructed, the system reverses the movement. If the process is obstructed for the second time, the tow ball arm stops and remains in an unlocked position. If possible, remove the obstruction. You must reset the system. Same applies if the tow ball arm stops in an unlocked position due to loss of power supply. To reset the system fully repeat the process.

Note: Never use your foot to move or push the tow ball arm during its retract process.

CONNECTING A TRAILER

Trailer Connection Checklist

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Towing**.
3. Press **Connection checklist**.

Electronic Park Hold



Applies the electronic parking brake when you shift to park (P).

The electronic park hold button illuminates when activated.

The feature prevents your vehicle from moving in any direction when you are aligned with your trailer coupler and shift to park (P).

Note: The feature is active for the current key cycle.

You can also press a zoom button when using the camera views to switch the feature on.

Trailer Connection Alarm

The alarm is set when the following occur:

- Your vehicle detects the trailer.
- Your vehicle is locked.
- The alarm is armed.

When the trailer is disconnected in this state, the vehicle alarm sounds and an alert is sent to your FordPass app.

Note: For reliable trailer detection, the trailer's lamps must be SAE certified for each intended purpose.

Note: If the trailer is not compatible with the feature, the turn signals flash twice.

TRAILER LIGHTING CHECK



WARNING: Never connect any trailer lamp wiring to the vehicle's tail lamp wiring; this may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for assistance in proper trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

Trailer light check feature allows one person to confirm that all taillights are functioning.

Perform a trailer light illumination sequence to confirm that all lights are functioning using the SYNC screen in the vehicle.

Connecting a Trailer

Performing the Trailer Light Check using the SYNC screen in vehicle

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Towing**.
3. Press **Trailer Light Check**.

4. Press **Start**.

5. Follow the instructions until the lights sequence completes.

Note: *If your vehicle does not recognize the trailer, press and hold the brake pedal for a few seconds.*

CONNECTING A TRAILER – TROUBLESHOOTING

CONNECTING A TRAILER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Trailer disconnected	The system senses a trailer connection becomes disconnected, either intentionally or unintentionally, during a given ignition cycle.
Wiring malfunction on trailer	There are certain faults in your vehicle wiring and trailer wiring or brake system.
Trailer battery not charging See manual	There is a fault with your trailer battery, or your trailer battery voltage is very low.
Tow bar unlocked Towing prohibited See manual	Swivel the tow ball arm again. If the message remains on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See Tow Ball (page 411).
Tow bar malfunction Towing prohibited Service required	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tow bar not activated Start engine and retry	The vehicle battery may not have a full charge. Switch your vehicle on, and then swivel the tow ball arm. If the message remains on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See Tow Ball (page 411).
Tow bar extended Check trailer wiring	Check the trailer wiring for any concerns. If the warning stays on or continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Towing a Trailer - Vehicles Without: Trailer Tow

TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Your vehicle is not approved for trailer towing. Never tow a trailer with your vehicle.

Towing a Trailer - Vehicles With: Trailer Tow

TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Make sure that the vertical load on the tow ball is between the minimum and maximum recommended weight at all times. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.

The trailer vertical weight on the tow ball is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.

Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying. See **Trailer Sway Control** (page 421).

Towing a trailer changes the vehicle handling characteristics and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behavior to the load of the trailer.

TOWING A TRAILER LIMITATIONS - DIESEL, PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% and altitudes up to 1,000 m (3,281 ft) when towing a trailer. In mountainous regions the engine performance decreases due to lower air density with increasing altitude. In high altitude regions above 1,000 m (3,281 ft), you should reduce the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight by 10% for every additional 1,000 m (3,281 ft). See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 545).

Note: *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have a tow bar fitted. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

TOWING A TRAILER LIMITATIONS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% when towing a trailer. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 545).

Note: *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have a tow bar fitted. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

Towing a Trailer - Vehicles With: Trailer Tow

LOADING YOUR TRAILER

Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unladen vehicle, you should place the load in your trailer toward the front, within the maximum vertical load, as this gives the best stability. See **Towing Weight Capacities** (page 418).

The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

Note: *The maximum permissible trailer vertical weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer vertical weight could be lower.*

TRAILER TOWING HINTS

Use a low gear when descending a steep downhill gradient.

The stability of your vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependent on the quality of the trailer.

The electrical system on your vehicle is suitable for towing trailers with LED lamps.

LAUNCHING OR RETRIEVING A BOAT OR PERSONAL WATERCRAFT

Disconnect the wiring to the trailer before backing the trailer into the water.

Reconnect the wiring to the trailer after the trailer is removed from the water.

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 15 cm (6 in) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding these limits may allow water to enter vehicle components:

- Causing internal damage to the components.
- Affecting driveability, emissions, and reliability.

Replace the rear axle lubricant anytime the rear axle has been submerged in water. Water may have contaminated the rear axle lubricant, which is not normally checked or changed unless a leak is suspected or other axle repair is required.

TOWING WEIGHTS AND DIMENSIONS

TOWING WEIGHT CAPACITIES - DIESEL

Maximum Permissible Trailer Weight

You can find the maximum permissible trailer weight for your vehicle in the Certificate of Conformity or ask from a dealer.

Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight

Powertrain	kg (lb)
2.0L EcoBlue.	100–112 (220–247)

Towing a Trailer - Vehicles With: Trailer Tow

Note: You can find the maximum permissible trailer vertical weight for your vehicle in the Certificate of Conformity or ask from a dealer.

TOWING WEIGHT CAPACITIES - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE/ PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Maximum Permissible Trailer Weight

You can find the maximum permissible trailer weight for your vehicle in the Certificate of Conformity or ask from an authorized dealer.

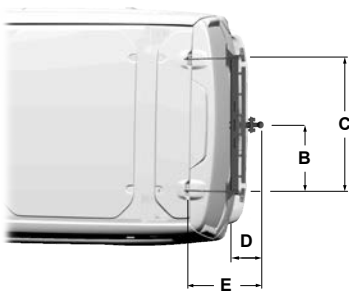
Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight

Variant	kg (lb)
Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle	80–92 (176–203)

Note: You can find the maximum permissible trailer vertical weight for your vehicle in the Certificate of Conformity or ask from an authorized dealer.

Towing a Trailer - Vehicles With: Trailer Tow

TOW BAR DIMENSIONS



Measurement	Dimension Description	mm (in)
A	Wheel center to center of tow ball.	1,100 (43.3)
B	Center of tow ball to side member.	554 (21.8)
C	Distance between side members.	1,108 (43.6)
D	Center of tow ball to body mounting face.	294.5 (11.6)
E	Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point.	622 (24.5)

Trailer Sway Control

HOW DOES TRAILER SWAY CONTROL WORK

The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces engine torque to aid vehicle stability.

If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control lamp flashes and the message **Trailer sway Reduce speed** appears in the information display.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Check the vertical weight on the tow ball and trailer load distribution.

TRAILER SWAY CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

Note: *This feature only activates when significant trailer sway occurs.*

Note: *This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.*

Note: *This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.*

Note: *In some cases, if vehicle speed is too high, the system may activate multiple times, gradually reducing vehicle speed.*

Driving Hints

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -25°C (-13°F).

DRIVING ON SNOW AND ICE



WARNING: If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

On ice and snow, you should drive more slowly than usual. Your vehicle has an anti-lock braking system, apply the brake pedal steadily. Do not pump the brake pedal. See **Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations** (page 311).

BREAKING-IN - DIESEL, PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Tires

You need to break in new tires for approximately 480 km (300 mi). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

Brakes and Clutch

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 160 km (100 mi) in town and for the first 1,600 km (1,000 mi) on freeways.

BREAKING-IN - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

You need to break in new tires for approximately 480 km (300 mi). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

DRIVING ECONOMICALLY

The following helps to improve fuel consumption:

- Drive smoothly, accelerate gently and anticipate the road ahead to avoid heavy braking.
- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off. It is more efficient to combine errands into a single trip whenever possible.
- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.
- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.

Driving Hints

- Do not shift into neutral when you are braking or when your vehicle is slowing down.
- Shut all windows when driving at high speeds.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

DRIVING IN SPECIAL CONDITIONS

DRIVING THROUGH MUD AND WATER

Mud

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even all-wheel drive and four-wheel drive vehicles can lose traction in mud. If your vehicle slides, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle. After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess residue can cause an imbalance that could damage drive components.

Note: *If your vehicle gets stuck in mud, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*

Water

If you must drive through water approach it cautiously. See **Driving Through Shallow Water** (page 424).

DRIVING ON HILLY OR SLOPING TERRAIN

Although natural obstacles could make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should try to drive straight up or straight down.

Note: *Avoid turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possible vehicle roll over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you can use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.*

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power causes the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, and you could lose control of your vehicle. When descending a steep hill, do not descend the hill in neutral. Avoid sudden hard braking to keep the front wheels rolling and to maintain your vehicle's steering.

Note: *Your vehicle has an anti-lock braking system, apply the brake pedal steadily. Do not pump the brake pedal.*

DRIVING IN SAND

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid excessive wheel slip. Do not drive your vehicle in deep sand for an extended period of time. This could overheat the system. A message appears in the information display. See **All-Wheel Drive – Information Messages** (page 310).

Note: *If your vehicle gets stuck in sand, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*

Driving Hints

DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER - DIESEL

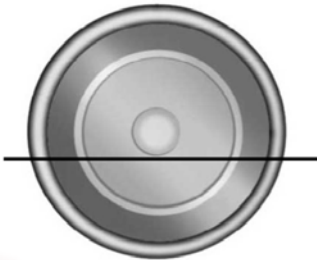


WARNING: Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

Note: *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the wheel hubs.



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

- Horn
- Exterior lights

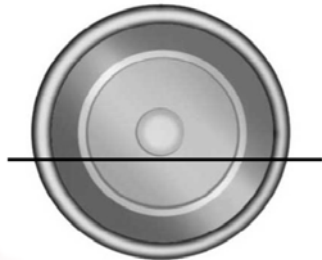
DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



WARNING: Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the wheel hubs.



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

- Horn
- Exterior lights

Driving Hints

ELECTRIC VEHICLE

MAXIMIZING YOUR DRIVING RANGE

Driving in Cold Weather

Keep your vehicle charged before heading out into cold weather.

Use the heated seats and steering wheel for comfort along with moderate cabin temperature and fan settings to reduce energy needed for climate control.

Preconditioning Your Vehicle

You can precondition your vehicle by using departure and comfort settings to warm or cool your cabin and the high voltage battery when your vehicle is plugged in. By using energy from your charging source prior to your departure, battery temperature can be managed for best driving performance and less energy will be needed for heating or cooling of the cabin at the start of your drive. This helps maximize your driving range.

Note: You can also access departure and comfort settings using the FordPass App.

Note: Lower cabin temperature settings on the climate control system results in better trip range.

Parking Your Vehicle

At temperatures just above the freezing point and lower, plug your vehicle in when not in use to maintain high voltage battery performance.

When possible park your vehicle under a covered area or in a garage. This will help to moderate temperatures which affect performance of the high voltage battery and require energy to heat or cool the cabin.

Driving Style

Range is reduced when driving aggressively or at consistently high speeds. Aggressive driving for extended periods could also result in reducing your battery's efficiency and lifespan.

FLOOR MATS



WARNING: Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.



WARNING: Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

Driving Hints



To install floor mats that have eyelets, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position. Repeat for all eyelets on the floor mat.

To remove the floor mats, reverse the installation procedure.

Note: *Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.*

Crash and Breakdown Information

SWITCHING THE HAZARD FLASHERS ON AND OFF



The hazard flasher button is on the instrument panel. Press the button to switch the hazard flashers on if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

When you switch the hazard flashers on, all front and rear direction indicators flash.

Note: *The hazard flashers operate when the ignition is in any position, or if the key is not in the ignition. The battery loses charge and could have insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*

Press the button again to switch them off.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS - DIESEL, PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.



WARNING: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.



WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



WARNING: If the engine is running while the hood is open, stay clear of moving engine components. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to push-start an automatic transmission vehicle. This could cause transmission damage.

Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle. This could damage your vehicle's electrical system.

JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

Note: *This procedure is only for the 12 volt battery.*

Note: *Your vehicle has a 12 volt battery that is under the driver seat. The 12 volt battery controls the switches and contacts that engage the high voltage battery. Do not jump start the high voltage battery using a standard 12 volt battery. Tow your vehicle to an authorized dealer if the high voltage battery does not accept a regular charge.*

Crash and Breakdown Information

Note: Do not attempt to push start your vehicle. You could cause transmission damage.

Note: Do not disconnect the 12 volt battery from your vehicle electrical system.

PREPARING THE VEHICLE

Use only a 12 volt supply to start your vehicle.

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE



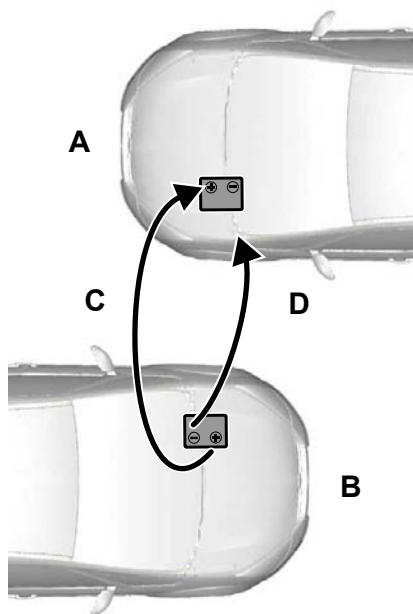
WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

Note: Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle electrical system.

Connecting the Jumper Cables



- A Vehicle with the discharged battery.
- B Vehicle with the booster battery.
- C Positive jumper cable.
- D Negative jumper cable.

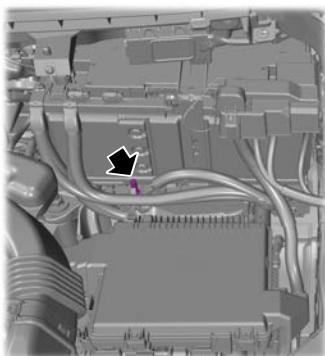
1. Switch the ignition off and any electrical equipment.
2. Lift up the battery positive connection point cover. For item location, refer to the appropriate under hood overview. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 452).

Crash and Breakdown Information



WARNING: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

3. Connect one end of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery and the other end to the positive terminal of the booster battery.



WARNING: Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

4. Connect one end of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery or to a suitable ground point and the other end to the ground point on your vehicle.

Starting the Engine

1. Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery and keep the engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

3. When the engine starts, run the engines for three minutes before you disconnect the jumper cables.

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

Note: Do not switch the headlamps on before you disconnect the jumper cables. The peak voltage could cause the bulbs to fail.

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system helps draw attention to your vehicle in the event of a serious impact.

HOW DOES THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to turn the hazard flashers on, turn the courtesy lamps on, intermittently sound the horn and unlock all doors in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag or the seatbelt pretensioners.

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, the horn does not sound in the event of a serious impact.

SWITCHING THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM OFF

Press the hazard flasher switch, the unlock button on the remote control, the panic button on the remote control or cycle the ignition to switch the system off.

Note: The alert turns off when the vehicle battery runs out of charge.

Crash and Breakdown Information

POST-COLLISION BRAKING

How Does Post-Collision Braking Work

In the event of a moderate to severe crash, the braking system reduces the vehicle's speed to prevent or reduce the impact of a potential secondary crash.

Post-Collision Braking Limitations

Post-collision braking does not activate if any of the following occur:

- The anti-lock braking system is damaged during the collision.
- Electronic stability control is disabled.

Overriding Post-Collision Braking

You can override post-collision braking by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.

Post-Collision Braking Indicators



It flashes when a post-collision braking event is occurring.

AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

The automatic crash shutoff is designed to stop the fuel going to the engine in the event of a moderate or severe crash.

Note: *Not every impact causes a shutoff.*

AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

RE-ENABLING YOUR VEHICLE

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Attempt to start your vehicle.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Attempt to start your vehicle.

Note: *If your vehicle does not start after the third attempt, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

RECOVERY TOWING

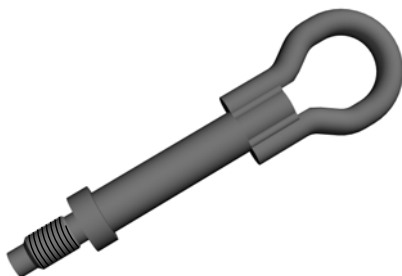
ACCESSING THE FRONT TOWING POINT



E146426

Crash and Breakdown Information

LOCATING THE TOWING EYE



The towing eye could be found:

- In the left-hand d-pillar, inside the tire repair kit box.
- In the left-hand d-pillar, mounted on the vehicle jack.

Note: You must carry the towing eye in your vehicle at all times.



E146426

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Install the towing eye.

Note: It has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it.

INSTALLING THE TOWING EYE



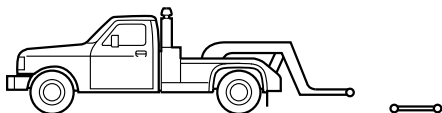
WARNING: Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed.

Crash and Breakdown Information

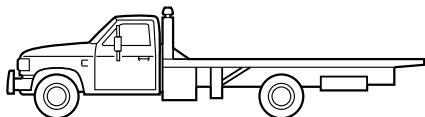
TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



All-wheel or four-wheel drive vehicles require that all wheels be off the ground using a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission and drive system.

Note: You need to switch on the ignition to unlock the steering.

Note: Make sure you check the steering column before towing. It could lock if the battery is dead.



FAIL-SAFE COOLING - 2.0L ECOBLUE

WHAT IS FAIL-SAFE COOLING

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs due to overheating.

The fail-safe distance depends on outside temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

HOW DOES FAIL-SAFE COOLING WORK

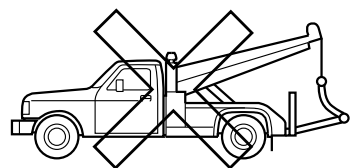
If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine.



If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or your roadside assistance service provider.

Your manufacturer produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Vehicle damage could occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.

Front-wheel and rear-wheel drive vehicles must have their designated drive wheels off the ground regardless of towing direction. Use tow dollies to prevent damage to the transmission.

Crash and Breakdown Information

Note: Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

DRIVING WHEN FAIL-SAFE MODE IS ACTIVATED



WARNING: Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait for a short period of time for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Note: Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.

FAIL-SAFE COOLING INDICATORS



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the instrument cluster display.

Towing Your Vehicle - Diesel, Manual Transmission

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You must switch your vehicle on when being towed. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle. Failure to deactivate the steering wheel lock could result in a crash.



WARNING: The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.



WARNING: Too much tension in the tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

- Maximum speed is 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Maximum distance is 80 km (50 mi).

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle.

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example, right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

Note: Make sure the transmission is in neutral when towing your vehicle.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle backward.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle if the ambient temperature is below 0°C (32°F).

EMERGENCY TOWING

If your vehicle is disabled without access to wheel dollies, a car-hauling trailer, or a flatbed transport vehicle it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground. You may do this under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so that it is towed in a forward direction.
- The transmission selector lever is placed in neutral position.

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

Towing Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

Use the following guidelines when towing your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Note: Make sure you properly secure your vehicle to the tow vehicle.

Note: If you are unsure of the vehicle's configuration, contact an authorized dealer.

EMERGENCY TOWING - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

If your vehicle becomes inoperable without access to wheel dollies or a vehicle transport trailer, it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground, regardless of the drivetrain, under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- You switch **Neutral Tow** on.
- Maximum speed is 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Maximum distance is 80 km (50 mi).

Switching Neutral Tow On

1. Properly secure your vehicle to the tow vehicle.
2. Switch your vehicle on in accessory mode. See **Starting and Powering Off** (page 226).
3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
5. Select **Settings**.
6. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
7. Select **Neutral Tow**.
8. Follow the instructions on the instrument cluster display.

9. Press and hold the brake pedal.

10. Shift into neutral (N).

Note: A confirmation message appears in the instrument cluster display.

11. Release the parking brake.

12. Switch your vehicle off.

Switching Neutral Tow Off

1. Switch your vehicle on.

2. Press and hold the brake pedal.

3. Shift into park (P).

Note: A confirmation message appears in the instrument cluster display and the park (P) position illuminates on the transmission selector.

EMERGENCY TOWING - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

If your vehicle becomes inoperable without access to wheel dollies or a vehicle transport trailer, it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain and transmission configuration, under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- You switch **Neutral Tow** on.
- You release the parking brake.
- Maximum speed is 55 km/h (35 mph).
- Maximum distance is 80 km (50 mi).

Switching Neutral Tow On

1. Switch your vehicle on in accessory mode.
2. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
3. Select **Settings**.

Towing Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

4. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
5. Select **Neutral Tow**.
6. Follow the instructions on the instrument cluster display.
7. Fully press the brake pedal.
8. Shift into neutral (N).
9. Switch your vehicle off.

Note: Failure to follow these instructions could result in damage to the transmission.

Note: Switching neutral tow on requires battery power.

Note: Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle.

Switching Neutral Tow Off

1. Switch your vehicle on in accessory mode.
2. Fully press the brake pedal.
3. Shift into park (P).

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Neutral tow engaged Turn ignition off for towing	Reminder to switch off the ignition when in neutral tow.
Neutral tow engaged Depress brake and select Park to exit Neutral tow	Displays when neutral tow is active and you want to exit neutral tow.
Neutral tow Remove park brake for towing	Reminder to remove park brake when in neutral tow.
Neutral tow disengaged	Displays when the neutral tow is off.
Neutral tow enabled Leave transmission in neutral	Displays when neutral tow is on.

Emergency Equipment

STORING A FIRST AID KIT

You can store a first aid kit in the passenger side front door storage.

STORING A WARNING TRIANGLE

You can store a warning triangle in the driver side front door storage.

Fuses

FUSE PRECAUTIONS



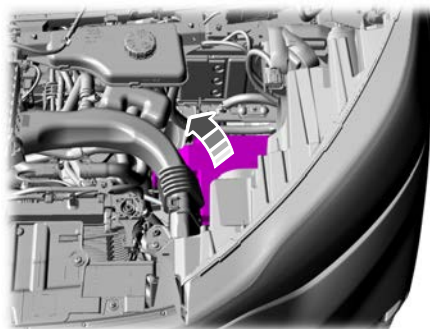
WARNING: Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



WARNING: To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

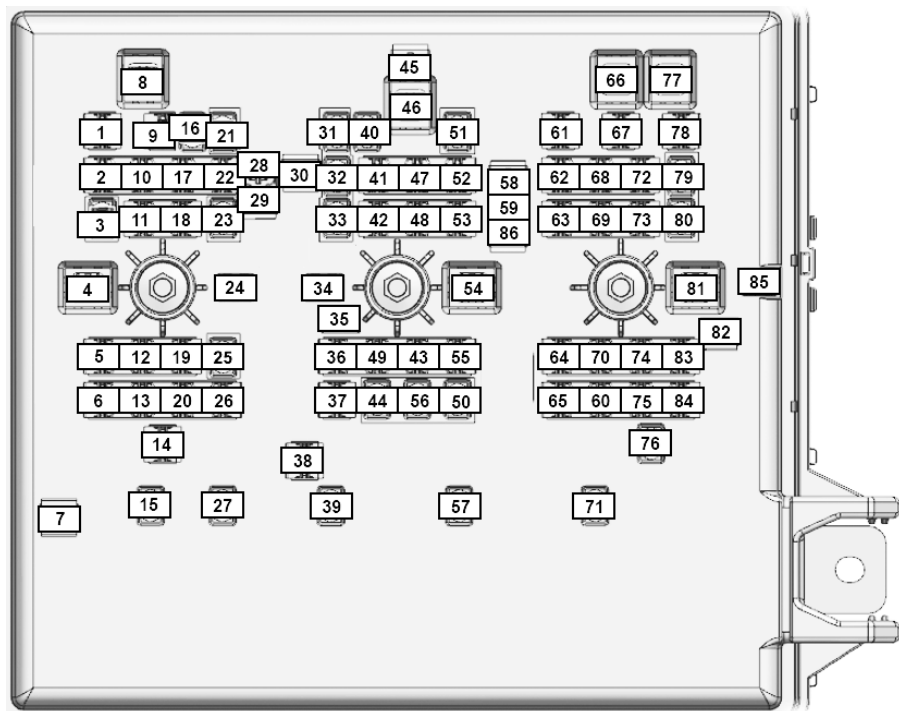
UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

ACCESSING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



Fuses

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	15 A	Rear washer motor.
2	15 A	Left-hand side rear heated seat.
3	40 A	Left-hand side front window defrost.
4	40 A	Auxiliary blower.
5	-	Not used.

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
6	-	Not used.
7	15 A	Power folding mirrors.
8	40 A	Blower motor.
9	5 A	Rain sensor.
10	15 A	Right-hand side rear heated seat.
11	5 A	Tachograph.
12	5 A	USB smart charger 3.
13	-	Not used.
14	-	Not used.
15	40 A	Positive temperature coefficient heater bank 3.
16	30 A	Upfitter 1.
17	7.5 A	Tachograph.
18	-	Not used.
19	5 A	USB smart charger 1.
20	-	Not used.
21	20 A	Rear wiper.
22	10 A	Power steering module.
23	20 A	Right-hand heated backlight.
24	60 A	ABS valve/Electric brake booster valve.
25	20 A	Power point 1 power outlet/Cigar lighter.
26	5 A	USB smart charger 2.
27	40 A	Right-hand front window defrost.
28	5 A	Interior power distribution box run/start relay coil.
29	10 A	Heated mirror.
30	5 A	All-wheel drive control module.
31	25 A	Front wiper motor.
32	15 A	Transaxle transmission oil pump.

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
33	30 A	Left-hand heated backlight/Lift gate.
34	60 A	ABS control module/Electric brake booster pump.
35	5 A	USB smart charger 6.
36	5 A	USB smart charger 5.
37	5 A	USB smart charger 4.
38	10 A	Anti-theft horn/Battery upbacked sound alarm.
39	40 A	Positive temperature coefficient heater bank 2.
40	30 A	Upfitter 4.
41	10 A	Left-hand/Right-hand headlamp leveling motors.
42	10 A	Generator/Battery charger control module.
43	5 A	Transmission control module/Fuel door motor.
44	20 A	Power point 2. rear outlet
45	-	Not used.
46	-	Not used.
47	10 A	ABS control module.
48	15 A	Heated steering wheel/Mirror/Seering control module.
49	-	Not used.
50	40 A	Fuel filter heater.
51	40 A	Electronic limited slip differential module.
52	10 A	Inverter slip control module/Hybrid powertrain control module/Transaxle.
53	10 A	Body security module/Cruise control module/Heads-up display/Camera park assist.
54	60 A	DC/AC 400W inverter.
55	20 A	Traffic horn.
56	30 A	Fuel pump/Fuel pump control module.
57	40 A	Positive temperature coefficient heater bank 1.

Fuses

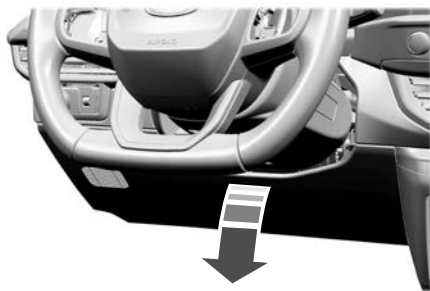
Item	Rating	Protected Component
58	-	Not used.
59	-	Not used.
60	-	Not used.
61	15 A	Reductant pressure line.
62	10 A	Powertrain control module.
63	5 A	Glow dosing module Transmission/Transaxle.
64	25 A	Power transfer unit pump (All-wheel drive).
65	-	Not used.
66	30 A	Upfitter 2.
67	-	Not used.
68	15 A	Injector pump relay.
69	-	Not used.
70	20 A	Power supply voltage 2.
71	30 A	Starter motor.
72	15 A	Reductant tank heater.
73	5 A	Keep-alive power.
74	15 A	Power supply voltage 1.
75	15 A	Power supply voltage 5.
76	-	Not used.
77	-	Not used.
78	-	Not used.
79	-	Not used.
80	-	Not used.
81	30 A	Upfitter 3.
82	-	Not used.
83	20 A	Power supply voltage 5.

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
84	15 A	Power supply voltage 5.
85	-	Not used.
86	-	Not used.

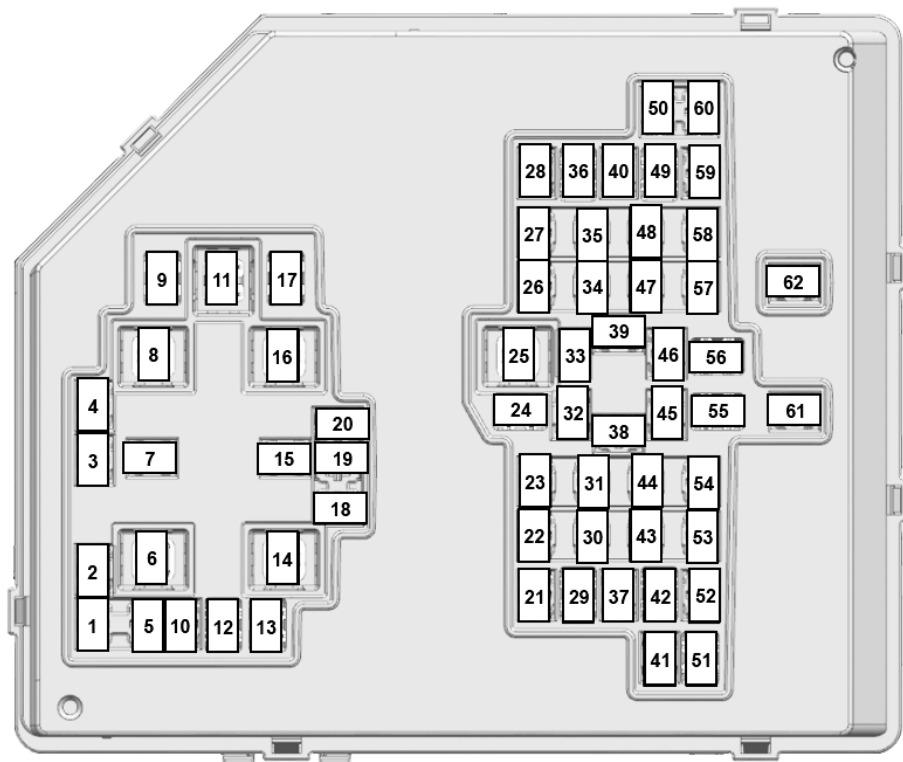
INTERIOR FUSE BOX

ACCESSING THE INTERIOR FUSE BOX



Fuses

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE INTERIOR FUSE BOX



Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	5 A	Left-hand side power locked door control module. Right-hand side power locked door control module.
2	5 A	Intrusion/Inclination/Heads-up display/Rear climate control module.
3	5 A	Near field control module/Headlamp switch.
4	5 A	Ignition switch.

Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
		Keyless start/stop switch.
5	5 A	Cargo/Cabin camera.
6	40 A	Body control module 1.
7	-	Not used.
8	40 A	Body control module 2.
9	-	Not used.
10	20 A	Advanced driver assistance system module.
11	40 A	Trailer tow control module.
12	30 A	Right-hand side power sliding door 2.
13	30 A	Left-hand side power sliding door 2.
14	40 A	Body control module 3.
15	30 A	Moonroof/Sunroof module.
16	40 A	Body control module 4.
17	-	Not used.
18	7.5 A	Power mirror switch/Wireless charger control module.
19	7.5 A	Enhanced central gateway control module.
20	7.5 A	Steering wheel column control module/Cluster.
21	10 A	Switched ground.
22	15 A	Electric steering column lock.
23	-	Not used.
24	40 A	Driver door control module.
25	40 A	Trailer tow battery charge.
26	10 A	Camper interface.
27	10 A	Upfitter interface control module.
28	15 A	Amplifier 1.
29	30 A	Right-hand side power sliding door.

Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
30	10 A	Wireless buckle monitoring.
31	15 A	Amplifier 2.
32	10 A	Brake on/off switch.
33	5 A	FHH Remote control.

HIGH CURRENT FUSE BOX

LOCATING THE HIGH CURRENT FUSE BOX

To locate the fuses in the high current fuse box, contact an authorized dealer.

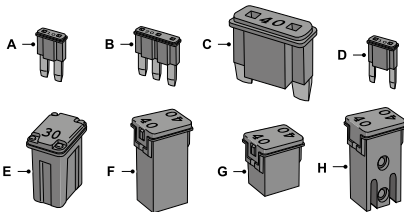
ACCESSING THE HIGH CURRENT FUSE BOX

To access the fuses in the high current fuse box, contact an authorized dealer.

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE HIGH CURRENT FUSE BOX

To identify the fuses in the high current fuse box, contact an authorized dealer.

IDENTIFYING FUSE TYPES



A	Micro 2.
B	Micro 3.

C	Maxi.
D	Mini.
E	M Case.
F	J Case.
G	J Case Low Profile.
H	Slotted M Case.

FUSES – TROUBLESHOOTING

FUSES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

When do I need to check a fuse?

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working.

When do I need to replace a fuse?

If a fuse has blown.

How do I identify a blown fuse?

You can identify a blown fuse by a broken wire within the fuse.

Maintenance

MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

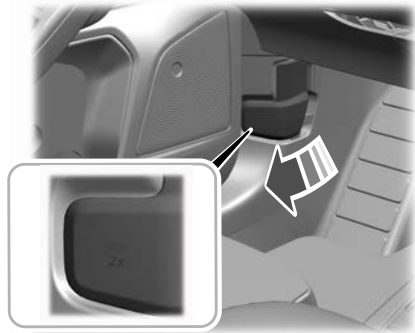
Use only recommended fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 532).

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD - LHD

Opening the Hood



E263274

1. Open the left-hand front door.
2. Fully pull the hood release lever and let it completely retract.

Note: *This action releases the hood latch.*

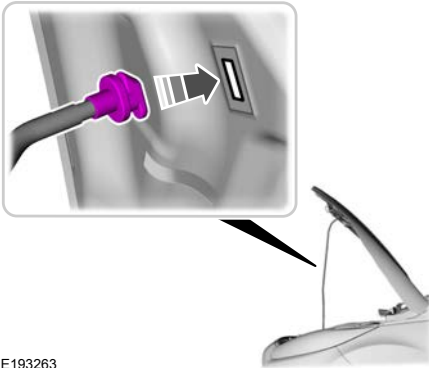
3. Fully pull the hood release lever for a second time.

Note: *This action fully releases the hood.*

4. Open the hood.

Note: *There is no secondary latch under the hood.*

Maintenance



E193263

5. Support the hood with the strut.

Closing the Hood

1. Remove the strut from the catch and secure it correctly in the clip.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 25–35 cm (10–14 in).

Note: Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.

Warning Lamps and Indicators



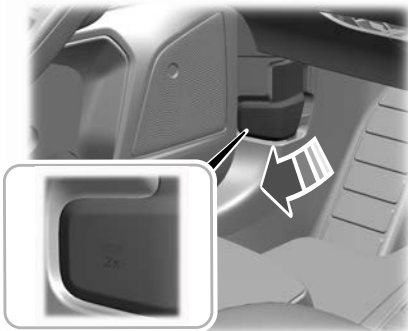
It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

Information Messages

Message	Details
Bonnet open	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and close the hood.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD - RHD

Opening the Hood



E263274

1. Open the left-hand front door.
2. Fully pull the hood release lever and let it completely retract.

Note: This action releases the hood latch.

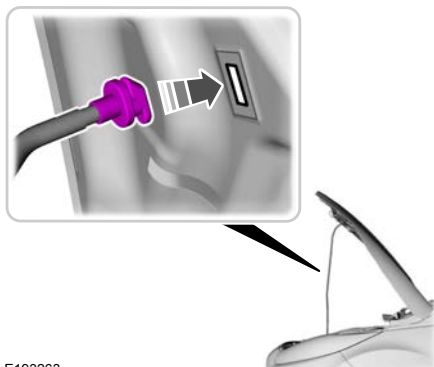
3. Fully pull the hood release lever for a second time.

Note: This action fully releases the hood.

4. Open the hood.

Note: There is no secondary latch under the hood.

Maintenance



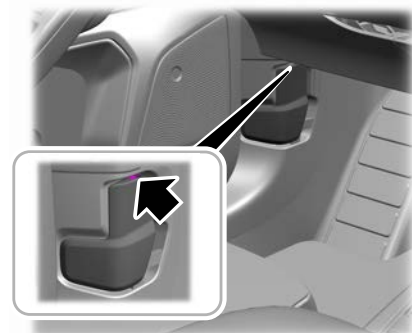
E193263

5. Support the hood with the strut.

Note: Hold the yellow section of the hood strut.

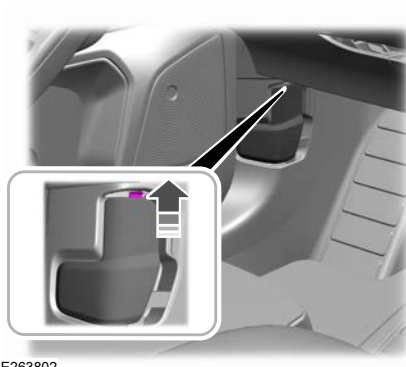
Opening the Hood if the Passenger Door cannot be Opened

1. Unlock the right-hand front door using the key and access the left-hand front footwell. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade** (page 75).



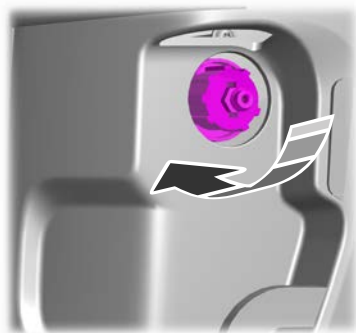
E263801

2. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown.



E263802

3. Gently pry the hood release lever securing clip upward.



E263803

4. Use a suitable tool, for example a hexagonal socket, and turn the hood release mechanism clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.
5. Let the hood release mechanism completely retract.

Note: This action releases the hood latch.

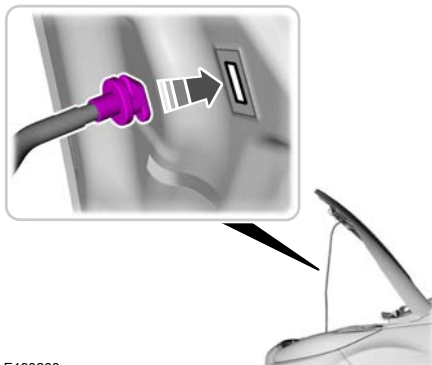
6. Turn the hood release mechanism clockwise until you feel a strong resistance for a second time.

Note: This action fully releases the hood.

Maintenance

7. Open the hood.

Note: There is no secondary latch under the hood.



E193263

8. Support the hood with the strut.

Note: Hold the yellow section of the hood strut.

9. Reinstall the hood release lever. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure the hood release lever securing clip is fully engaged.

Closing the Hood

1. Remove the strut from the catch and secure it correctly in the clip.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 25–35 cm (10–14 in).

Note: Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.

Warning Lamps and Indicators



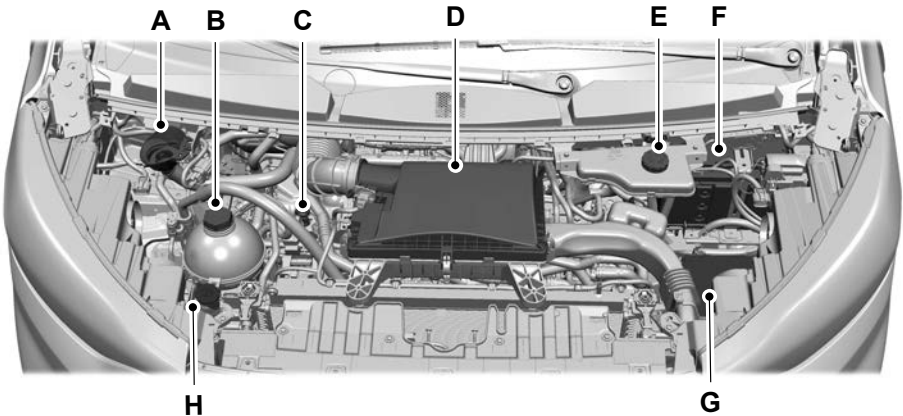
It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

Information Messages

Message	Details
Bonnet open	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and close the hood.

Maintenance

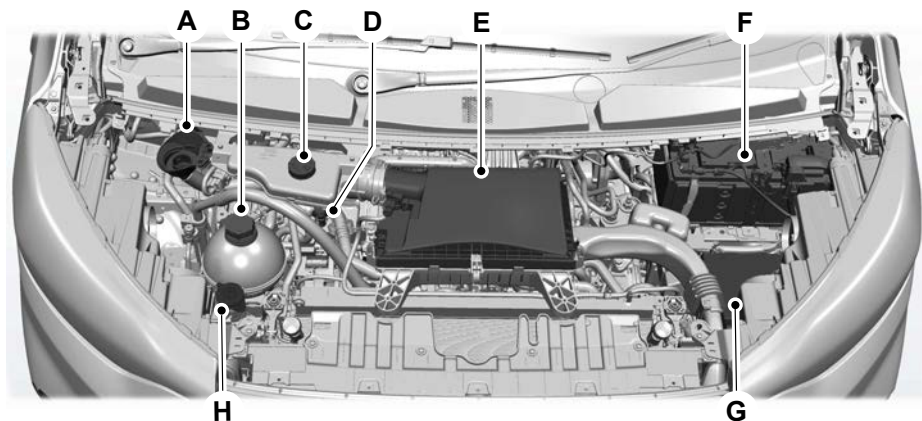
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - DIESEL, LHD



- A Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 459).
- B Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 461).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 458).
- D Air filter assembly.
- E Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 311).
- F Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 466).
- G Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 439).
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 106).

Maintenance

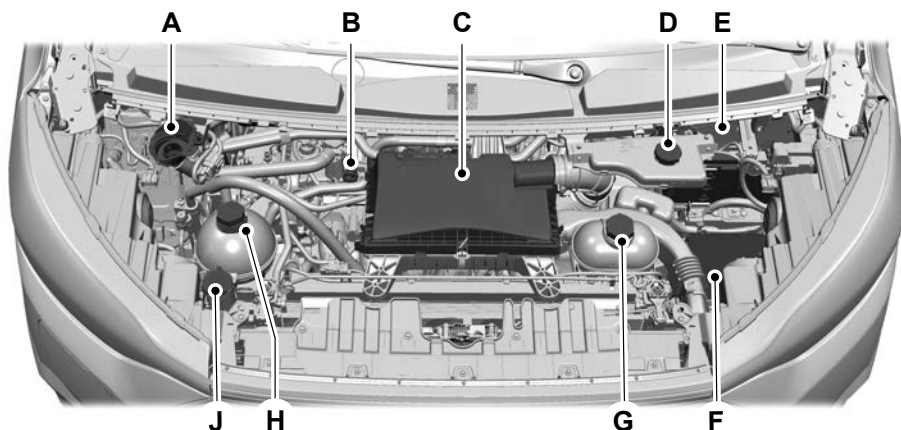
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - DIESEL, RHD



- A Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 459).
- B Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 461).
- C Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 311).
- D Engine oil dipstick. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 458).
- E Air filter assembly.
- F Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 466).
- G Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 439).
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 106).

Maintenance

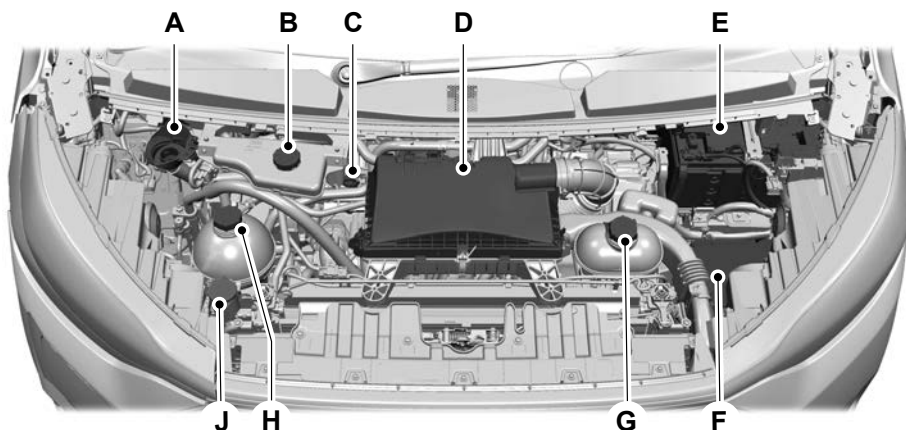
UNDERHOOD OVERVIEW - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV), LHD



- A Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 459).
- B Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 458).
- C Air filter assembly.
- D Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 311).
- E 12V Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 466).
- F Under hood fuse box. See **Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 439).
- G Secondary coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 461).
- H Primary coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 461).
- J Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 106).

Maintenance

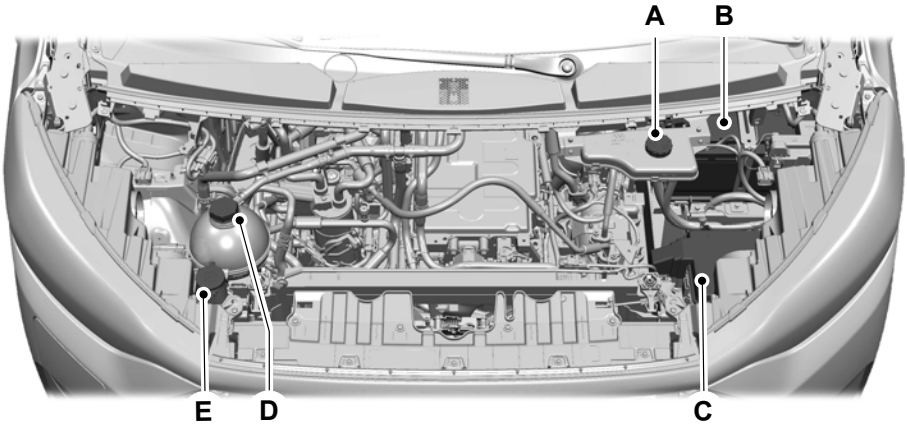
UNDERHOOD OVERVIEW - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV), RHD



- A Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 459).
- B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 311).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 458).
- D Air filter assembly.
- E 12V Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 466).
- F Under hood fuse box. See **Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 439).
- G Secondary coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 461).
- H Primary coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 461).
- J Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 106).

Maintenance

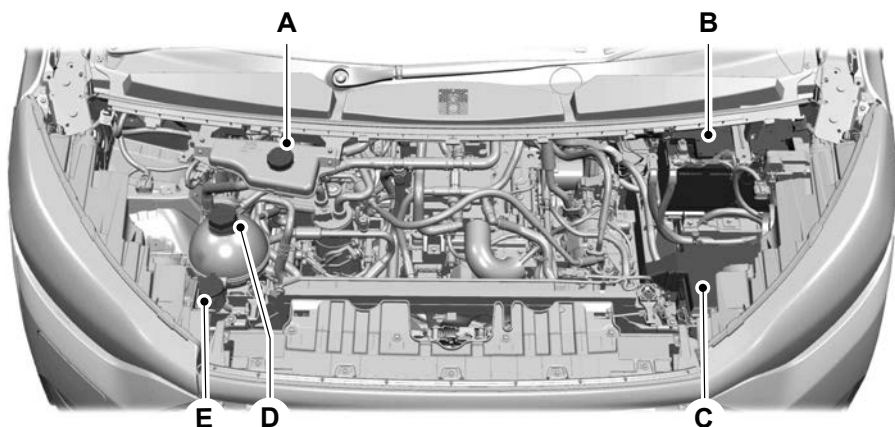
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE, LHD



- A Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 311).
- B 12V Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 466).
- C Under hood fuse box. See **Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 439).
- D High temperature coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 461).
- E Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 106).

Maintenance

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE, RHD

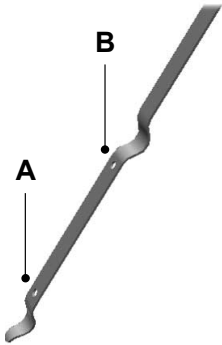


- A Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 311).
- B 12V Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 466).
- C Under hood fuse box. See **Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 439).
- D High temperature coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 461).
- E Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 106).

Maintenance

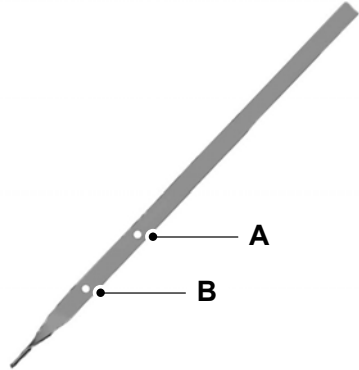
ENGINE OIL - DIESEL, PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW - DIESEL



- A Minimum.
B Maximum.

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



- A Maximum.
B Minimum.

CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off after warm up and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.

Note: *Checking the oil level too soon could result in an inaccurate reading.*

3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth.
4. Reinstall the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
5. Remove the dipstick again to check the oil level.

Note: *Read both sides of the dipstick and use the lowest oil level as the correct reading.*

Maintenance

Note: If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.

6. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.
7. Reinstall the dipstick. Make sure it is fully seated.

Note: The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km (3,000 mi).

Note: Increases in oil level can occur from frequent short trips that do not allow the engine to get to operating temperature, as well as frequent idling or low speed driving for long periods of time.

Note: If oil levels are continuously noted above the maximum mark, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

ADDING ENGINE OIL



WARNING: Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.



WARNING: Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 532).
4. Reinstall the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

Note: Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.

RESETTING THE INTELLIGENT OIL LIFE MONITOR - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Only reset the oil life monitoring system after changing the engine oil and oil filter.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Vehicle Maintenance**.
3. Select **Oil Life**.
4. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

Maintenance

ENGINE OIL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Change engine oil soon	Displays when the engine oil life is becoming depleted. Have the engine oil changed as soon as possible.
Oil change required	Displays when the engine oil life is depleted. Have the engine oil changed as soon as possible.
Engine oil level low Add oil	Displays when the engine oil level is too low. Add engine oil as soon as possible. See Adding Engine Oil (page 459).

DRAINING THE FUEL FILTER WATER TRAP - DIESEL



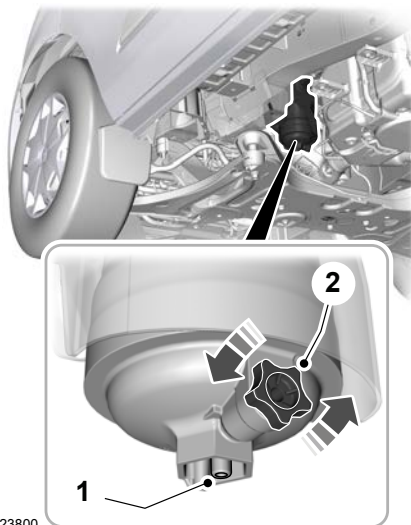
WARNING: Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.



You should drain water from the fuel filter water trap whenever the warning light illuminates or a message appears in the information display.

This occurs when approximately 200 ml (7 fl oz) of water accumulates in the fuel filter water trap. If you ignore the warning lamp, water may pass through to the system and may cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap



E223800

1. Attach a tube to the drain plug and place the end of the tube into a suitable container.

Maintenance

2. Turn the drain plug counterclockwise until it stops. Do not use any tools to loosen the drain plug. Drain the fuel filter water trap into an appropriate container. Do not re-use the fuel drained from the fuel filter water trap.
3. Tighten the drain plug, turn it clockwise until it stops and you feel a strong resistance. Do not use any tools to tighten the drain plug.
4. Switch the ignition on for 30 seconds and then switch the ignition off. Repeat this operation six times in a row to purge any trapped air from the fuel system.

ENGINE COOLING FAN - DIESEL



WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off. This could happen in all ambient temperatures and independent of the engine coolant temperature, for example short journeys or low coolant temperature. See **What Is the Diesel Particulate Filter** (page 249).

COOLANT

COOLANT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.



WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.

CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Maintenance



WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

Note: Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.

Note: Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark. This is normal.

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -34°C (-29°F) and -37°C (-35°F). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

ADDING COOLANT



WARNING: Do not add coolant when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.



WARNING: Do not dispose of coolant in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

Note: Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with deionised or distilled water. Using water that has not been deionised may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.

Maintenance

Note: Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to our specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification.
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.
5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1 L (1.1 qt) of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.

- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

CHANGING THE COOLANT

For coolant change, see your authorized dealer.

Changing the coolant is necessary at specific mileage intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

MANAGING THE COOLANT TEMPERATURE

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.

Maintenance



WARNING: If you continue to drive your vehicle when the engine is overheating, the engine could stop without warning. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and outside temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle. You can continue to drive. See **Fail-Safe Cooling** (page 432).

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

COOLANT – WARNING LAMPS



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

COOLANT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Engine coolant overtemperature	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See Checking the Coolant Level (page 461).
Stop safely now	

Maintenance

12V BATTERY

12V BATTERY PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



WARNING: When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



WARNING: Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling.**



WARNING: This vehicle may have more than one battery. Removing the battery cables from only one battery does not disconnect your vehicle electrical system. Make sure you disconnect the battery cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.



WARNING: For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

WHAT IS THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

The battery management system monitors battery conditions and takes actions to extend battery life.

HOW DOES THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM WORK

If excessive battery drain is detected, the system temporarily disables some electrical systems to protect the battery.

Systems included are:

- Heated rear window.
- Heated seats.
- Climate control.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Audio unit.
- Navigation system.

A message could appear in the information display to alert you that battery protection actions are active. This message is only for notification that an action is taking place, and not intended to indicate an electrical problem or that the battery requires replacement.

Maintenance

BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

After battery replacement, or in some cases after charging the battery with an external charger, the battery management system requires eight hours of vehicle sleep time to relearn the battery state of charge. During this time, your vehicle must remain fully locked with the ignition switched off.

Note: *Prior to relearning the battery state of charge, the battery management system could temporarily disable some electrical systems.*

Electrical Accessory Installation

To make sure the battery management system works correctly, do not connect an electrical device ground connection directly to the battery negative post. This can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *If you add electrical accessories or components to the vehicle, it could adversely affect battery performance and durability. This could also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.*

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

If the 12 volt battery needs servicing, see your authorized dealer.

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE 12V BATTERY



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

CHARGING THE 12V BATTERY - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE/ PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Your vehicle has a high voltage to low voltage energy transfer feature that keeps the 12-volt battery charged by the high voltage battery. If the 12-volt battery level is low, the high voltage battery transfers energy to the 12-volt battery when the vehicle is off.

12-volt battery depletion can still occur if the high voltage battery state of charge is low. See **Preserving Your High Voltage Battery** (page 264).

Always take care not to deep discharge the 12-volt battery as it may cause premature wear.

12V BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING

12V BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a charging system error. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have your vehicle immediately checked.

Maintenance

12V BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Check Charging system	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Charging system Service soon	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Charging system Service now	The charging system needs servicing. Have your vehicle immediately checked.
Battery state of charge low	The battery management system determines that the 12V battery is at a low state of charge. Start the engine to charge the battery or charge the battery using an aftermarket battery charger. Always use the vehicle ground point when connecting the negative cable of the external battery charger. See Jump Starting the Vehicle (page 428). This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered. Do not switch on the ignition when a battery charger is in use to charge the battery.
Turn power off to save battery	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message will clear once the vehicle has been started and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads will allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.
Electrical power saver active Some features turned off See manual	Displayed when the battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Various vehicle features will be disabled to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features will operate again as normal.

Maintenance

12V BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Message	Action
12V battery malfunction Service soon	Your vehicle has a 12 volt battery problem. We recommend having the battery system checked by an authorized EV dealer.
Electric range reduced due to park/hazard lamps on while vehicle off	The electric vehicle range is reduced due to the park and/or hazard lamps on while your vehicle was off.
Electrical system drain Service required	Your vehicle has an electrical drain within the vehicle. Please check for any after-market devices that could be draining the battery. If none are found, please have your vehicle serviced by an authorized EV dealer.

EXTERIOR BULBS

EXTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and will provide quality bulb illumination time.

Lamp	Specification	Power (watt)
Headlamp high beam. ¹	H15	55/15
Headlamp high beam. ²	LED.	-
Headlamp low beam.	LED.	-
Daytime running lamps. ¹	H15	55/15
Daytime running lamps. ²	LED.	-
Front turn signal lamp. ¹	PY21W	21
Front turn signal lamp. ²	LED.	-

Maintenance

Lamp	Specification	Power (watt)
Cornering lamp.	LED.	-
Mirror turn signal lamp. ¹	W16W	16
Mirror turn signal lamp. ²	WY5W	5
Stoplamp. ¹	P21W	21
Stoplamp. ²	LED.	-
Rear fog lamp. ¹	P21/4W	21/4
Rear fog lamp. ²	LED.	-
Rear turn signal lamp. ¹	P21W	21
Rear turn signal lamp. ²	LED.	-
Tail lamp. ¹	P21/4W	21/4
Tail lamp. ²	LED.	-
Reversing lamp.	P21W	21
High mounted stoplamp.	LED.	-
License plate lamp.	W5W	5

¹ Low series.

² Mid- and High series.

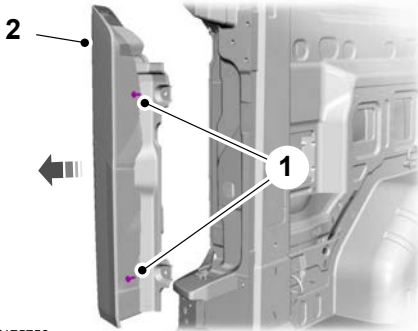
Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Maintenance

REMOVING A REAR LAMP ASSEMBLY



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



E175758

1. Remove the screws.
2. Remove the lamp.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A REAR FOG LAMP BULB



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

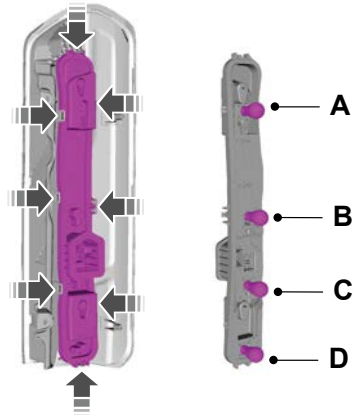


WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 468).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 470).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



- A Tail lamp and stoplamp.
- B Rear turn signal lamp.
- C Reversing lamp.
- D Rear fog lamp.

1. Unclip the bulb holder.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Maintenance

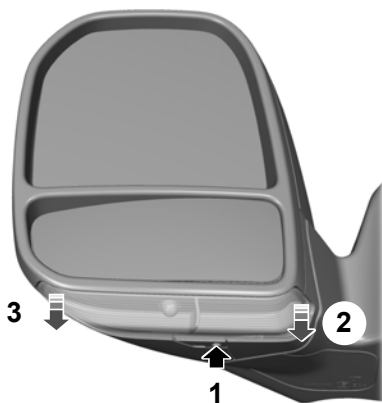
CHANGING A MIRROR TURN SIGNAL LAMP BULB

WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

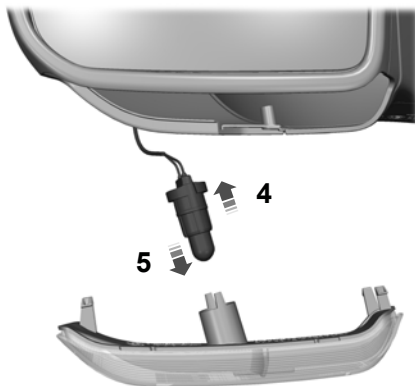
WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 468).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



1. Remove the screw from the bottom of the mirror.
2. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully lift the edge of the lamp.
3. Carefully lift the opposite edge of the lamp to fully remove it.



4. Remove the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.
5. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
6. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING AN ENTRY LAMP BULB

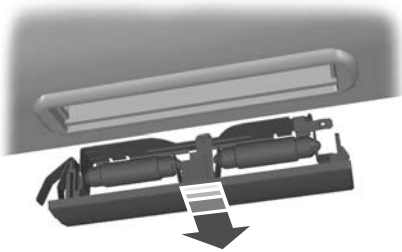
WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

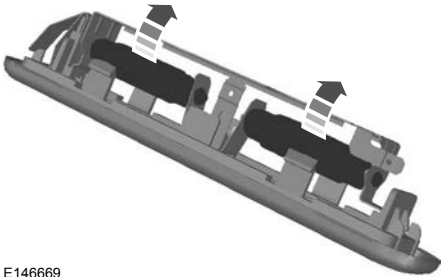
Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 468).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Maintenance



E154369



E146669

1. Remove the lamp.
2. Remove the bulbs.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A REAR LAMP BULB



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the Ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

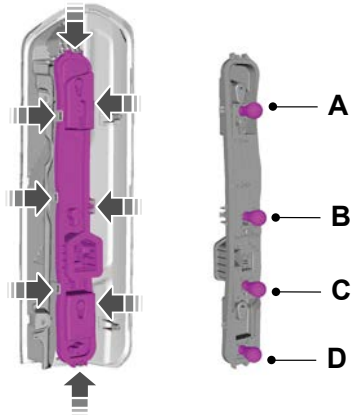


WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 468).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 470).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



- A Stoplamp.
- B Rear turn signal lamp.
- C Reversing lamp.
- D Tail lamp and rear fog lamp.

1. Unclip the bulb holder.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Maintenance

CHANGING A STOPLAMP BULB



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

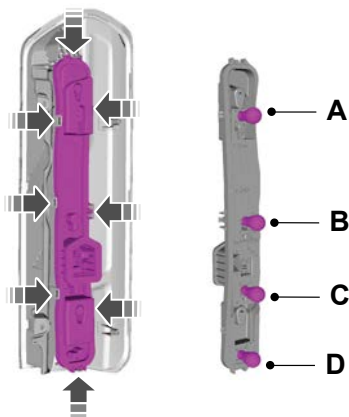


WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 468).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 470).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



- A Stoplamp.
- B Rear turn signal lamp.

- C Reversing lamp.
- D Tail lamp and rear fog lamp.

1. Unclip the bulb holder.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A REAR TURN SIGNAL LAMP BULB



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



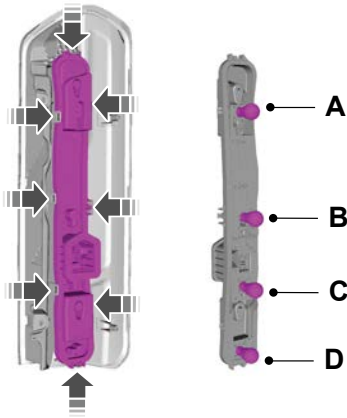
WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 468).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 470).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Maintenance



- A Stoplamp.
- B Rear turn signal lamp.
- C Reversing lamp.
- D Tail lamp and rear fog lamp.

1. Unclip the bulb holder.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A REVERSING LAMP BULB



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



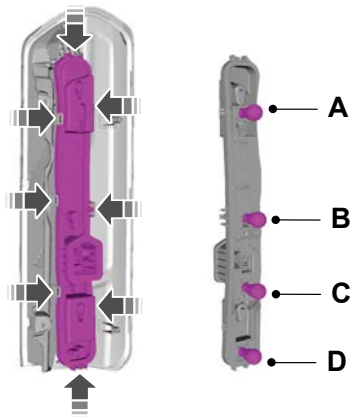
WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 468).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 470).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Low Series Reversing Lamp

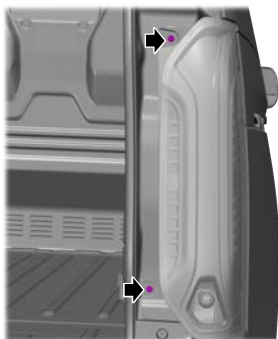


- A Stoplamp.
- B Rear turn signal lamp.
- C Reversing lamp.
- D Tail lamp and rear fog lamp.

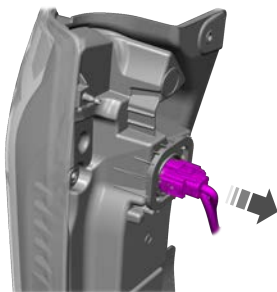
1. Unclip the bulb holder.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Maintenance

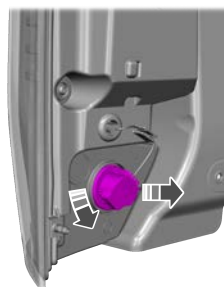
High Series Reversing Lamp



1. Remove the screws that secure the lamp assembly.
2. Remove the lamp.



3. Disconnect the electrical connector.



4. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
5. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
6. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A LICENSE PLATE LAMP BULB

WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

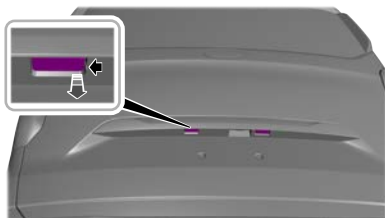
WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 468).

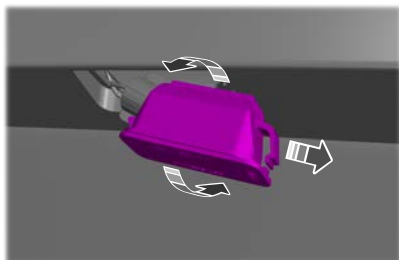
Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Maintenance

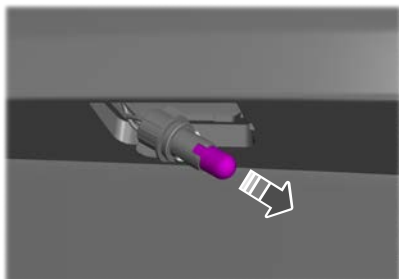
Liftgate Variant



1. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully lever the license plate lamp.
2. Carefully pull the lamp housing to fully remove it from the liftgate panel.

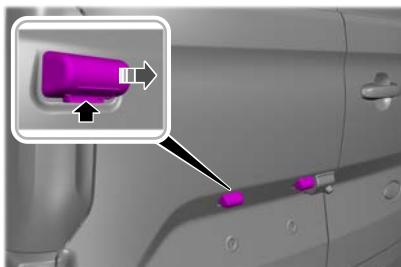


3. Rotate the lamp housing counterclockwise to detach it from the bulb holder.

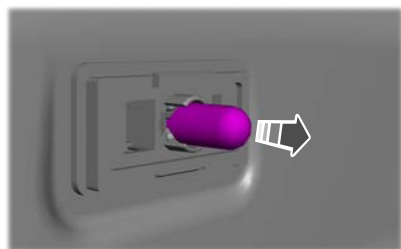


4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Rear Cargo Door Variant



1. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully lever and remove the license plate lamp housing.



2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

FUEL FILTER SERVICE INDICATOR CHECK - DIESEL



If the warning lamp illuminates when the engine is running this indicates there is excess water in the fuel filter.

This occurs when approximately 200 ml (7 fl oz) of water accumulates in the fuel filter water trap. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Alternatively you can drain the fuel filter water trap. See **Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap** (page 460).

Vehicle Care

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR PRECAUTIONS - DIESEL, PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Immediately remove fuel spillages, additive residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time. Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR PRECAUTIONS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Immediately remove additive residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may damage your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time.

Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

CLEANING HEADLAMPS AND REAR LAMPS

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.

Do not scrape the lamps.

Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

CLEANING WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.

Note: When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.

- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

Note: Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: We recommend cleaning the power sliding rear window at regular intervals to avoid dust and debris accumulation to deliver appropriate function.

CLEANING CHROME, ALUMINIUM OR STAINLESS STEEL

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.

Note: For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Note: Rinse the area well after cleaning.

Note: Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.

Note: Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.

CLEANING WHEELS

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels weekly. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.

Vehicle Care

2. Rinse well after cleaning.

Note: Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.

If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before parking your vehicle. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Do not clean the wheels when they are hot.

Note: Some car washes could damage wheel rims and covers.

Note: Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.

CLEANING THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT - DIESEL

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove debris from the screen area below the windshield.

Note: If you are not familiar with the parts around the engine do not wash the engine compartment. Avoid frequent engine washes.

When washing the engine compartment:

- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage.

Note: If your vehicle has an engine cover remove the cover before application of shampoo and degreaser.

- Spray an approved engine shampoo and degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and rinse with water.

Note: Follow the manufacturer's instructions for using engine shampoo and degreaser.

CLEANING STRIPES OR GRAPHICS

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a minimum of 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle 30 cm (12 in) and at a 90° angle to your vehicle.
- Do not use water pressure higher than 6,895 kPa (1,000 psi).
- Do not use water hotter than 23°C (73°F).

Note: Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away.

CLEANING CAMERA LENSES AND SENSORS

We recommend that you only use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.

Note: Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.

CLEANING THE UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Vehicle Care

Rear suspension components may require regular cleaning with a power washer or a thorough rinse with a strong stream of water if the vehicle is operated in dusty or muddy environments. Rear leaf springs or other suspension components may emit squeaking or popping noises while operating the vehicle if particles, such as dirt, rocks, or other debris, are present in the components.

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL



WARNING: Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Note: *Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.*

CLEANING PLASTIC

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING DISPLAYS AND SCREENS

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.

If dirt or fingerprints are still on the screen, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth and try to clean it again.

Note: *Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.*

Note: *Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.*

CLEANING FABRIC



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean fabric in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

Vehicle Care

CLEANING LEATHER



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean the leather surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. Make sure the leather is dry, then apply a small amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth.
4. Rub the conditioner into the leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry, then repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe it off with a dry, clean cloth.
5. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

CLEANING VINYL



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean vinyl surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

CLEANING CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

Vehicle Care

CLEANING SEATBELTS



WARNING: Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer to identify your vehicle color code. Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Read the instructions before using cleaning products.

WAXING YOUR VEHICLE

Wax the high-gloss painted surface of your prewashed vehicle once or twice a year.

We recommend that you only use an approved quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight.

Note: Avoid waxing unpainted or low-gloss black colored parts, they discolor over time.

Storing Your Vehicle

PREPARING YOUR VEHICLE FOR STORAGE - DIESEL, PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, the following maintenance recommendations ensure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

Under various conditions, long-term storage could lead to degraded engine performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve your vehicle.

General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and weather damage.
- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 7.5 m (25 ft) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.
- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

Engine

- Change the engine oil and filter prior to storage because used engine oil contains contaminants which could cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days for a minimum of 15 minutes. Run at fast idle with the climate controls set to defrost until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.

Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housings and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

Storing Your Vehicle

Hybrid Battery Systems

We recommend the following actions for your vehicle:

- When storing your vehicle for greater than 30 days the state of charge should be approximately 50%. Additionally we recommend disconnecting the 12V battery which reduces system loads on the HV battery.

12 Volt Battery

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.

Note: *It is necessary to reset memory features if you disconnect the battery cables.*

Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

Brakes

Make sure the brakes and parking brake release fully.

Note: *If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after washing your vehicle or cleaning the wheels, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so to reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

PREPARING YOUR VEHICLE FOR STORAGE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, read the following maintenance recommendations to make sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

We engineer and test all vehicles and their components for reliable, regular driving. Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve vehicle components.

General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

Cooling system

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing your vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm that there are no cooling system leaks and that fluid is at the recommended level.

Storing Your Vehicle

Battery Systems

We recommend the following actions for your vehicle:

- When storing your vehicle for greater than 30 days the state of charge should be approximately 50%. Additionally, we recommend disconnecting the 12v battery which will reduce system loads on the HV battery.

Note: *Make sure the vehicle has been switched off and doors closed for at least five minutes before disconnecting the 12 volt battery.*

12 Volt Battery

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.

Note: *It is necessary to reset memory features if you disconnect the battery cables.*

Brakes

- Make sure the brakes and parking brake release fully.

Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

Miscellaneous

- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 7.5 m (25 ft) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.

REMOVING YOUR VEHICLE FROM STORAGE - DIESEL, PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- We recommend that you change the engine oil before you use your vehicle again.
- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check the underhood for any foreign materials such as mice or squirrel nests.
- Check the exhaust for any foreign materials.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Corroded brake rotors could cause brake noise. Drive your vehicle and gently apply and release the brakes repeatedly over a 10-minute drive to reduce the corrosion from the brakes.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you remove the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

Storing Your Vehicle

REMOVING YOUR VEHICLE FROM STORAGE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Drive your vehicle 4.5 m (15 ft) back and forth to remove rust build-up.
- Check coolant levels to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you removed the 12 volt battery, clean the 12 volt battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

Wheel and Tire Information

USING SUMMER TIRES

The original equipment tires on your vehicle are designed to optimize its performance in dry or wet summer road conditions. They are not designed for winter use.

USING WINTER TIRES



We recommend that you use winter or all-season tires carrying this symbol when the temperature is 7°C (45°F) or lower, or in snow and ice conditions.

Inflate the winter tires to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressures table. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 492). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 490).

USING SNOW CHAINS - DIESEL, PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



WARNING: Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Only fit snow chains to specified tires.



WARNING: Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.

Note: If your vehicle does not have this tire size, you can purchase alternative wheels that permit the use of snow chains or cables.

Note: Maintain correct tire pressures.

Note: We recommend that you switch the traction control system off. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 324).

Note: The anti-lock brake system continues to correctly operate.

Do not use self-tensioning snow chains.

Wheel and Tire Information

Snow Chain Use by Tire Size

Tire Size	Front Wheels	Rear Wheels
215/65 R16C 109/107T	Yes. ¹	X
215/60 R17C 109/107T	Yes. ¹	X
235/50 R19C 111/109T ²	X	X

¹If you use snow chains or cables, we recommended 16"x6.5J steel wheels and 215/65R16C tires are used as snow chains or cables may damage alloy wheels.

²19" wheels and tires are not suitable for use with snow chains or cables. We recommended fitting 6.5Jx16" steel wheels and 215/65R16C tires for use with snow chains or cables.

X Not suitable for use with snow chains.

USING SNOW CHAINS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



WARNING: Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Only fit snow chains to specified tires.



WARNING: Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.

Note: If your vehicle does not have this tire size, you can purchase alternative wheels that permit the use of snow chains or cables.

Note: Maintain correct tire pressures.

Note: The anti-lock brake system continues to correctly operate.

Note: We recommend that you switch the stability control system off. See **Switching Stability Control On and Off** (page 325).

Do not use self-tensioning snow chains.

Wheel and Tire Information

Snow Chain Use by Tire Size

Tire Size	Front Wheels	Rear Wheels
215/65 R16C 109/107T	X	Yes. ¹
215/60 R17C 109/107T	X	Yes. ¹
235/50 R19C 111/109T ²	X	X

¹If you use snow chains or cables, we recommended 16"x6.5J steel wheels and 215/65R16C tires are used as snow chains or cables may damage alloy wheels.

²19" wheels and tires are not suitable for use with snow chains or cables. We recommended fitting 6.5Jx16" steel wheels and 215/65R16C tires for use with snow chains or cables.

X Not suitable for use with snow chains.

Tire Care

CHECKING THE TIRE PRESSURES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Every day before you drive, check your tires.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge. Inflate all tires to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Inflating the Tires** (page 490).

INFLATING THE TIRES



WARNING: Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!



WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

Inflate your tires to the recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. You can find the tire label with the recommended tire inflation pressure next to the tire size on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - DIESEL, BUS



WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

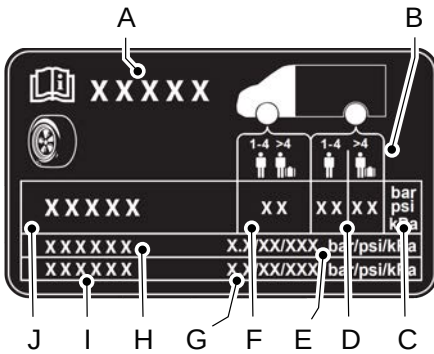
The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: *You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel carrier to check the tire pressure.*

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire is for temporary use only.

Tire Care



- A Vehicle model.
- B Vehicle load.
- C Measure unit.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Temporary spare wheel tire pressure.
- F Front tire pressure.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Temporary spare wheel tire size.
- I Spare wheel tire size.
- J Tire size.

Variant ¹	Tire Size	Full Load		Half Load
		Front	Rear	Rear Only
		bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
320 S	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	4 (58)	3.1 (45)
320 S	215/60R17C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	4 (58)	3.1 (45)
320 S	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.7 (54)	3.7 (54)	3.1 (45)
320 L	215/65R16C 109/107T	4 (58)	4 (58)	3.1 (45)
320 L	215/60R17C 109/107T	4 (58)	4 (58)	3.1 (45)
320 L	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.7 (54)	3.7 (54)	3.1 (45)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Locating the Vehicle Identification Number** (page 545).

Tire Care

Spare Wheel

Tire Size ¹	bar (psi)
215/65R16C 109/107T	4.4 (64)
T155/70 R17 110M	4.2 (61)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Locating the Vehicle Identification Number** (page 545).

Note: All-wheel drive vehicles are only available with temporary spare wheel.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire is for temporary use only.

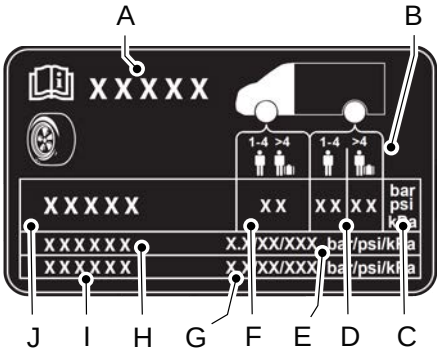
TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - DIESEL, VAN

**WARNING:** Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel carrier to check the tire pressure.



- A Vehicle model.
- B Vehicle load.
- C Measure unit.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Temporary spare wheel tire pressure.
- F Front tire pressure.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Temporary spare wheel tire size.

Tire Care

I Spare wheel tire size.

J Tire size.

Van, Kombi-Van and Kombi

Variant ¹	Tire Size	Full Load		Half Load
		Front	Rear	Rear Only
		bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
250 S	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.7 (54)	3.4 (49)	3.4 (49)
260 S	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.7 (54)	3.4 (49)	3.4 (49)
280 S	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.7 (54)	3.4 (49)	3.4 (49)
280 S	215/60R17 C 109/107T	3.7 (54)	3.4 (49)	3.4 (49)
280 L	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.7 (54)	3.4 (49)	3.4 (49)
280 L	215/60R17 C 109/107T	3.7 (54)	3.4 (49)	3.4 (49)
300 S	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	3.8 (55)	3.8 (55)
300 S	215/60R17 C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	3.8 (55)	3.8 (55)
300 S	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.6 (52)	3.6 (52)	3.6 (52)
300 L	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	3.8 (55)	3.8 (55)
300 L	215/60R17 C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	3.8 (55)	3.8 (55)
300 L	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.6 (52)	3.6 (52)	3.6 (52)
320 S	215/65R16 C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	4.4 (64)	4.4 (64)
320 S	215/60R17 C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	4.4 (64)	4.4 (64)

Tire Care

Variant ¹	Tire Size	Full Load		Half Load
		Front	Rear	Rear Only
		bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
320 S	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.6 (52)	4.1 (59)	4.1 (59)
320 L	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	4.4 (64)	4.4 (64)
320 L	215/60R17C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	4.4 (64)	4.4 (64)
320 L	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.6 (52)	4.1 (59)	4.1 (59)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Locating the Vehicle Identification Number** (page 545).

Double Can In Van

Variant ¹	Tire Size	Full Load		Half Load
		Front	Rear	Rear Only
		bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
280 S	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.7 (54)	3.4 (49)	3.4 (49)
280 S	215/60R17 C 109/107T	3.7 (54)	3.4 (49)	3.4 (49)
280 L	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.7 (54)	3.4 (49)	3.4 (49)
280 L	215/60R17 C 109/107T	3.7 (54)	3.4 (49)	3.4 (49)
300 S	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	3.8 (55)	3.8 (55)
300 S	215/60R17 C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	3.8 (55)	3.8 (55)
300 S	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.6 (52)	3.6 (52)	3.6 (52)
300 L	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	3.8 (55)	3.8 (55)

Tire Care

Variant ¹	Tire Size	Full Load		Half Load
		Front	Rear	Rear Only
		bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
300 L	215/60R17 C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	3.8 (55)	3.8 (55)
300 L	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.6 (52)	3.6 (52)	3.6 (52)
320 S	215/65R16 C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	4.4 (64)	3.5 (51)
320 S	215/60R17 C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	4.4 (64)	3.5 (51)
320 S	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.6 (52)	4.1 (59)	3.5 (51)
320 L	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	4.4 (64)	3.5 (51)
320 L	215/60R17C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	4.4 (64)	3.5 (51)
320 L	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.6 (52)	4.1 (59)	3.5 (51)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Locating the Vehicle Identification Number** (page 545).

Spare Wheel

Tire Size ¹	bar (psi)
215/65R16C 109/107T	4.4 (64)
T155/70 R17 110M	4.2 (61)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Locating the Vehicle Identification Number** (page 545).

Note: All-wheel drive vehicles are only available with temporary spare wheel.

Tire Care

TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - DIESEL, CAMPER



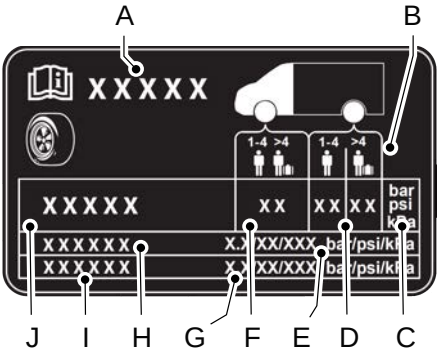
WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel carrier to check the tire pressure.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire is for temporary use only.



- A Vehicle model.
- B Vehicle load.
- C Measure unit.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Temporary spare wheel tire pressure.
- F Front tire pressure.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Temporary spare wheel tire size.
- I Spare wheel tire size.
- J Tire size.

Tire Care

Variant ¹	Tire Size	Full Load		Half Load
		Front	Rear	Rear Only
		bar (psi) 320S	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
320S	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	3.9 (57)	3.9 (57)
320S	215/60R17C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	3.9 (57)	3.9 (57)
320S	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.7 (54)	3.7 (54)	3.7 (54)
320L	215/65R16C 109/107T	4 (58)	3.8 (55)	3.8 (55)
320 L	215/60R17C 109/107T	4 (58)	3.8 (55)	3.8 (55)
320 L	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.7 (54)	3.7 (54)	3.7 (54)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Locating the Vehicle Identification Number** (page 545).

Spare Wheel

Tire Size ¹	bar (psi)
215/65R16C 109/107T	4.4 (64)
T155/70 R17 110T	4.2 (61)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Locating the Vehicle Identification Number** (page 545).

Tire Care

TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV), BUS



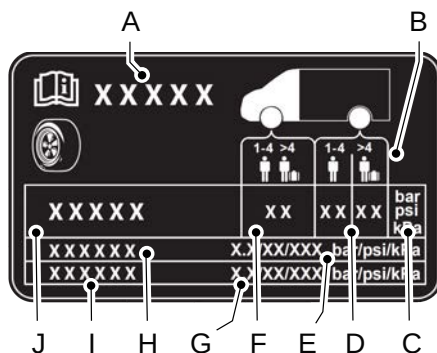
WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel carrier to check the tire pressure.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire is for temporary use only.



- A Vehicle model.
- B Vehicle load.
- C Measure unit.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Temporary spare wheel tire pressure.
- F Front tire pressure.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Temporary spare wheel tire size.
- I Spare wheel tire size.
- J Tire size.

Tire Care

Variant ¹	Tire Size	Full Load		Half Load
		Front	Rear	Rear Only
		bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
340 S	215/65R16C 109/107T	4 (58)	4.3 (62)	3.1 (45)
340 S	215/60R17C 109/107T	4 (58)	4.3 (62)	3.1 (45)
340 S	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.7 (54)	4 (58)	3.1 (45)
340 L	215/65R16C 109/107T	4 (58)	4.3 (62)	3.1 (45)
340 L	215/60R17C 109/107T	4 (58)	4.3 (62)	3.1 (45)
340 L	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.7 (54)	4 (58)	3.1 (45)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Locating the Vehicle Identification Number** (page 545).

Spare Wheel

Tire Size ¹	bar (psi)
215/65R16C 109/107T	4.4 (64)
T155/70 R17 110M	4.2 (61)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Locating the Vehicle Identification Number** (page 545).

Note: All-wheel drive vehicles are only available with temporary spare wheel.

Tire Care

TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV), VAN



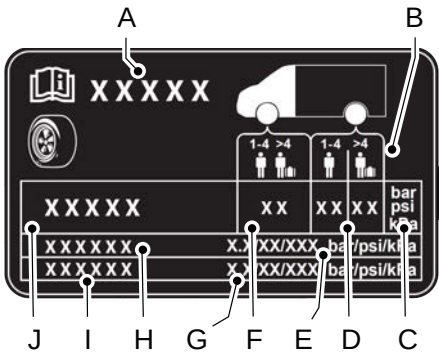
WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel carrier to check the tire pressure.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire is for temporary use only.



- A Vehicle model.
- B Vehicle load.
- C Measure unit.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Temporary spare wheel tire pressure.
- F Front tire pressure.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Temporary spare wheel tire size.
- I Spare wheel tire size.
- J Tire size.

Tire Care

Van, Kombi-Van and Kombi

Variant ¹	Tire Size	Full Load		Half Load
		Front	Rear	Rear Only
		bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
320 S	215/65R16 C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	4.4 (64)	4.4 (64)
320 S	215/60R17 C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	4.4 (64)	4.4 (64)
320 S	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.6 (52)	4.1 (59)	4.1 (59)
320 L	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	4.4 (64)	4.4 (64)
320 L	215/60R17C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	4.4 (64)	4.4 (64)
320 L	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.6 (52)	4.1 (59)	4.1 (59)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Locating the Vehicle Identification Number** (page 545).

Double Can In Van

Variant ¹	Tire Size	Full Load		Half Load
		Front	Rear	Rear Only
		bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
320 S	215/65R16 C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	4.4 (64)	3.5 (51)
320 S	215/60R17 C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	4.4 (64)	3.5 (51)
320 S	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.6 (52)	4.1 (59)	3.5 (51)
320 L	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	4.4 (64)	3.5 (51)

Tire Care

Variant ¹	Tire Size	Full Load		Half Load
		Front	Rear	Rear Only
		bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
320 L	215/60R17C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	4.4 (64)	3.5 (51)
320 L	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.6 (52)	4.1 (59)	3.5 (51)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Locating the Vehicle Identification Number** (page 545).

Spare Wheel

Tire Size ¹	bar (psi)
215/65R16C 109/107T	4.4 (64)
T155/70 R17 110M	4.2 (61)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Locating the Vehicle Identification Number** (page 545).

Note: All-wheel drive vehicles are only available with temporary spare wheel.

TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV), CAMPER



WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer.

Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

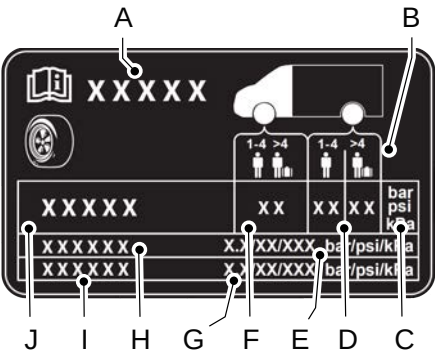
The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel carrier to check the tire pressure.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire is for temporary use only.

Tire Care



- A Vehicle model.
- B Vehicle load.
- C Measure unit.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Temporary spare wheel tire pressure.
- F Front tire pressure.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Temporary spare wheel tire size.
- I Spare wheel tire size.
- J Tire size.

Variant ¹	Tire Size	Full Load		Half Load
		Front	Rear	Rear Only
		bar (psi) 320S	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
340S	215/65R16C 109/107T	4 (58)	4.3 (62)	4.3 (62)
340S	215/60R17C 109/107T	4 (58)	4.3 (62)	4.3 (62)
340S	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.7 (54)	4 (58)	4 (58)
340L	215/65R16C 109/107T	4 (58)	4.3 (62)	4.3 (62)
340 L	215/60R17C 109/107T	4 (58)	4.3 (62)	4.3 (62)
340 L	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.7 (54)	4 (58)	4 (58)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Locating the Vehicle Identification Number** (page 545).

Tire Care

Spare Wheel

Tire Size ¹	bar (psi)
215/65R16C 109/107T	4.4 (64)
T155/70 R17 110T	4.2 (61)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Locating the Vehicle Identification Number** (page 545).

Tire Care

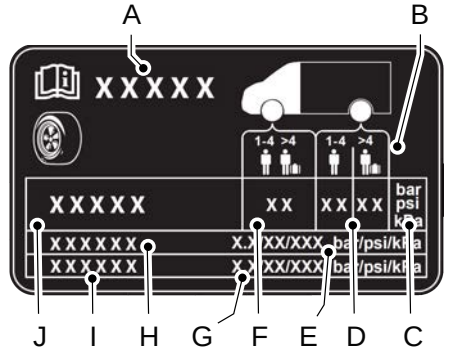
TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE, BUS



WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.



- A Vehicle model.
- B Vehicle load.
- C Measure unit.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Temporary spare wheel tire pressure.
- F Front tire pressure.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Temporary spare wheel tire size.
- I Spare wheel tire size.
- J Tire size.

Tire Care

Variant ¹	Tire Size	Full Load		Half Load
		Front	Rear	Rear Only
		bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
340 S	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.6 (52)	4.7 (68)	3.7 (54)
340 S	215/60R17C 109/107T	3.6 (52)	4.7 (68)	3.7 (54)
340 S	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.3 (48)	4.4 (64)	3.5 (51)
340 L	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.6 (52)	4.7 (68)	3.7 (54)
340 L	215/60R17C 109/107T	3.6 (52)	4.7 (68)	3.7 (54)
340 L	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.3 (48)	4.4 (64)	3.5 (51)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Locating the Vehicle Identification Number** (page 545).

Tire Care

TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE, VAN



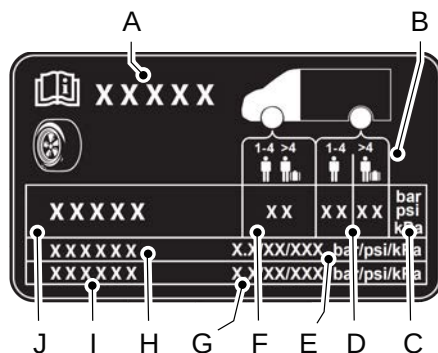
WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel carrier to check the tire pressure.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire is for temporary use only.



- A Vehicle model.
- B Vehicle load.
- C Measure unit.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Temporary spare wheel tire pressure.
- F Front tire pressure.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Temporary spare wheel tire size.
- I Spare wheel tire size.
- J Tire size.

Tire Care

Van, Kombi-Van and Kombi

Variant ¹	Tire Size	Full Load		Half Load
		Front	Rear	Rear Only
		bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
320 S	215/65R16 C 109/107T	3.6 (52)	4.7 (68)	4.7 (68)
320 S	215/60R17 C 109/107T	3.6 (52)	4.7 (68)	4.7 (68)
320 S	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.3 (48)	4.4 (64)	4.4 (64)
320 L	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.6 (52)	4.7 (68)	4.7 (68)
320 L	215/60R17C 109/107T	3.6 (52)	4.7 (68)	4.7 (68)
320 L	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.3 (48)	4.4 (64)	4.4 (64)
340 L	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.6 (52)	4.7 (68)	4.7 (68)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Locating the Vehicle Identification Number** (page 545).

Double Can In Van

Variant ¹	Tire Size	Full Load		Half Load
		Front	Rear	Rear Only
		bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
320 S	215/65R16 C 109/107T	3.6 (52)	4.7 (68)	3.7 (54)
320 S	215/60R17 C 109/107T	3.6 (52)	4.7 (68)	3.7 (54)
320 S	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.3 (48)	4.4 (64)	3.5 (51)
320 L	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.6 (52)	4.7 (68)	3.7 (54)

Tire Care

Variant ¹	Tire Size	Full Load		Half Load
		Front	Rear	Rear Only
		bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
320 L	215/60R17C 109/107T	3.6 (52)	4.7 (68)	3.7 (54)
320 L	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.3 (48)	4.4 (64)	3.5 (51)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Locating the Vehicle Identification Number** (page 545).

Tire Care

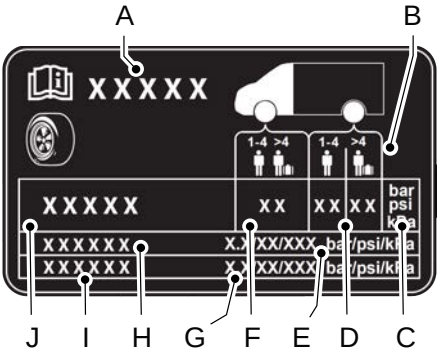
TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE, CAMPER



WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.



- A Vehicle model.
- B Vehicle load.
- C Measure unit.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Temporary spare wheel tire pressure.
- F Front tire pressure.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Temporary spare wheel tire size.
- I Spare wheel tire size.
- J Tire size.

Tire Care

Variant ¹	Tire Size	Full Load		Half Load
		Front	Rear	Rear Only
		bar (psi) 320S	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
340S	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.6 (52)	4.7 (68)	4.7 (68)
340S	215/60R17C 109/107T	3.6 (52)	4.7 (68)	4.7 (68)
340S	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.3 (48)	4.4 (64)	4.4 (64)
340L	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.6 (52)	4.7 (68)	4.7 (68)
340 L	215/60R17C 109/107T	3.6 (52)	4.7 (68)	4.7 (68)
340 L	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.3 (48)	4.4 (64)	4.4 (64)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Locating the Vehicle Identification Number** (page 545).

Tire Care

INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR DAMAGE

Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If you suspect internal damage to the tire, have the tire dismounted and inspected.

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage, such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall.



WARNING: Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed.

Examine the tires regularly for uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels could be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer periodically check the wheel alignment.

TIRE ROTATION



WARNING: If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, then you need to update the settings for the system sensors. Always perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If you do not reset the system, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

To make sure the front and rear tires of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tires from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals between 5,000 km (3,000 mi) and 10,000 km (6,000 mi).

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval helps your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

Note: *If your tires show any uneven wear have the alignment checked by an authorized dealer before rotating tires.*

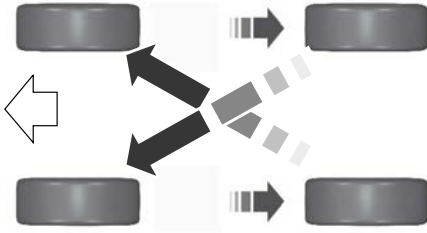
Note: *If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

Note: *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

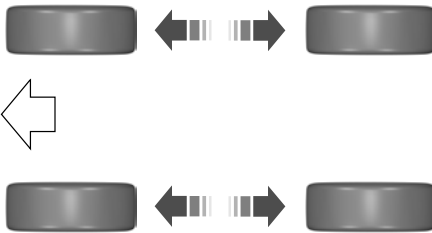
Note: *Front tires shown on the left side of the diagram.*

Tire Care

Non-directional tires



Directional tires



E70415

Note: *Directional tires have an arrow on the sidewall to indicate the correct direction of wheel rotation. Do not switch directional tires to the other side of your vehicle.*

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

WHAT IS THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The kit consists of an air compressor to re-inflate the tire and a canister of sealing compound that effectively seals most punctures. This kit provides a temporary tire repair allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 200 km (120 mi) at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) to reach a tire service location.

Note: *The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only. See an authorized dealer for replacement sealant canisters.*

TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all. Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.



WARNING: Do not use the kit on a previously damaged tire, for example when it has been driven under inflated. This could cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to repair punctures larger than 6 mm (0.24 in) or damage to the tire's sidewall.

Only punctures located within the tire tread can be sealed with the kit.

Only use the kit supplied with your vehicle.

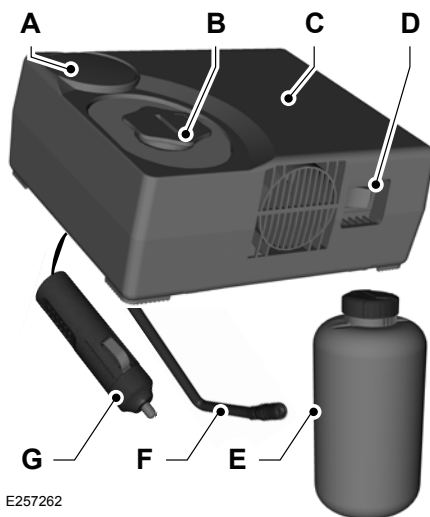
The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only.

After using the sealant, an authorized dealer needs to replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel.

LOCATING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The kit is in the left-hand side of the luggage compartment.

TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT COMPONENTS



- A Pressure Gauge.
- B Sealant bottle access cap.
- C Warning label.
- D Power switch.
- E Sealant bottle.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

- F Tire inflation pipe.
- G 12 volt DC power point connector.

Note: Make sure you regularly check the expiry date on the sealant bottle.

USING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

WARNING: The sealant contains natural rubber latex. Avoid contact with skin and clothing. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and consult a physician.

WARNING: Do not leave the kit unattended when it is in use. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Check the sidewall of the tire prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire. This could cause personal injury.

WARNING: If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.

WARNING: Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is operating. This could cause personal injury if the tire bursts.

Note: The recommended tire pressures are on the tire label or safety certification label, located on the B-pillar, inside the driver's door. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 492). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 490).

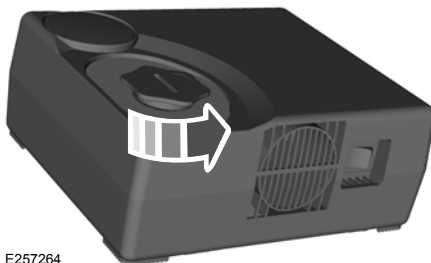
1. Check for a punctured tire.

Note: Do not remove objects, for example nails or screws from a punctured tire.



E257263

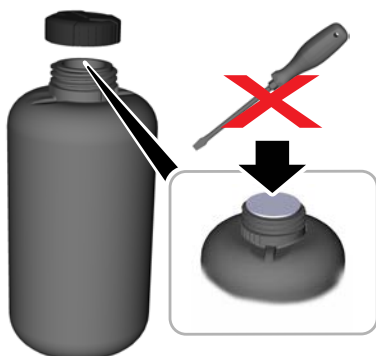
2. Release the tire inflation pipe and the 12 V DC power point connector from the underside of the compressor.



E257264

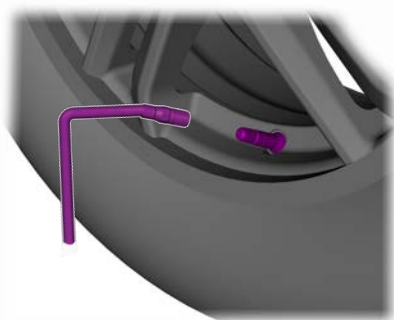
3. Turn the sealant bottle access cap counterclockwise and remove it.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



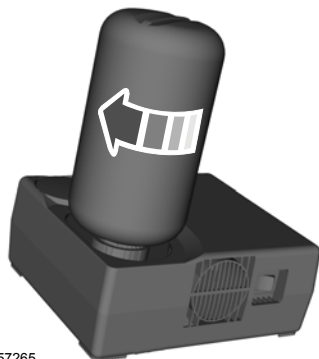
E256963

4. Remove the sealant bottle cap. Do not pierce or remove the seal.



E257006

6. Remove the tire valve dust cap and attach the tire inflation pipe.



E257265

5. Attach the sealant bottle to the compressor. Turn the sealant bottle clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: Attaching the sealant bottle to the compressor pierces the seal. Do not loosen the bottle as sealant could escape.

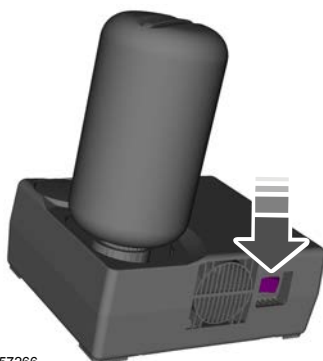


E257022

7. Plug the 12 V DC power point connector into the 12 V DC socket. See **Locating the Power Outlets** (page 208).

Note: Depending on location of the 12 V DC socket, it may be necessary to route the compressor cable through the passenger compartment to reach the affected tire.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



E257266



8. Start your vehicle and switch the compressor on.
9. Inflate the tire to the recommended tire pressure shown on the Tire Label on the B pillar. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 492). Do not operate the compressor for more than 15 minutes continuously. Switch the compressor and your vehicle off and check the current tire pressure with the pressure gauge.

Note: If the recommended tire pressure is not reached within 15 minutes, you may disconnect the compressor, slowly roll the vehicle forward by one car length to distribute the sealant within the tire, then restart the inflation process. If the recommended inflation pressure is still not reached, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Stop and call roadside assistance.

10. Remove the power plug from the 12 V DC power point connector.
11. Unscrew the pipe from the tire valve and put the protective cap back in place. Replace the valve cap on the tire valve.

Note: Some residual sealant fluid may drip or briefly spray out the pipe while you disconnect it. This is normal.

12. Do not remove the sealant bottle from the compressor. This avoids leakage of residual sealant.
13. Remove the warning label showing the maximum permissible speed 80 km/h (50 mph) from the side of the compressor and place it on top of the instrument panel or the center of the dash in the driver's field of view. Make sure the label does not obscure anything important.
14. Store the kit, the bottle lid and cap safely in your vehicle. You need the kit again when you check the tire pressure after driving the vehicle a short distance.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



E257942

15. Promptly drive the vehicle cautiously for 6 km (4 mi) to distribute the sealant evenly inside the tire. Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph)

Note: *If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, do not proceed to the second stage of this operation. Reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road to call for roadside assistance.*

16. After 6 km (4 mi) stop at a safe place and check the tire pressure using the kit. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 492).
17. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve and firmly screw the air compressor pipe onto the valve stem by turning clockwise.
18. With the compressor off, the gauge of the kit displays the tire inflation pressure.

Note: *If the tire pressure has dropped to 2 bar (29.0 psi) below the recommended tire pressure, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Stop and call roadside assistance. Do not drive your vehicle.*



19. If necessary, turn on the compressor and adjust the tire to the recommended tire pressure. Check the tire pressure with the compressor turned off to get an accurate pressure reading. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 492).
20. Unscrew the compressor pipe from the valve stem and reinstall the valve cap. Leave the sealant bottle attached to the compressor. Safely store the tire sealant and inflator kit in your vehicle.

After Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



WARNING: If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road and call for roadside assistance. Failure to do so could cause you to lose control of your vehicle and increase the risk of personal injury or death.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

The kit only provides temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tire repair or replacement after using the kit could differ from country to country. We recommend you consult a tire specialist.

After using the kit:

- Do not drive your vehicle more than 200 km (120 mi) before repairing or replacing the punctured tire.
- Inform all other users of your vehicle that a tire was sealed using the kit. Make them aware of the special driving conditions that must be observed.
- Regularly check the tire pressure until the sealed tire is repaired or replaced by a tire specialist. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 492). Before the tire is removed from the rim, you must inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant.
- Take the kit to an authorized dealer to have the sealant bottle and the tire inflation pipe replaced.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

WHAT IS THE TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM



The tire pressure monitoring system measures the vehicle's tire pressures. A warning lamp illuminates if one or more tires are significantly underinflated or if there is a system malfunction.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: The use of tire sealants can damage the tire pressure monitoring system.

Note: If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

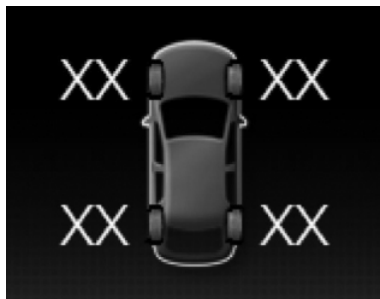
When the outside temperature drops significantly, the tire pressure could decrease and activate the low tire pressure warning lamp.

The warning lamp could also illuminate when you use a spare wheel, or tire sealant from the inflator kit.

Note: Regularly checking the vehicle tire pressures can reduce the possibility for the warning lamp to illuminate due to outside air temperature changes.

Note: After you inflate the tires to the recommended pressure it could take up to two minutes of driving over 32 km/h (20 mph) for the warning indicator to turn off.

VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES



To view the current tire pressures, use the information display or touchscreen.

RESETTING TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

You must carry out the system reset procedure after each tire replacement or adjustment of the tire pressures.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

To maintain your vehicle load carrying capability, your vehicle may require different tire pressures in the front compared to the rear. In these cases, the system illuminates the warning lamp at different pressures for the front and rear tires.

If the tires are rotated, you need to reset the system in order to relearn the positions of the tire pressure sensors. The system cannot tell which position a tire pressure sensor is in, and assumes you have set the tire pressures correctly.

Performing the Reset Procedure

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Navigate to the tire monitor menu in the information display. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages** (page 522).

3. Press and hold the OK button until a confirmation message appears. If your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system reset button, press and hold the button until a confirmation message appears.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



The low tire pressure warning lamp has combined functions, as it warns you when your tires need air, and when the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended.

Warning Lamp	Possible Cause	Action Required
Solid warning lamp	One or more tires are significantly under inflated	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 32 km/h (20 mph) before the light turns off.
	Tire rotation without sensor training	On vehicles with different front and rear tire pressures, the system must be retrained following every tire rotation.
Solid warning lamp or flashing warning lamp	Temporary spare wheel in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit it to your vehicle to restore operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Tyre pressure low	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of the driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 32 km/h (20 mph) before the light turns off.
Tyre pressure monitor malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tyre pressure sensor malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service or a spare tire is in use. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Changing a Road Wheel

CHANGING A FLAT TIRE



WARNING: Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.



WARNING: If you are not sure what type of spare wheel your vehicle has, do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).



WARNING: Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to not obstruct the flow of traffic and avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.



WARNING: Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake. If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse gear. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P).



WARNING: Make sure that your vehicle is on firm and level ground with the front wheels pointing straight ahead and set up a warning triangle if available.



WARNING: To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.

Make sure all passengers are out of your vehicle.

The spare wheel is under the rear of your vehicle.

Do not fit more than one spare wheel on your vehicle at any one time.

If the spare wheel is the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, you can fit the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner.

If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, it has a label showing the maximum driving speed limit.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire is for temporary use only. Drive the shortest distance possible and have the damaged road wheel and tire repaired or replaced as soon as possible. If the dissimilar spare wheel or tire is damaged, it must be replaced.

The jack and tools are on the D-pillar at the left rear of the cargo area.

The locking wheel nut key is in the glove box.

You can obtain replacement locking wheel nuts or a locking wheel nut key using the reference number certificate.

Vehicle Jack Storage in Van



WARNING: Only use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle.



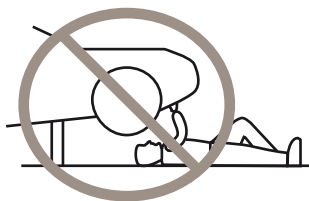
WARNING: The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



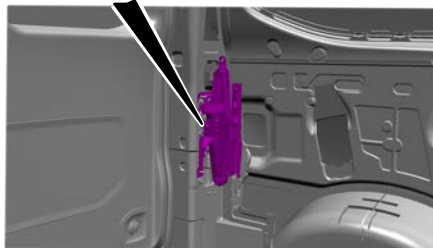
WARNING: No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

Changing a Road Wheel

 **WARNING:** Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



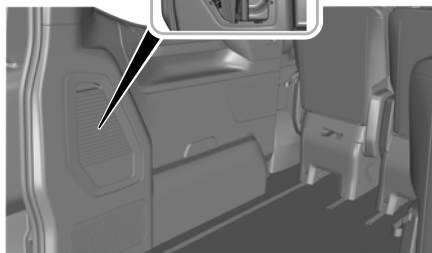
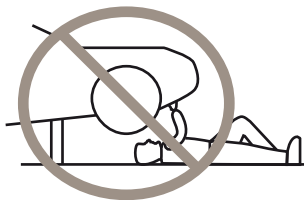
The jack and tools are at the left of the cargo area. Turn the wing nut counter-clockwise until the jack can be removed.



 **WARNING:** The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

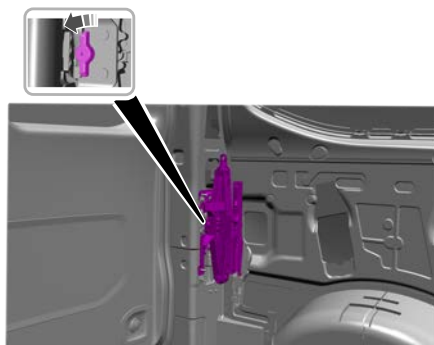
 **WARNING:** Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



Vehicle Jack Storage in Bus

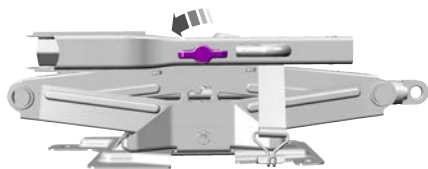
 **WARNING:** Only use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle.

Changing a Road Wheel

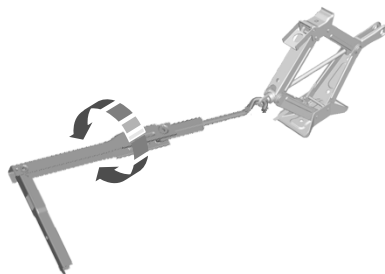


The jack and tools are at the left of the cargo area. Remove the cover in the cargo area to access the jack and tools. Turn the first wing nut counter-clockwise until the jack can be removed.

Assembling the Tools



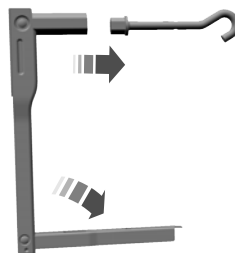
1. Disassemble the jack and tools by turning the second wing nut counter-clockwise.



2. Insert the hook of the vehicle jack handle into the ring on the vehicle jack.
3. To raise your vehicle, rotate the vehicle jack handle clockwise.

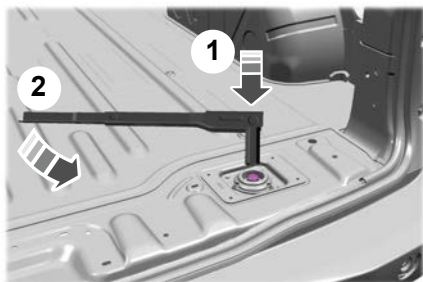
Removing the Spare Wheel

The spare wheel is under the rear of your vehicle and removed using a winch system.



1. Unfold the wheel brace and remove the hook.

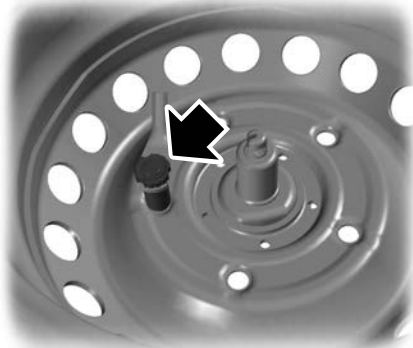
Changing a Road Wheel



2. Open the liftgate or rear doors.
3. Insert the short arm of the jack handle into the socket. Turn counterclockwise until the spare wheel rests on the ground and the cable is loose.



4. Rotate the cable through 90 degrees. Slide the cable through the slot to release the spare wheel bracket from the winch.



E146813

5. Remove the retaining nut to release the spare wheel bracket.

Stowing the Spare Wheel

To stow the spare wheel, reverse the removal procedure. Make sure the spare wheel is secure by tightening the winch until you hear the winch clutch engage.

Note: If the punctured wheel is not reattached, make sure you return the winch cable. Do not leave the cable hanging down.

SWB Front Jacking Points



WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

Note: Before jacking your vehicle make sure that the jack is not in contact with any components of the underside of the vehicle.

Note: Damage caused by incorrectly jacking your vehicle is not covered by the vehicle warranty.

If you have a Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle, please make sure to follow the below warning:

Changing a Road Wheel



WARNING: Using the high voltage battery box as a jacking point could result in electric shock, personal injury, fire or death.

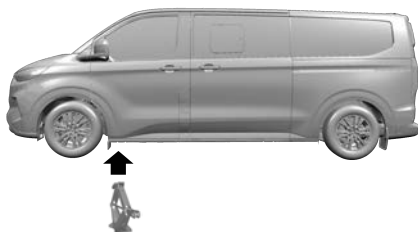
Note: Do not jack on the outboard sill, only use the specified jacking points.



WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.



WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.



SWB Rear Jacking Points



WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

Note: Before jacking your vehicle make sure that the jack is not in contact with any components of the underside of the vehicle.

Note: Damage caused by incorrectly jacking your vehicle is not covered by the vehicle warranty.

If you have a Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle, please make sure to follow the below warning:



WARNING: Using the high voltage battery box as a jacking point could result in electric shock, personal injury, fire or death.

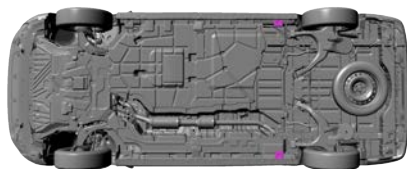
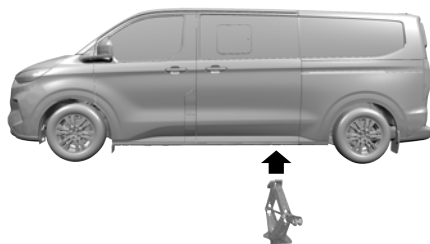
Note: Do not jack on the outboard sill, only use the specified jacking points.



WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.



WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.



Changing a Road Wheel

LWB Front Jacking Points



WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

Note: Before jacking your vehicle make sure that the jack is not in contact with any components of the underside of the vehicle.

Note: Damage caused by incorrectly jacking your vehicle is not covered by the vehicle warranty.

If you have a Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle, please make sure to follow the below warning:



WARNING: Using the high voltage battery box as a jacking point could result in electric shock, personal injury, fire or death.

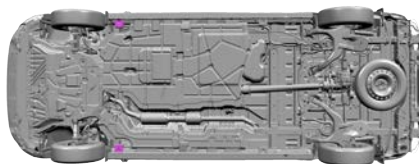
Note: Do not jack on the outboard sill, only use the specified jacking points.



WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.



WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.



LWB Rear Jacking Points



WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

Note: Before jacking your vehicle make sure that the jack is not in contact with any components of the underside of the vehicle.

Note: Damage caused by incorrectly jacking your vehicle is not covered by the vehicle warranty.

If you have a Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle, please make sure to follow the below warning:



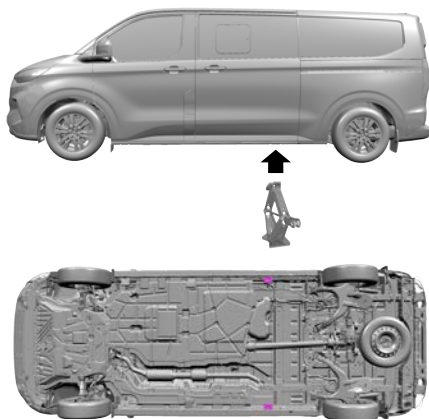
WARNING: Using the high voltage battery box as a jacking point could result in electric shock, personal injury, fire or death.

Note: Do not jack on the outboard sill, only use the specified jacking points.

Changing a Road Wheel

WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.

WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.



Removing a Road Wheel

WARNING: Only use the spare wheel and tire assembly provided as original equipment with your vehicle.

WARNING: Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel studs and the wheel nuts. This can cause the wheel nuts to loosen while driving.

WARNING: When you install a wheel, remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without following these steps can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Have the wheel nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

1. Insert the flat end of the wheel brace between the wheel rim and the wheel trim and carefully remove the wheel trim.

Note: Do not lay alloy wheels face down on the ground.

2. Install the locking wheel nut key.
3. Loosen the wheel nuts and locking wheel nut.
4. Correctly position the vehicle jack.
5. Raise your vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
6. Remove the wheel nuts and the locking wheel nut.
7. Remove the wheel.

Changing a Road Wheel

Installing a Road Wheel



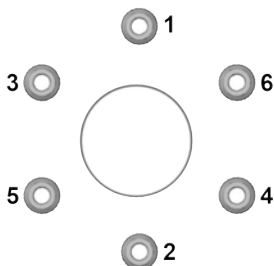
WARNING: Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel studs and the wheel nuts. This can cause the wheel nuts to loosen while driving.



WARNING: Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle.

1. Install the wheel.

Note: Make sure the wheel and hub contact surfaces are free from foreign matter.



2. Install all of the wheel nuts and partially tighten them in the sequence shown.

Note: Make sure that the cones on the wheel nuts are against the wheel.

Note: Alloy wheel wheel nuts are suitable for use on a steel spare wheel.

3. Lower your vehicle and remove the vehicle jack.
4. Install the locking wheel nut key.
5. Fully tighten the wheel nuts in the sequence shown. See **Wheel Nuts** (page 530).
6. Install the wheel trim.

7. Correctly stow the spare wheel, vehicle jack, wheel brace and locking wheel nut key.

Note: Use the two wing nuts to assemble the jack and fix it to its location.

Note: Have the wheel nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

Note: If the spare wheel is different in size or construction to the road wheels, have this replaced as soon as possible.

WHEEL NUTS

Lug Nut Torque



WARNING: When you install a wheel, remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without following these steps can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Only use the specific lug nuts and wheels supplied with your vehicle. If in doubt, contact an authorized dealer.



WARNING: Do not install alloy wheels using lug nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

Changing a Road Wheel

Bolt size	Nm (lb.ft)
M14 x 1.5	204 (150)

Locking Lug Nuts

You can obtain a replacement locking lug nut key and replacement locking lug nuts from an authorized dealer using the reference number certificate.

Capacities and Specifications

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - DIESEL

Dimension Description	Dimension
Bore.	84.01 mm (3.3 in)
Stroke.	90 mm (3.5 in)
Capacity.	1,996 cm ³ (122 in ³)
Compression ratio.	15.8:1
Firing order.	1-3-4-2
Fuel type.	Diesel

Capacities and Specifications

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Item	Specification
Engine position.	Transversal
Engine type.	2.5L Duratec – Hybrid
Number and arrangement of cylinders.	Inline 4 cylinder
Valves.	4 per cylinder
Cylinder bore.	89 mm (3.50 in)
Stroke.	100 mm (3.94 in)
Compression ratio.	13:1
Displacement.	2,488 cm ³ (152 in ³)
Engine output.	88 kW (118 hp) @ 4500 rpm
Maximum torque.	187 Nm (138 lb.ft) @ 4500 rpm
Maximum engine speed.	4500 rpm
Engine speed at idle.	1250 ± 50 rpm
Fuel system.	Port Fuel Injection
Firing order.	1-3-4-2
Air induction type.	Naturally aspirated
Spark plug gap.	1.3 mm (0.051 in)

Capacities and Specifications

SUSPENSION SPECIFICATIONS

Wheel Alignment

Van with Short Wheelbase

Front Wheels

Vehicle type	Toe	Caster		Camber	
	Value degrees +/- 0.25	Value degrees	Tolerance degrees	Value degrees	Tolerance degrees
FWD	0.25	3.41	0.75	-0.41	0.75
AWD	0.25	3.06	0.75	-0.47	0.75

Rear Wheels

Vehicle type	Toe	Thrust Angle		Camber	
	Value degrees +/- 0.25	Value degrees	Tolerance degrees	Value degrees	Tolerance degrees
FWD	0.25	0.00	0.45	-0.60	0.75
AWD	0.16	0.00	0.45	-0.38	0.75

Van with Long Wheelbase

Front Wheels

Vehicle type	Toe	Caster		Camber	
	Value degrees +/- 0.25	Value degrees	Tolerance degrees	Value degrees	Tolerance degrees
FWD	0.25	3.58	0.75	-0.45	0.75
AWD	0.25	3.41	0.75	-0.41	0.75

Capacities and Specifications

Rear Wheels

Vehicle type	Toe	Thrust Angle		Camber	
	Value degrees +/- 0.25	Value degrees	Tolerance degrees	Value degrees	Tolerance degrees
FWD	0.25	0.00	0.45	-0.66	0.75
AWD	0.16	0.00	0.45	-0.47	0.75

Bus with short wheelbase

Front Wheels

Vehicle type	Toe	Caster		Camber	
	Value degrees +/- 0.25	Value degrees	Tolerance degrees	Value degrees	Tolerance degrees
FWD	0.25	3.30	0.75	-0.42	0.75
AWD	0.25	3.32	0.75	-0.48	0.75

Rear Wheels

Vehicle type	Toe	Thrust Angle		Camber	
	Value degrees +/- 0.25	Value degrees	Tolerance degrees	Value degrees	Tolerance degrees
FWD	0.25	0.00	0.45	-0.58	0.75
AWD	0.16	0.00	0.45	-0.68	0.75

Bus with long wheelbase

Front Wheels

Vehicle type	Toe	Caster		Camber	
	Value degrees +/- 0.25	Value degrees	Tolerance degrees	Value degrees	Tolerance degrees
FWD	0.25	3.55	0.75	-0.42	0.75
AWD	0.25	3.60	0.75	-0.48	0.75

Capacities and Specifications

Rear Wheels

Vehicle type	Toe	Thrust Angle		Camber	
	Value degrees +/- 0.25	Value degrees	Tolerance degrees	Value degrees	Tolerance degrees
FWD	0.25	0.00	0.45	-0.68	0.75
AWD	0.16	0.00	0.45	-0.77	0.75

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS

Short Wheelbase

Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
Overall length.	5,050 (198.8)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	2,275 (89.6)
Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors.	2,032 (80.0)
Overall height excluding the antenna.	1,958–2,490 (77.1–98.0)
Wheelbase.	3,100 (122.0)
Front track.	1,725–1,730 (67.9–68.1)
Rear track.	1,716–1,721 (67.6–67.8)

Long Wheelbase

Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
Overall length.	5,450 (214.6)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	2,275 (89.6)
Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors.	2,032 (80.0)
Overall height excluding the antenna.	1,959–2,485 (77.1–97.8)
Wheelbase.	3,500 (137.8)
Front track.	1,725–1,730 (67.9–68.1)
Rear track.	1,716–1,721 (67.6–67.8)

Capacities and Specifications

ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - DIESEL

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All	9.3 L (2.0 gal)

Note: The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum is 2 L (0.4 gal).

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-30	WSS-M2C913-D

Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C913-D, you can top-up with a SAE 5W-30 engine oil that is defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Note: Do not use more than 1 L (0.2 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.

Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	7.1 L (1.56 gal)

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 0W-20	WSS-M2C954-A1

Capacities and Specifications

Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C954-A1, you can top-up with a

SAE 0W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA C6.

Note: *Do not use more than 0.5 L (0.11 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.*

COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill the coolant to the MAX mark on the coolant reservoir.

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze PU7J-M97B57-EA/EB/FA	WSS-M97B57-A2

FUEL TANK CAPACITY - DIESEL

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Vehicles with standard fuel tank.	55 L (12.1 gal)
Vehicles with larger fuel tank.	70 L (15.4 gal)

Capacities and Specifications

FUEL TANK CAPACITY - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Variant	Quantity
Vehicles with standard fuel tank.	63 L (13.9 gal)

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - DIESEL

**WARNING:** The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
Vehicles with front climate control.	0.53 kg (1.168 lb)	120 –0/+15 cm ³ (4.1 –0.0/+0.5 fl oz)
Vehicles with front and rear climate control.	0.79 kg (1.742 lb)	180 –0/+15 cm ³ (6.1 –0.0/+0.5 fl oz)

Materials

Name	Specification
Refrigerant - R-1234yf	WSS-M17B21-A
A/C Compressor Oil DE-12 FU7J-M2C300-AA	WSS-M2C300-A2

Capacities and Specifications

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

**WARNING:** The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
All.	0.55 kg (19.4 oz)	180 –0/+15 cm ³ (6.1 –0.0/+0.5 fl oz)

Materials

Name	Specification
Refrigerant - R-1234yf	WSS-M17B21-A
A/C Compressor Oil DE-BEV DU7J-M2C31-BA	WSS-M2C31-B2

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

**WARNING:** The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Capacities and Specifications

Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
Vehicles with front climate control.	1.225 kg (2.701 lb)	250 –0/+15 cm ³ (8.5 –0.0/+0.5 fl oz)
Vehicles with dual automatic temperature control.	1.425 kg (3.142 lb)	300 –0/+15 cm ³ (10.1 –0.0/+0.5 fl oz)

Materials

Name	Specification
Refrigerant - R-1234yf	WSS-M17B21-A
A/C Compressor Oil DE-BEV DU7J-M2C31-BA	WSS-M2C31-B2

WASHER FLUID SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

Materials

Name	Specification
Screen Wash FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA	WSS-M14P19-A

ADBLUE® CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - DIESEL

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	20 L (4.4 gal)

Capacities and Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
AdBlue® HAMJ-M99C130-xx	WSS-M99C130-A

MANUAL TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	2.2–0.13 L (2.3–0.1 qt) ¹

¹ Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

Materials

Name	Specification
Transmission Oil 75W LV JU7J-M2C200-AA, JU7J-M2C200-CA	WSS-M2C200-E1

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	4.45 L (4.7 qt) ¹

¹ Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

Materials

Name	Specification
Automatic Transmission Oil P-ULV HU7J-M2C949-AA	WSS-M2C949-A,

Capacities and Specifications

Note: Automatic transmissions that require MERCON® ULV transmission fluid should only use MERCON® ULV transmission fluid. The use of any other fluid may cause transmission damage.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 8-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Eight-speed automatic transmission (8F57).	11.5 L (12.2 qt) ¹

¹ Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount could vary during fluid changes.

Materials

Name	Specification
Automatic Transmission Oil P-ULV HU7J-M2C949-AA	WSS-M2C949-A,

Note: Only use transmission fluid that conforms to the defined specification. Use of other fluids could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

Capacities and Specifications

Note: We recommend using DOT 4 LV (Low Viscosity) High Performance Brake Fluid meeting WSS-M6C65-A2 or ISO 4925 Class 6 standards. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.

REAR AXLE FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - AWD

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	0.86 L (0.9 qt)

Note: Ford rear axles contain a synthetic lubricant that does not require changing unless you submerge the axle in water.

Materials

Name	Specification
Rear Axle Oil SAE 75W FM JU7J-19G518-AA	-

Materials

Name	Specification
Grease	ESA-M1C75-B

Vehicle Identification

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER



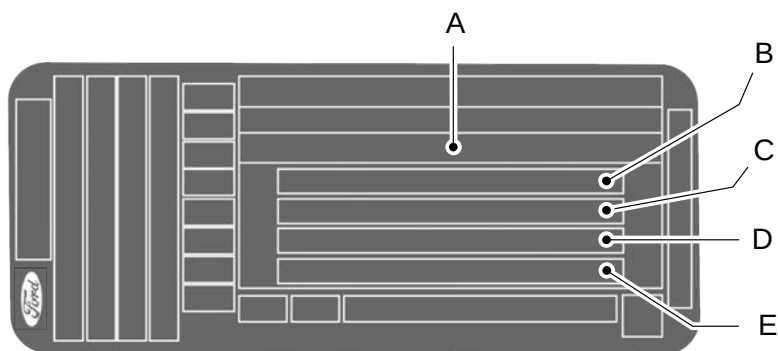
The vehicle identification number is located on the left-hand side of the instrument panel. You can also find it stamped into the right-hand front wheel arch.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

The vehicle identification plate is within the left-hand door aperture.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE OVERVIEW



- A Vehicle identification number.
- B Gross vehicle weight.

Vehicle Identification

- C Gross train weight.
- D Maximum front axle weight.
- E Maximum rear axle weight.

Note: *The vehicle identification plate may vary to that shown.*

Note: *Information on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.*

Connected Vehicle

WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE - DIESEL, PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the FordPass app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, the fuel level and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the FordPass app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.

Some remote features require additional service activation. Log in to your Ford account for details. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

WHAT IS THE MODEM



The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Press **Connected Vehicle Features**.
4. Switch vehicle connectivity on or off.

CONNECTING FORDPASS TO THE MODEM

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the FordPass app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
5. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your FordPass account.
6. Confirm that FordPass account is connected to the modem.

Connected Vehicle

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Switch **Wi-Fi** on.
4. Press **View Available Networks**.
5. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

Note: Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.

CONNECTED VEHICLE SETTINGS

You can adjust several settings on the touchscreen under the connected vehicle features menu, such as:

- Vehicle connectivity.
- Share vehicle data.
- Share vehicle location.
- Share driving data.

Note: Depending on your vehicle, different options may be available.

Note: Editing connectivity settings could result in some features not operating correctly or at all. When you edit connectivity settings, pop-up messages may appear to notify you that services will not work without that setting. If you switch a feature on, pop-up messages could appear informing you of the settings that will be turned on. Some features, for example driver assistance features, use map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

CONNECTED VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why can I not confirm the connection of my FordPass account to the modem?

- The modem is not enabled. Switch vehicle connectivity on.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

Why can I not connect to a Wi-Fi network?

- You entered the wrong network password. Enter the correct password.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- There are multiple access points in range with the same network name. Choose a unique name for your network. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.

Why does the Wi-Fi connection disconnect after successful connection?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

Connected Vehicle

What can I do if I am close to a Wi-Fi router but the network signal strength is weak?

- If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi router or open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door as it could block the signal.

Why can I not see a network I expect to see in the list of available networks?

- The network is hidden. Make the network visible and try again, or manually add a network in the Wi-Fi settings menu.
- Some network security types are not supported, for example WEP.

Why do software downloads take too long?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- Wi-Fi network is in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. Use a more reliable Wi-Fi network.

Why does the software not update when the system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent?

- No software update is available at this time.
- Select automatic updates option in the settings menu to enable automatic software update or contact an authorized dealer.
- There could be a connection problem. Test the network using another device.

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

CREATING A VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT

You can create a Wi-Fi hotspot in your vehicle and allow devices to connect to it for access to the Internet.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.

Note: The vehicle hotspot default setting is on.

3. Press **Settings**.
4. Press **Edit**.
5. Press **Hotspot Visibility**.

Note: The hotspot visibility default setting is on.

Finding the Wi-Fi Hotspot Name and Password

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.
3. Press **Settings**.

Note: The network name is the hotspot name.

4. Press **Show Password**.

Connecting a Device to the Wi-Fi Hotspot

1. On your device, switch Wi-Fi on and select the hotspot from the list of available Wi-Fi networks.
2. When prompted, enter the password.

Purchasing a Data Plan

1. Connect a device to the hotspot.

Note: The vehicle network carrier's portal opens on your device.

2. If the portal does not open on your device, open a website and it redirects to the vehicle network carrier's portal.

Note: Secure websites do not redirect.

3. Follow the instructions on the carrier portal to purchase a plan.

Note: If you have an active plan, the system does not redirect to the vehicle network carrier's portal when you connect a device. Visit the vehicle network carrier's website to purchase more data.

Note: If data usage information is available in the vehicle hotspot menu, it is approximate.

Note: If you carry out a vehicle system reset, the system does not remove your vehicle from your vehicle network carrier's account. To remove your vehicle from the account, contact your vehicle network carrier.

Note: The vehicle network carrier provides Vehicle Hotspot services, subject to your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability.

CHANGING THE VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT NAME OR PASSWORD

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.
3. Press **Settings**.
4. Press **Edit**.
5. Press **Change Network Name**.
6. Enter your required network name.
7. Press **Done**.
8. Press **Change Password**.
9. Enter your required password.
10. Press **Done**.

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

Changing the Wi-Fi Hotspot Frequency

Note: *The Vehicle Hotspot frequency band is selectable depending upon your device capabilities. You will be unable to connect your device to the Vehicle Hotspot if it does not support the selected frequency band.*

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.
3. Press **Settings**.
4. Press **Edit**.
5. Select a frequency.

VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT – TROUBLESHOOTING

VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why can I not see the Wi-Fi hotspot name when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device?

- Make sure Wi-Fi hotspot visibility is on.
- The system does not provide a Wi-Fi hotspot at this time.
- Check what frequency the hotspot is transmitting in the vehicle hotspot settings menu. If the frequency is 5 GHz and your device cannot see the network, change the frequency to 2.4 GHz.

Audio System

AUDIO SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.

SWITCHING THE AUDIO UNIT ON AND OFF



Press the button on the volume control or on the touchscreen.

SELECTING THE AUDIO SOURCE

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select the desired source by pressing the tile on the touchscreen.

PLAYING OR PAUSING THE AUDIO SOURCE

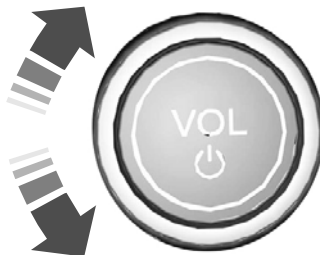


Press to pause playback. Press again to resume playback.

Note: Not all sources can be paused. The button mutes these sources.

Note: The mute button on the steering wheel pauses the media source.

ADJUSTING THE VOLUME



Turn to adjust the volume.

Some vehicles may be able to adjust the volume using buttons on the steering wheel.

SETTING A MEMORY PRESET

To store a radio station, press and hold one of the preset buttons.

Note: A maximum of thirty presets can be stored depending on the selected number of preset pages.

MUTING THE AUDIO



Press to mute the signal. Press again to restore the signal.

Note: The mute function is only available for sources that cannot be paused.

Audio System



Press the button on the steering wheel to mute the signal. Press again to restore the signal.

SCROLLING THROUGH MENU ITEMS

Use the touchscreen to scroll through menu items.

SELECTING A MENU ITEM

Use the touchscreen to select a menu item.

ADJUSTING THE SOUND SETTINGS

1.  Press the settings icon on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Sound settings**.
3. Select the desired menu point and adjust the settings.

SETTING THE CLOCK AND DATE

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Clock settings**.
3. Set the time.

Note: The **AM** and **PM** options are not available if **24-hour mode** is on.

Switching Automatic Time Updates On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Clock settings**.
3. Switch **Auto Time Update** on or off.

FM RADIO

FM RADIO LIMITATIONS

The further you travel from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.

Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.

When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

SELECTING AN FM RADIO STATION

Manually Changing Radio Stations

Use the touchscreen to change radio stations.

Note: You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons.

Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the next preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Audio System



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the previous preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Selecting a Station from the List

Press **Stations** on the touchscreen to view available stations.

SWITCHING THE DISPLAY ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

WHAT IS DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) is a digital radio standard for broadcasting digital audio radio services. Your radio allows you to listen to DAB radio stations.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO LIMITATIONS

Coverage differs from region to region and influences the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally. Coverage may vary on weather conditions and terrain.

Note: *This could cause the audio to dropout.*

SELECTING A DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO STATION

Manually Changing Radio Stations

Use the touchscreen to change radio stations.

Note: *You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons.*

Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the next preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station up the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the previous preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Selecting a Station from the List

Press **Stations** on the touchscreen to view available stations.

Center Display Overview

CENTER DISPLAY PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

CENTER DISPLAY LIMITATIONS

Speed-restricted Features

For your safety, features that are not critical while driving are not available when the vehicle is moving at or above 8 km/h (5 mph).

STATUS BAR

The bar is on top of the display and indicates the status of your vehicle's features.

Note: Some buttons and icons may not apply to your vehicle or may not appear exactly as shown.

Audio System



Audio system muted.

Connected Device



Cell phone microphone muted.



Phone call in progress.



Media player connected using **Bluetooth®**.



Cell phone network signal strength.



Cell phone roaming.



Text message received.



Unread email message.



Automatic crash notification system off.



Cell phone battery status.

Traffic Announcements



Traffic announcements are turned on but are not supported by the selected station.



active.



Traffic announcements are active.

Note: If no traffic announcement icons are displayed, traffic announcements are turned off.

Center Display Overview

Vehicle Data



Wi-Fi available.



Wi-Fi connected.



Vehicle data sharing on.



Vehicle data sharing off.



Vehicle location sharing on.



Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.

Vehicle Software Update

See **Software Update Indicators** (page 573).

Wireless Accessory Charger



Wireless accessory charger active.

INFORMATION ON DEMAND SCREEN

The information on demand screen displays cards on the side of the display and allows you to see information from different features.

You can swipe up or down to view a different card.

Note: *On some screens, you can swipe a card toward the center of the screen to move the content into the main screen.*

REBOOTING THE CENTER DISPLAY

You can reboot the center display using the controls on the steering wheel.

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek forward and volume down button for 10 seconds.

Voice Interaction

WHAT IS VOICE INTERACTION

Voice Interaction allows you to control vehicle features using conversational requests.

SETTING THE WAKE WORD

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Ford Assistant**.
3. Switch **Listen for Wake Word** on.
4. Press **Preferred Wake Word**.
5. Press a setting.

BEGINNING A VOICE INTERACTION

Say the selected wake word followed by your command.



You can also press the button on the steering wheel to begin a voice interaction. A tone sounds before you can say your command.

Note: *If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.*

VOICE INTERACTION EXAMPLES

General Examples

Command	Result
Start Over.	The system resets the current voice interaction.
Cancel.	The system ends the current voice interaction.
Next Page.	The system goes to the next page.
Previous Page.	The system goes to the previous page.
Help.	The system displays a list of available commands you can use on the current screen.

Entertainment Examples

Command	Result
Play The Beatles.	The system plays the selected music.
Show music by The Beatles.	The system shows the selected music.
Tune to FM 101.9.	The system tunes the radio to 101.9 FM.

Voice Interaction

Climate Examples

Command	Result
Set the temperature to low.	The system sets the temperature to the minimum.
Set the temperature to 22°C (72°F).	The system sets the temperature to 22°C (72°F).

Phone Examples

Command	Result
Call Henry.	The system calls Henry using your connected device.
Dial (phone number).	The system dials the selected phone number.
Send a text message to Henry.	The system begins a dictated text message.
Read my message from Henry.	The system reads you the most recent message from Henry.

Apps Examples

Command	Result
Mobile Apps.	The system prompts you to say the name of an app to start it on the system.
List Mobile Apps.	The system will list all of the currently available Mobile Apps.
Find Mobile Apps	The system will search and connect to compatible apps running on your mobile device.

Navigation Examples

Command	Result
Say the address that you're looking for, like 'The Queen's Walk, London'.	The system begins guided navigation to the address.
Where is ____	The system searches for the requested point of interest.
Show me directions to Oakwood Boulevard and Pelham Road.	The system shows directions to the selected intersection.
Cancel route.	The system ends guided navigation to the destination.

Alexa Built-In

WHAT IS ALEXA BUILT-IN

Alexa Built-In allows you to use Alexa in your vehicle for auto-specific use cases on the road and gives you access to an ever-evolving number of skills that help to make your life more productive, entertaining, and connected while using your vehicle.

ALEXA BUILT-IN REQUIREMENTS

To use Alexa, all of the following must occur:

- Your vehicle modem is enabled.
- You are signed in to an existing Amazon account.
- Vehicle location services are enabled.
- Vehicle connectivity and vehicle data sharing is enabled.

SIGNING IN TO YOUR ACCOUNT



Press the button in the status bar and follow the on-screen prompts.

To sign in using the settings menu:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Get Started**.
4. Sign in to your account by either scanning the QR code or entering the on-screen code into the Amazon website.
5. Once signed in, follow the on-screen prompts.
6. When complete, the vehicle informs you that Alexa is ready to be used in the vehicle.

Signing Out of Your Account

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Sign Out**.

USING ALEXA BUILT-IN

To use Alexa, say “Alexa” or press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel and then say “Alexa” to invoke Alexa to start listening.

Note: *If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.*

You can use Alexa for the following and more:

- Entertainment.
- Hands-free calling.
- Traffic and navigation.
- Vehicle controls.
- Smart home device control.
- Weather and news information.

ALEXA BUILT-IN SETTINGS

Enabling the Wake Word

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Switch **Listen for Wake Word** on or off.

Note: *If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.*

Contact List

Displays a list of connected phones and contact sharing status for each phone.

To change the contact sharing status:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Contact List**.

Alexa Built-In

4. Enable or disable sharing for each phone.

Note: *You can share contacts from more than one phone at a time.*

Things to Try

Learn more about what you can do with Alexa by browsing the things to try.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Things to Try**.

Phone

PHONE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

CONNECTING YOUR PHONE

1. Make sure **Bluetooth®** is enabled on your device.
2. Press **Add phone** on the touchscreen.

Note: A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your cell phone.

3. Select your vehicle on your cell phone.

Note: A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.

4. Confirm the number on your cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your cell phone.

5. Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

Note: If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings on the center display to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting at any time.

PHONE MENU

This menu becomes available after pairing a phone.

Recent Call list

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

Contacts

Display a smart search form to look up your contacts. Use the List button to alphabetically sort your contacts.

Favorites

Display the list of favorite contacts that are set up on your phone.

Messaging

Displays the list of text messages to read, listen to, or respond to.

Email

Displays the list of emails to read, listen to, or respond to.

Phone List

Display the list of paired or connected devices that you can select.

Note: Up to 12 devices can be stored.

Do not disturb

Reject incoming calls and switch ring tones and alerts off.

Phone Keypad

Directly dial a number.

Phone

Voice Control

Press the button and say a command to use the Google or Siri voice assistant available on your connected phone to access supported features.

Note: *Some features under the phone menu may not be available if the feature is not supported through the phone.*

Phone

MAKING AND RECEIVING A PHONE CALL

Making Calls

To call a number in your contacts, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your recent calls, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Call list	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your favorites, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Favourites	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.

To accept the call, select:

Menu Item
Accept

Note: You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.

To reject the call, select:

Menu Item
Reject

Ignore the call by doing nothing. The system logs it as a missed call.

During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the contacts name and number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:

Phone

Item	
End call	Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel.
Keypad	Press this to access the phone keypad.
Mute	You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.
Handsfree off	Transfer the phone call audio to the cell phone or back to the touchscreen.

SWITCHING TEXT MESSAGE NOTIFICATION ON AND OFF

IOS

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on or off.

Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile.
5. Switch text message notification on or off.

CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE

1. Make sure **Bluetooth®** is enabled on your device.
2. Press **Add phone** on the touchscreen.

Note: A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your device.

3. Select your vehicle on your device.

Note: A number appears on your device and on the touchscreen.

4. Confirm that the number on your device matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your device.

The **Bluetooth®** word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by **Bluetooth SIG, Inc.** and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

PLAYING MEDIA USING BLUETOOTH®



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

1. Connect your device.

2. Press the audio system tile on the touchscreen.

3. Press **Sources**.

4. Press **Bluetooth**.



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.



Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous

tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.

APP PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

APP REQUIREMENTS

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges. We also recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app. Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system. Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

ENABLING APPS ON AN IOS DEVICE

1. Press **Apps** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Mobile Apps Help**.

3. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via **Bluetooth®** or with a USB cable.

Note: Some apps can run through **Apple CarPlay** if it is enabled.

4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.

Note: The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

ENABLING APPS ON AN ANDROID DEVICE

1. Press **Apps** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Mobile Apps Help**.

3. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via **Bluetooth®**.

Note: Some apps can run through **Android Auto** if it is enabled.

4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.

Note: The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.

5. Access the system applications.

6. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Note: Some devices could lose the ability to play music over USB when **Mobile Apps** are enabled.

SWITCHING APPLE CARPLAY ON AND OFF

Enabling Apple CarPlay with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Apps

Note: Selecting "Enable Wireless CarPlay" on your device will prepare the device for wireless carplay when you re-enter the vehicle.

Enabling Wireless Apple CarPlay

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Disabling Apple CarPlay

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Phone List**.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press **Disable**.

Re-Enabling Apple CarPlay

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Phone List**.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press **Connect to Apple CarPlay**.

SWITCHING ANDROID AUTO ON AND OFF

Enabling Android Auto with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.

Enabling Wireless Android Auto

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Note: Certain Android Devices do not support Android Auto Wireless. Please check your Android OS version for compatibility.

Disabling Android Auto

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Phone List**.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press **Disable**.

Re-Enabling Android Auto

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Phone List**.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press **Connect to Android Auto**.

Navigation

ACCESSING NAVIGATION

1. Access Navigation by pressing the map on the left side of the home screen.

Note: *As the driver, be aware of all local traffic regulations and road attributes, and operate your vehicle in a safe and legal manner.*

NAVIGATION MAP UPDATES

To update your Map data over Wi-Fi, your vehicle must be connected to a Wi-Fi access point. For USB updates and other details, contact an authorized Ford dealer.

Note: *If you find map data errors, you may report them by going to www.here.com/mapcreator.*

ADJUSTING THE MAP

ZOOMING THE MAP IN AND OUT

You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the screen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the screen and bring them together to zoom out.

CHANGING THE FORMAT OF THE MAP

Press the map format button on the left side of the map screen to toggle between the available formats.

Note: *Available formats are 2D, 3D and North Up.*

SETTING A DESTINATION

SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE TEXT ENTRY SCREEN

1. Press Where To? at the top of the screen.
2. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
3. Enter your destination using the keyboard.
4. Press Search.
5. Select a destination from the list.
6. Press the Go! button to begin navigation.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE MAP SCREEN

1. Press on the map to trigger the roaming and viewing screen.
2. Press on the map again to place a pin at that location.

Note: *Information about the location of the pin appears on the screen.*

3. Press the **Go!** button to begin navigation to the pin.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A PREDICTIVE DESTINATION

Press the predicted destination card on the screen to navigate to it. These appear when the navigation system has learned your driving habits.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A RECENT DESTINATION

1. Press Where To? at the top of the screen.
2. Press the Recents tile.
3. Select a destination from the list.

Navigation

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A SAVED DESTINATION

1. Press Where To? at the top of the screen.
2. Press Saved Places.
3. Select a saved destination.

Note: Press the star icon next when viewing location details to save the location.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A POINT OF INTEREST

1. Press and hold on a point of interest icon on the map.

Note: Information about the location of the point of interest appears on the screen.

2. Press the **Go!** button to begin navigation to the point of interest.

WAYPOINTS

ADDING A WAYPOINT



Press the Add Waypoint button when in an active navigation session.

1. Enter your waypoint on the keyboard.
2. Press Search.
3. Select a waypoint from the list.
4. Press Add to Trip.

EDITING WAYPOINTS

1. Press the waypoint you would like to edit.
2. Select an option to reorder or delete the waypoint.

ROUTE GUIDANCE

ADJUSTING THE GUIDANCE PROMPT VOLUME

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

REPEATING AN INSTRUCTION

Press the turn indicator to hear the last voice instruction.

CANCELING ROUTE GUIDANCE



Press the button to cancel route guidance to the selected location.

TRAILER TOWING NAVIGATION

The system calculates the best route for trailer towing by avoiding dangerous road conditions based on the dimensions of your trailer.

Switching Trailer Towing Navigation On and Off

1. Press the **Navigation** button on the feature bar.
2. Press the **Menu** button.
3. Press **Trailer Routing**.
4. Switch **Trailer-optimized Routing** on or off.

Entering Trailer Dimensions

1. Press the **Navigation** button on the feature bar.
2. Press the **Menu** button.
3. Press **Trailer Routing**.
4. Press **Towing Menu**.

Navigation

5. Press **Add Trailer**.
6. Follow the instructions on the screen to enter the type and dimensions of the trailer into the system.

Navigation Alerts

Alerts will appear on the navigation map while driving. An orange alert triangle indicates you should proceed with caution. When not following active guidance to a destination, a red alert triangle may appear and indicates you should avoid the road and find a detour.

Driver Identification

HOW DOES DRIVER IDENTIFICATION WORK

Driver identification allows drivers to log into the vehicle using a specific user ID or profile.

SIGNING IN AS A DRIVER

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Driver ID**.
3. Select or add a driver as necessary.
4. Follow the screen instructions and log in.

Configuring Your Driver ID Avatar

1. Log in with your user ID.
2. Press your avatar image.
3. Select the settings you prefer.

DRIVER IDENTIFICATION – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVER IDENTIFICATION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Driver not found.	The user ID used is not found in database.
Wrong PIN or password	The wrong PIN or password was entered.
Driver authentication time out. Unable to establish connection to the cloud.	When logging in, the vehicle is not able to establish a connection to the cloud.
Unable to establish connection to the cloud. Try again.	The vehicle is not able to establish a connection to the cloud.

Vehicle Software Updates

This introduces new features and provides updates to the vehicle's software systems. Make sure to switch Automatic Updates on, set a recurring update schedule and connect your vehicle to Wi-Fi. Updates could take longer when not connected to Wi-Fi or could not download at all. See

Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network (page 548).

Your vehicle may be able to receive drivable software updates, non-drivable software updates or both. Drivable software updates happen during normal vehicle usage and require limited input from you. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update.

Most non-drivable updates complete in less than 30 minutes, although some updates could take up to a few hours.

You are notified of vehicle software update status on to the top left of touchscreen. You can also see the notifications in your connected device. See **Software Update Indicators** (page 573).

Vehicle Software Update Requirements

Non-drivable software updates do not install if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is running.
- Your vehicle is switched on.
- Your vehicle is not parked.
- The 12 V battery charge is too low.
- The hazard indicators are switched on.
- The alarm is sounding.
- The doors are open.
- The parking lamps are switched on.
- You are pressing the brake pedal.
- An emergency call is in process.
- Your vehicle is in limp home mode.

Vehicle Software Update Limitations

Once you begin a non-drivable software update, you cannot:

- Cancel the update.
- Enter your vehicle unless you have a key blade.
 - You can open the doors using the mechanical latch if child locks are not on.
- Use the remote control to lock, unlock or start your vehicle.
- Drive your vehicle.
- Charge your vehicle.
 - Charging resumes once the update completes.

SOFTWARE UPDATE SETTINGS

To access the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Software Updates**.

You can do the following in the Software Updates menu:

- Switch Automatic Updates on and off.
- Schedule and install software updates.
- View software update details.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

Switching Automatic Updates On and Off

Your vehicle may come with Automatic Updates switched on. To make sure your vehicle always has the latest software, which could include security or other enhancements, we do not recommend switching Automatic Updates off.

Vehicle Software Updates

Note: Software updates require approval to download or install with Automatic Updates switched off.

Scheduling and Installing Software Updates

Scheduling Software Updates

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Recurring Schedule**.
2. Select the days and time for updates.
3. Press **Save**.

The more days that updates are scheduled, the more frequently your vehicle installs new updates. We recommend selecting a time you normally do not need your vehicle, such as overnight.

Some updates require your vehicle to be switched off.

Note: The schedule you set is recurring. If Automatic Updates is on, every time a non-drivable update is available, it installs on this schedule unless you change it. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update, with an option to reschedule it.

Installing Software Updates

Using the Status Bar

1. Press a Software Update indicator on your touchscreen when it appears.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Using the Touchscreen

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Update Details**.
2. Press **Update Now**.

Viewing Software Update Details

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Update Details**.

SOFTWARE UPDATE INDICATORS

You can press the indicators in the status bar when they appear for more information.



Vehicle software update reminder, schedule required, confirmation of default schedule required, or consent required.



Vehicle software update canceled, update not successful, or precondition not met.



Vehicle software update successful.

Vehicle System Reset

PERFORMING A SYSTEM RESET

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Reset**.

You can perform multiple resets from this menu.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

AUTHORIZED DEALER DIRECTORY

Name	Telephone	Address	City
GİZERLER	(322) 346 80 80	Levent Mah. Eski Ceyhan Yolu Üzeri 5. Km No: 210 Yüreğir/ Adana	Adana
OTOKOÇ ADANA	(322) 441 17 17	Mersin Yolu Üzeri 9. Km Sarı Hamzalı Köyü Mevkii Merkez/ Adana	Adana
İNTERTEKS	(416) 227 24 01	Adıyaman Gölbaşı Karayolu Üzeri Küçük Sanayi Sitesi Karşısı Merkez/Adıyaman	Adıyaman
GLS GELİŞİM OTOMOTİV	(382) 245 44 14	Bahçesaray Mahallesi 135. Cadde No: 216 Aksaray	Aksaray
BAŞER	(312) 269 80 00	Ayaş Yolu Çatalkara Sokak No:199 Sincan/Ankara	Ankara
KARTAŞ	(312) 583 85 60	Tevfik İleri Mh. Özal Bulvarı No: 55 Pursaklar/Ankara	Ankara
OTOKOÇ ANKARA	(312) 207 47 00	Eskişehir Yolu 12. Km No:350 Ümitköy/Ankara	Ankara
TAN OTO	(312) 591 34 34	Fatih Sultan Mehmet Bulvarı No:252 Macunköy,Yenima- halle/Ankara	Ankara
TUR OTO	(312) 232 32 72	Celal Bayar Blv. Ali Suavi Sok. No: 5 Maltepe/Ankara	Ankara
BİLALLER	(242) 259 33 70	Sarısu Mah. 121. Sk. No:30/A- B Konyaaltı/Antalya	Antalya
OTOKOÇ ALANYA	(242) 515 13 80	Çevreyolu Üzeri No: 1 Tosmur Beldesi Alanya/Antalya	Antalya
OTOKOÇ ANTALYA	(242) 340 26 85	Altınova Sinan Mah. Havaalanı Yolu Üzeri Merkez/Antalya	Antalya
KAHYAOĞULLARI	(256) 633 10 01	Söke Yolu Üzeri 3. Km Kuşa- dası/Aydın	Aydın
ZAFER	(256) 219 40 00	Aydın-İzmir Karayolu 1.Km (Aymas Bitişiği) Merkez/Aydın	Aydın

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Name	Telephone	Address	City
AKOTO EDREMİT	(266) 374 06 65	İzmir Yolu Üzeri 2. Km. Ilıcalar Mevkii Edremit/Balıkesir	Balıkesir
AKOTO Merkez	(266) 283 00 10	İzmir Yolu 8. Km Osb Kavşağı Merkez/Balıkesir	Balıkesir
MUSLUBAŞLAR	(266) 721 21 21	600 Evler Mah. Atatürk Cad. No: 95 Bandırma/Balıkesir	Balıkesir
OĞUZCAN	(488) 218 02 23	Gültepe Mahallesi Demokrasi Bulvarı No: 401 Merkez/Batman	Batman
MEÇİKOĞULLARI	(248) 317 10 70	Burdur-Antalya Karayolu Üzeri Atilla Mah. No: 290 Bucak/Burdur	Burdur
OTOKOÇ BURSA	(224) 270 39 00	29 Ekim Mah. İzmir Yolu Cad. No:380/A Nilüfer/Bursa	Bursa
SÖNMEZ KOÇ	(224) 261 22 44	Yeni Yalova Yolu 9. Km Sönmez Asf. Karşısı Merkez/Bursa	Bursa
ARSLANLAR	(286) 263 06 25	İzmir Yolu 5. Km Merkez/Çanakkale	Çanakkale
EVLÜCE OTO	(364) 235 02 12	Ankara Asfaltı 7. Km Merkez/Çorum	Çorum
YARGÜL	(258) 371 23 79	Akçeşme Mevkii Menderes Bulvarı No: 161 Gümüşler/Denizli	Denizli
DİYARBAKIR OTO	(412) 255 04 45	Şanlıurfa Yolu Üzeri 4 Km Merkez/Diyarbakır	Diyarbakır
GÖRÜR	(380) 537 53 15	Taşköprü Köyü E-5 Mahallesi No: 55 Düzce	Düzce
TUZCULAR	(284) 763 11 23	Ford Plaza İstanbul Yolu 7. Km Merkez/Edirne	Edirne
ÇETİNKAYALAR	(424) 247 40 31	Malatya Yolu 8. Km Baskil Yol Kavşağı Merkez/Elazığ	Elazığ
CİNDİLLİ OTOMOTİV	(442) 242 00 13	Tortum Yolu Üzeri 3. Km Cindilli Ford Plaza Erzurum	Erzurum

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Name	Telephone	Address	City
OTOKOÇ ESKİŞEHİR	(222) 335 10 10	Şirintepe Mh. İsmet İnönü 2. Cad. No: 64 Tepebaşı Merkez/ Eskişehir	Eskişehir
DOĞANLAR	(342) 323 23 13	Mücahitler Mahallesi Sani Konukoğlu Bulvarı No:28/A Şehitkamil/Gaziantep	Gaziantep
OVALI ANTAKYA	(326) 221 61 65	İskenderun Yolu Üzeri 5. Km Antakya/Hatay	Hatay
OVALI İSKEN- DERUN	(326) 618 38 38	İsmet İnönü Mah.İbrahim Karaoğluanoğlu Cad.No: 38 Hatay/İskenderun	Hatay
SÜRKİT OTOM.	(476) 210 11 38	Söğütlü Mevkii Çevre Yolu Üzeri Ford Plaza Merkez/Iğdır	Iğdır
ERGİN	(324) 327 10 10	Kuzeykent mah Ali Kaya Mutlu Cad No:172/11 Yenişehir/ Mersin	İçel
ATILGAN SANC- AKTEPE	(216) 498 98 00	Veysel Karani Mahallesi, Aşık Reyhani Caddesi No: 14 Sanc- aktepe/İstanbul	İstanbul
AYDOĞANLAR	(212) 665 84 84	Yenibosna Merkez Mah. Kavak Sokak Ser Plaza No: 3/1-2, Bodrum Kat Bahçelievler/ İstanbul	İstanbul
ÇETAŞ B.ÇEKMECE	(212) 863 84 10	Mimarsinan Merkez Mah.E-5 Londra Asfaltı No:57 B. Çekmece İstanbul	İstanbul
ÇETAŞ MAHMUTBEY	(212) 454 40 00	Göztepe Mah. Rahim Sok. No: 2-4 Bağcılar/İstanbul	İstanbul
GÜRBAŞLAR	(216) 465 33 61	Göztepe Mah. Atatürk Cad. No:12 Migros karşısi A.Hisarı/ İstanbul	İstanbul
KAR OTOMOTİV	(212) 612 49 49	Defterdar Mah. Fethi Çelebi Cad. No: 23/1 Eyüp/İstanbul	İstanbul
KELEŞLER	(212) 417 39 15	Uluyol Cad. No: 25/A Bayrampaşa/İstanbul	İstanbul

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Name	Telephone	Address	City
KENT OTOMOTİV	(212) 423 53 00	Saadetdere Mah. 68. Sok. No: 40 Esenyurt/İstanbul	İstanbul
OTOKOÇ İSTANBUL İSTİNYE	(212) 229 95 55	İstinye Mah. Sarıyer Cad. No: 70/C Yeniköy/İstanbul	İstanbul
OTOKOÇ İSTANBUL ATAŞEHİR	(216) 574 38 32	Kayışdağı Cd. No: 3 Flora Plaza Küçükbakkalköy, Ataşehir/İstanbul	İstanbul
OTOKOÇ İSTANBUL TAŞDELEN	(216) 430 12 00	Çamlık Mah. Çobandere Mevkii Sırrı Çelik Bulvarı No: 9A/9B, Şile Otobanı 11. Km Taşdelen, Çekmeköy/İstanbul	İstanbul
TEPRETOĞULLARI	(216) 545 03 33	Acıbadem Mah Köftüncü Sokak No: 1/3 Kadıköy/İstanbul	İstanbul
ARKAS İZMİR	(232) 399 34 34	Anadolu Cad. No: 687/C Karsiyaka/İzmir Karşıyaka/İzmir	İzmir
ÇETAŞ İZMİR	(232) 478 07 07	Ankara Cad. Naldöken Mah. No: 319 Bornova/İzmir	İzmir
İZKAR	(232) 254 38 00	Akçay Cad. No: 49 Gaziemir/İzmir	İzmir
OTOKOÇ İZMİR	(232) 498 90 00	Kazım Dirik Mah. 296. Sokak No: 1 Bornova/İzmir	İzmir
KEMAK	(344) 236 55 99	Erkenez Mahallesi Recep Tayyip Erdoğan Bulvarı No: 135/A Kahramanmaraş	K. Maraş
METİNLER	(352) 224 54 54	Konaklar Mevkii Sivas Cad. No: 244 Kayseri	Kayseri
ÜNAL	(352) 311 55 00	Anbar Mahallesi Osman Kavuncu Bulvarı No: 498 Anbar, Melikgazi/Kayseri	Kayseri
ÇANGAR	(392) 227 05 55	Soyak Evleri Mevkii, Küçükkaymaklı Mah. Şehit Mustafa Ruso Cad. Lefkoşe/Kıbrıs	Kıbrıs

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Name	Telephone	Address	City
ESOTO	(262) 335 43 15	Sanayi Mah. D-130 Yanyol Cad. No: 79 Merkez/Kocaeli	Kocaeli
OTOKOÇ KONYA	(332) 255 42 33	İstanbul Yolu Üzeri Sancak Mah. Büyükkırmak Sk. No:1 Selçuklu Merkez/Konya	Konya
OTOKOÇ KÜTAHYA	(274) 225 03 50	Eskişehir Yolu 3. Km No: 29/ 1 Kütahya	Kütahya
ILICAK	(422) 444 59 55	1.OSB Mahallesi Havaalanı Yolu 2.Cadde No: 14/1 Yeşilyurt/MALATYA	Malatya
ÇETAŞ MANİSA	(236) 233 84 00	Güzelyurt Mah. Menemen Cad. No:15/A Manisa	Manisa
ÇETAŞ SALİHLİ	(236) 716 16 00	Ankara Asfaltı 3. km. Salihli/ Manisa	Manisa
NAS OTO	(482) 312 04 44	Havaalanı Yanı 47100 Merkez/ Mardin	Mardin
HELVACIOĞLU BODRUM	(252) 358 68 38	Açık Kırklar Mevkii Atatürk Bulvarı No: 289 Konacık, Bodrum/Muğla	Muğla
HELVACIOĞLU FETHİYE	(252) 646 57 77	Karaçulha Belediyesi Cumhuriyet Cad. No: 199 Fethiye/Muğla	Muğla
HELVACIOĞLU Merkez	(252) 212 80 00	Orhaniye Mah. Uğur Mumcu Bulvarı No: 17 Merkez/Muğla	Muğla
ALTAŞ	(452) 234 19 20	Cumhuriyet Mah. Mustafa Kemal Bulvarı No: 102 Merkez/ Ordu	Ordu
ATILGAN RİZE	(464) 226 01 85	Cumhuriyet Çay Fabrikası Karşısı Gündoğdu Rize	Rize
AKGÜN	(264) 276 72 10	Hanlıköy Mahallesi Eskişehir Caddesi No: 93/A Arifiye/ Sakarya	Sakarya
OTOKOÇ SAMSUN	(362) 266 61 12	Samsun-Trabzon Karayolu 10. Km Kutlukent Tekkeköy/ Samsun	Samsun

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Name	Telephone	Address	City
ŞANLIURFA OTO	(414) 316 62 27	Mardin Yolu 3.Km Jandarma Karşısı Merkez/Şanlıurfa	Şanlıurfa
DÖNÜŞÜM	(486) 616 76 16	Nusaybin Yolu Üzeri Cizre Çıkışı 8. Km Habur Tesisleri Yanı Nerme Mevkii Çavuşlu Köyü, Cizre/Şırnak	Şırnak
VOLKAN Çorlu	(282) 685 42 90	E-5 Karayolu Üzeri Önerler Mevkii Mücavir Mah. İstanbul Cad. 43/A, Çorlu/Tekirdağ	Tekirdağ
VOLKAN Tekirdağ	(282) 293 38 82	Hürriyet Mah. Sami Efendi Sok. No:2 Süleymanpaşa/ Tekirdağ	Tekirdağ
ORUÇLAR	(356) 214 41 43	Yeniyurt Mah. Vali Zekai Gümüşdiş Blv. No: 55/A Tokat	Tokat
TUNALAR	(462) 248 12 00	Tunalar Ford Plaza Yıldızlı/ Trabzon	Trabzon
AKKÖPRÜLÜ	(434) 217 17 17	Şabaniye Mah. İpekyolu 4. Km Merkez/Van	Van
ERDEĞER	(226) 351 73 50	Kılıç Köyü Şakşak Mevkii Çiftlikköy/Yalova	Yalova
AZİM OTO	(372) 323 98 40	Muammer Aksoy Cad. No: 38 Karadeniz Ereğli/Zonguldak	Zonguldak

Service Intervals - Turkey

SERVICE INTERVALS

Model	Service Interval (Whichever Occurs First)	
• All passenger cars. • Ranger • Tourneo Connect. • Tourneo Courier. • Transit Connect. • Transit Courier.	1 year	15,000 km (9,500 mi)
• Tourneo Custom. • Transit. • Transit Custom.	1 year	20,000 km (12,500 mi)

ROLLOVER WARNING



WARNING: Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.



WARNING: Vehicles with a higher center of gravity (utility and four-wheel drive vehicles) handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity (passenger cars). Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt steering in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously increases the risk of losing control of your vehicle, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.



WARNING: Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE COPYRIGHT ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Your vehicle could have components that use open source software. For additional information, visit <http://corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html>.

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Your vehicle could have components that transmit and receive radio waves and are therefore subject to government regulation.

These components must accept any interference received, including interference that could cause undesired operation. For certification labels and declarations of conformity, visit www.wirelessconformity.ford.com.

REACH

We are committed to promoting the responsible manufacturing, handling and use of our products and support the underlying goals of **REACH**, a European Union regulation that concerns the registration, evaluation, authorisation and restriction of chemicals.

We specifically support Regulation EC 1907/2006 Article 33(1) that relates to substances of very high concern which appear on the current list for authorisation.

If these substances do exist in a product, it is important to guarantee their safe use so the regulation is designed to enable you to take any appropriate risk management measures.

Customer Information

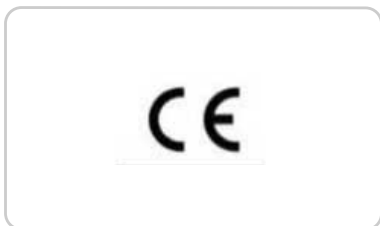
To find out more about the **REACH** directive, search **REACH** on the local Ford website.

Note: To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>.

RADIO FREQUENCY CERTIFICATION LABELS

ANTENNAS

European Union EU



Moldova



Serbia



South Africa



Ukraine



Customer Information

United Kingdom



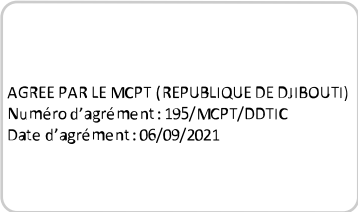
BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
SRR5 BLIS Corner Radar	Aptiv	F5TR

Argentina



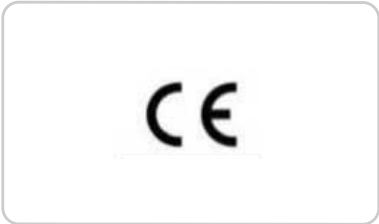
Djibouti



Brazil



Europe Union EU



Customer Information

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-X0E

Mexico

IFETEL: RCPAPF520-0480

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR00030033ANRT2021
Date d'agrément : 16/09/2021

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – FSTR.

Paraguay



Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0985/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément : 24/08/2021

2020-10-I-0753

Customer Information

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

Taiwan



South Africa



Thailand

- (1) เครื่องใช้หรือผลิตภัณฑ์นี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของ กทท.
- (2) เครื่องใช้หรือผลิตภัณฑ์นี้ได้รับการแก้ไขข้อบกพร่องที่ทางออกต้องพินิจพิจารณาว่าจะปล่อยสู่สภาพของมนุษย์จากการใช้หรือใช้ผลิตภัณฑ์นี้ขณะการปฏิบัติงานใช้หรือผลิตภัณฑ์นี้ประกอบ

Ukraine

South Korea



Customer Information

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



ER19231/23
United Arab Emirates



United Kingdom



This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

United States and Canada



WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: L2CF5TR

IC: 3432A-F5TR

Vietnam

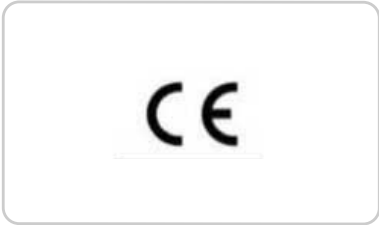
Ford Vietnam
A00182015



Customer Information

BODY CONTROL MODULE

European Union EU



Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מסמך פסורד התקשורת: 51-87448
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את חבונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי חובנה, החלפת אנטנה פקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור פסורד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות.

Malaysia



HIDF16000009

Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément:
MR00034975ANRT2022

Date d'agrément: 21/10/2022

Serbia



Customer Information

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

Ukraine



UA.TR.028

South Africa



United Kingdom

**UK
CA**

United States and Canada



WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

Taiwan



CCAB22LP1250T4

CCAB22LP1260T7

FCC ID: M3NA2C780107

IC: 7812A-A2C780107

Customer Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

CRUISE CONTROL MODULE

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
MRR3 Medium Range Radar	Aptiv	F3TR

Argentina



Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 059/DDTIC/2020
Date d'agrément : 01/10/2020

Brazil

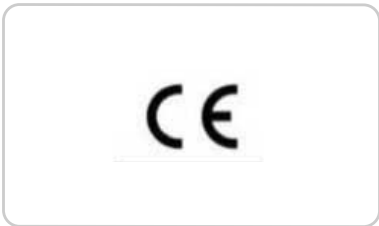


EAC Marking - Russia, Belarus, Kazakhstan



Customer Information

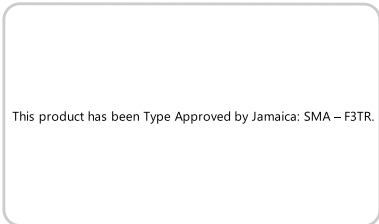
Europe Union EU



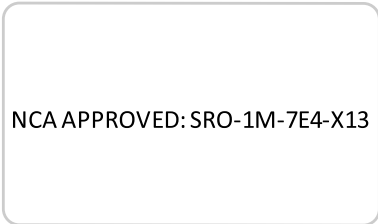
Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מסעם משרד התקשורת: 51-82320
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בזה לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תדנתו, התחלת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אישורת לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, כשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות.

Jamaica



Ghana



Malaysia



Independent State Of Samoa



HIDF16000009

Customer Information

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0835/ARE/2020
Date d'agrément : 31/08/2020

Pakistan



Mexico

IFT: RCPAPF320-0479

Moldova



Paraguay



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément:
MRO0030034ANRT2021

Date d'agrément: 16/09/2021

NR: 2020-10-I-0752

Sierra Leone



Customer Information

TAN: 2021-002-0028

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

R-C-1Ap-F3TR

Taiwan



South Africa



Thailand

- (1) เครื่องใช้โทรทัศน์และอุปกรณ์อื่น ๆ มีเครื่องหมายแสดงข้อพิจารณาของ กทช.
- (2) เครื่องใช้วิทยุคมนาคมมีระดับการคุ้มครองแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้าสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานความถี่ของสํานักงานการสื่อสารแห่งประเทศไทย
- รายการอื่น ๆ เครื่องใช้วิทยุคมนาคมที่คณะกรรมการกิจการกระจายเสียงและกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติประกาศกำหนด

South Korea



Ukraine



Customer Information

Unites Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



ER19344/23
United Arab Emirates



United Kingdom



United States and Canada



WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: L2CF3TR
IC: 3432A-F3TR

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Zambia



ZICTA

ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2020/9/69

Customer Information

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS

Argentina

CNC: H-16366

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES



European Union EU

CE

CNC: H-24101

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES

Jamaica

Brazil



This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – M3N-A2C931423

Customer Information

Paraguay



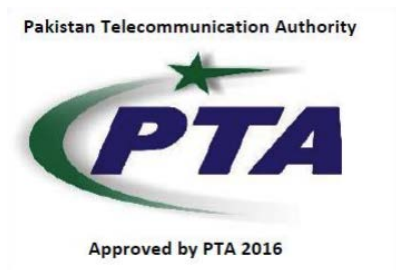
NR: 2017-10-I-0000334

NR: 2018-07-I-000317

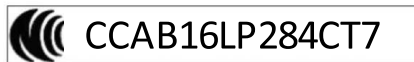
NR: 2016-9-I-000220

NR: 2016-9-I-000223

Pakistan



Taiwan



Customer Information

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER37535/15

DEALER No:
DA37380/15

TRA
REGISTERED NO: ER46754/16
DEALER NO: DA37380/15

United Kingdom

TRA
REGISTERED NO: ER49357/16
DEALER NO: DA37380/15



United States and Canada



WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

TRA
REGISTERED No: ER47690/16
DEALER No: DA37380/15

FCC ID: M3N-A3C054338

FCC ID: M3N-A3C054339

FCC ID: N5F-A08TAA

FCC ID: N5F-A08TDA

FCC ID: M3N-A2C931423

FCC ID: M3N-A2C931426

IC: 7812A-A3C054338

Customer Information

IC: 7812A-A3C054339
IC: 3248A-A08TAA
IC: 7812A-A2C931423
IC: 7812A-A2C931426

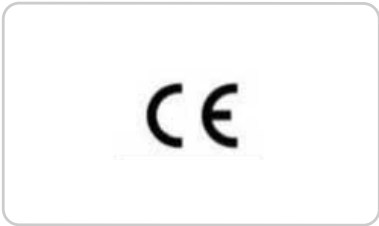
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

RADIO TRANSCEIVER MODULE

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Radio Transceiver Module (RTM)	Aptiv	FO2-RX433UDA

Europe Union EU



Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמת מטעם משרד התקשורת: 54-88227
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בן ידי לשנות את תכונותיו האלקטרוניות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תכונות, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אישורות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית. כלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלקטרוניות.

Malaysia



Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – FO2-RX433UDA

Customer Information

HIDF16000009

Moldova



South Africa



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 24102 ANRT 2020
Date d'agrément : 18/05/2020

Taiwan



CCAB22LP1370T1

Thailand

เครื่องหมายการค้าและสัญลักษณ์นี้ มีความสำคัญและเกี่ยวข้องกับการขนส่งทางบก

Serbia



U011 23

Ukraine



UA.TR.028

Customer Information

United Kingdom



United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



ER20328/23
United Arab Emirates



SYNC

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
SYNC	Ford	SYNC-G4 SYNC-G4L

Customer Information

Argentina

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: C-24008



08658-19-01505

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção
contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar
interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: C-24009

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément : 124/DDTIC/2019

Date d'agrément : 07/08/2019

Brazil



08657-19-01505

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção
contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar
interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

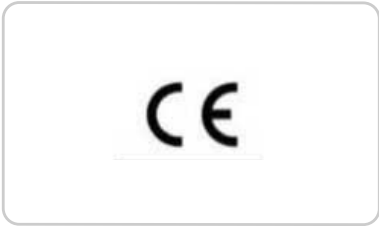
AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément : 125/DDTIC/2019

Date d'agrément : 07/08/2019

Customer Information

European Union EU



Model: SYNC-G4L
Sertifikat Nomor: **81116**/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493



Ghana

NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-182

NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-180

Indonesia

Model: SYNC-G4
Sertifikat Nomor: 80700/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493



Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by
Jamaica: SMA – SYNC-G4.



Customer Information

Malaysia



HIDF16000009

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE

Numéro d'agrément : 0692/ARE/2018

Date d'agrément : 08/08/2019

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0691/ARE/2018
Date d'agrément : 08/08/2019

Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
N° D'AGRÈMENT: MR 20608 ANRT 2019
07 AOUT 2019

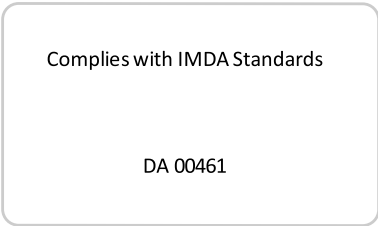
AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
N° D'AGRÈMENT: MR 20606 ANRT 2019
07 AOUT 2019

Customer Information

Pakistan



Singapore



Paraguay



South Africa



2020-03-I-00192

2020-03-I-00193

Serbia



Customer Information

South Korea



MSIP-R-C-FDM-SYNCG4



CCAB20LP0300T1



MSIP-R-C-FDM-SYNCG4L

Taiwan



CCAB20LP0290T8

Ukraine



UA.TR.028

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TDRA

ER74903/19
United Arab Emirates



Customer Information

TDRA

ER74902/19
United Arab Emirates



United Kingdom

**UK
CA**

United States and Canada



WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4

FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4L

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4L

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Zambia



ZICTA

ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2019/11/41

Customer Information



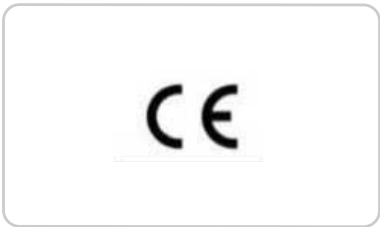
TELEMATICS CONTROL UNIT

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Telematics Control Unit	Ford	FNV3-B6

China

CMIIT ID: 2023CJ1792

European Union EU



Malaysia



Customer Information

HIDF16000009

NR: 2023-01-I-0047

Mexico



Serbia



South Africa

Paraguay



South Korea



Customer Information

R-C-FDM-FNV3B6ROW

Taiwan



CCA235G0042T9

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA REGISTERED No:

ER19896/23

DEALER No:

DA83047/19

United Kingdom



United States and Canada



WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: KMH-14H317-NA1

IC: 1422A-14H317NA1

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM SENSORS

Argentina

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: H-28035

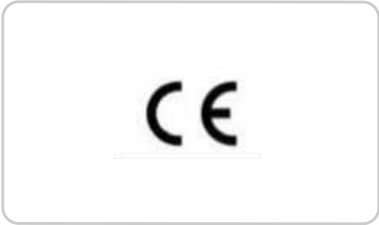
Brazil

ANATEL
Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações

Customer Information

13309-22-08001

European Union EU



The RED 2014/53/EU (replacing R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC on 13 June 2016) explicitly states that instructions for intentional radiators include reference to "(a) frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates; and (b) maximum radio-frequency power transmitted in the frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates," in addition to carrying over the general operational instruction and Declaration of Conformity inclusion requirements from the R&TTE Directive.

Hereby, Schrader Electronics Ltd. declares that the radio equipment type BG2BP4 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

http://www.tpmseuroshop.com/documents/declaration_conformities

f=433.92MHz

P<10mW (e.i.r.p)

Schrader Electronics Ltd. 11 Technology Park, Belfast Road, Antrim BT41 1QS, Northern Ireland United Kingdom.

Israel

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - BG2BP4.

1. מספר אישור התאמה מסעם משרד התקשורת: 51-86230
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלקטרוניות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלקטרוטיות.

Customer Information

Malaysia



HIDF16000009

Mexico

IFT: RLVSCBG22-2502

Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément:
MR00034968ANRT2022

Date d'agrément: 21/12/2022

Paraguay



NR: 2022-05-I-0000331

Serbia



Customer Information

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards
DA 00461

South Africa



South Korea



MSIP-R-C-SRD-BG2BP4

Taiwan



CCAB22LP0730T0

Thailand

- (1) เครื่องใช้โทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของ กทท.
- (2) เครื่องใช้โทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ผ่านการแก้ไขข้อบกพร่องที่สอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานความปลอดภัยของอุปกรณ์โทรคมนาคมของ กทท.
- หากการแก้ไขหรือปรับปรุงส่วนที่สอดคล้องตามการแก้ไขข้อบกพร่องไม่อาจทำได้จะขอแจ้งให้ทราบ

Ukraine



Unites Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA REGISTERED No:
ER10488/22
DEALER No:
DA37380/15

Customer Information

United Kingdom



United States and Canada



WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: MRXBG2BP4

IC: 2546A-BG2BP4

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGING MODULE

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Wireless Charger (WCM)	LG/BH EVS	WCFDM00N2A1
		WCFDM00N2A3
		WCFDM00N2A5

Customer Information

Argentina

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNCID: H-26491

Brazil



Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações

12804-21-14208

Democratic Republic of Congo

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNCID: H-26492

Agréé par l'ARPTC

N° d'homologation : HER-0054/Juin/2021

Date d'homologation : 02/06/2021

European Union

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNCID: H-26493



Customer Information

Ghana

Model: WCFDM00N2A5

Sertifikat Nomor: 80112/SDPPI/2022

PLG ID: 13493

NCA APPROVED: 7ES-7M-XB1-RDR



Indonesia

Model: WCFDM00N2A1

Sertifikat Nomor: 80110/SDPPI/2022

PLG ID: 13493



Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-80014
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בו כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תכונה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות

Model: WCFDM00N2A3
Sertifikat Nomor: 80111/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493



1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-80015
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בו כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תכונה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-80013
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בו כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תכונה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות

Customer Information

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:
SMA - WCFDM00N2A.

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0934/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021

Malaysia



AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0933/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021

HIDF16000009

Moldova

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0935/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021



Customer Information

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 00027924ANRT 2021
Date d'agrément : 25/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 00027925ANRT 2021
Date d'agrément : 25/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 00027923ANRT 2021
Date d'agrément : 25/03/2021

Paraguay



NR: 2021-04-I-0202

NR: 2021-04-I-0203

NR: 2021-04-I-0204

Russia



Serbia



V005 21

Customer Information

Sierra Leone



TAN: 2021-002-0099

South Africa



Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

South Korea



R-R-LGE-WCFDM00N2A1

Taiwan



CCAB21LP050AT3



CCAB21LP0500T1



CCAB21LP050BT5

Customer Information

品名 (Product name): 無線充電座

型號 (Type Designation): WCFDM00N2A1, WCFDM00N2A3, WCFDM00N2A5 **產地 (Origin):** 馬來西亞

額定電壓 (Input rating): 12V

製造日期 (Approval date): 2021.04.21



R43208
Rolls

申請廠商名稱 (Approval name): 福特六和汽車股份有限公司

申請廠商地址 (Approval address): 桃園市中壢區中華路一段705號

Ukraine



United Kingdom



United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



ER98638/21
United Arab Emirates



Customer Information



ER00421/21
United Arab Emirates



ER00421/21
United Arab Emirates



United States and Canada

FCC ID: BEJWC FDM00N2A

IC: 2703H-WC FDM00N2A

Customer Information

This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and may cause harmful interference to radio communications. There is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, please consult the dealer.

This product is not end-user serviceable.

RF Radiation Exposure Statement: This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 20cm between the radiator and your body.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. *L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;*
2. *L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.*

Zambia



REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Customer Information

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

ECALL USER INFORMATION

eCall User Information According to Regulation (EU) 2017/78, Annex I, Part 3

1 DESCRIPTION OF THE ECALL IN-VEHICLE SYSTEM

- 1.1. Overview of the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, its operation and functionalities: See **What Is eCall** (page 67).
- 1.2. The 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.
- 1.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated by default. It is activated automatically by means of in-vehicle sensors in the event of a severe accident. It will also be triggered automatically when the vehicle is equipped with a TPS system which does not function in the event of a severe accident.
- 1.4. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be triggered manually, if needed. Instructions for manual activation of the system: See **Manually Making an Emergency Call** (page 67).
- 1.5. In the event of a critical system failure that would disable the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle: See **Emergency Call Indicators** (page 68).

2 INFORMATION ON DATA PROCESSING

- 2.1. Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC (1) and 2002/58/EC (2) of the European Parliament and of the Council, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Article 7(d) of Directive 95/46/EC (3).
- 2.2. Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the emergency eCall to the single European emergency number 112.
- 2.3. Types of data and its recipients.
- 2.3.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system may collect and process only the following data:
 - Vehicle Identification Number.
 - Vehicle type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle).
 - Vehicle propulsion storage type (gasoline/diesel/CNG/LPG/electric/hydrogen).
 - Vehicle last three locations and direction of travel.

Customer Information

- Log file of the automatic activation of the system and its timestamp.
- Any additional data (if applicable):

- 2.3.2. Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country on which territory they are located, to first receive and handle eCalls to the single European emergency number 112.
Additional information (if available): -
- 2.4. Arrangements for data processing.
- 2.4.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that the data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered.
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.4.2. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that it is not traceable and not subject to any constant tracking in its normal operation status.
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.4.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that data in the system internal memory is automatically and continuously removed.
- 2.4.3.1. The vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so as always to keep maximum of the last three up-to-date locations of the vehicle necessary for the normal functioning of the system.
- 2.4.3.2. The log of activity data in the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency eCall and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency eCall was initiated.
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.5. Modalities for exercising data subject's rights.
- 2.5.1. The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC. Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Directive, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.
- 2.5.2. The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

- 2.5.3. Contact service responsible for handling access requests (if any): Contact the data protection officer of your local Public Safety Answering Point.
- (1) Directive 95/46/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 October 1995 on the protection of individuals with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (OJ L 281, 23.11.1995, p. 31).
 - (2) Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 12 July 2002 concerning the processing of personal data and the protection of privacy in the electronic communications sector (Directive on privacy and electronic communications) (OJ L 201, 31.7.2002, p. 37).
 - (3) Directive 95/46/EC is repealed by Regulation (EU) 2016/679 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 27 April 2016 on the protection of natural persons with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (General Data Protection Regulation) (OJ L 119, 4.5.2016, p. 1). The Regulation applies from 25 May 2018.

3 INFORMATION ON THIRD PARTY SERVICES AND OTHER ADDED VALUE SERVICES (IF FITTED)

- 3.1. Description of the operation and the functionalities of the TPS system/added value service: Your vehicle may be equipped with a modem that allows for emergency calls (eCall), automatic software updates and other services. See the information in this Owner's Manual or in the FordPass app for a description of these services. We provide a 112-based eCall in-vehicle system and we do not provide a TPS eCall system.
- 3.2. Any processing of personal data through the TPS system/other added value service shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC and 2002/58/EC.
- 3.2.1. Legal basis for the use of TPS system and/or added value services and for processing data through them: For information on the legal bases for processing of personal data through added value services, review the data privacy information for any services to which you subscribe. This privacy information can be found in the FordPass app or on the local Ford website.
- 3.3. The TPS system and/or other added value services shall process personal data only on the base of the explicit consent of the data subject (the vehicle's owner or owners).

Customer Information

- 3.4. Modalities for data processing through TPS system and/or other added value services, including any necessary additional information regarding traceability, tracking and processing of personal data: See the privacy information in the FordPass app or on the local Ford website.
- 3.5. The owner of a vehicle equipped with a TPS eCall system and/or other added value service in addition to the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system has the right to choose to use the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system rather than the TPS eCall system and the other added value service.
- 3.5.1. Contact details for handling TPS eCall system deactivation requests: You can have all added value services deactivated except for eCall. To find out more about having all added value services deactivated except for eCall, search Ask Ford on the local Ford website or contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center by e-mail through the FordPass app or by using the e-mail address on the local Ford website.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations.

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR

Customer Information

COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.

- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:**

You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.

- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.

- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.

- **Internet-Based Services**

Components: The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.

- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional

Customer Information

charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.

- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

Customer Information

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

Customer Information

- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.
- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following: (a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service. (d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Customer Information

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL

CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Customer Information

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up

the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

Customer Information

may award the same damages to you individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to you individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- I. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all

filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

(i) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

Customer Information

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

(a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;

(b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;

(c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;

(d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;

(e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)**

Customer Information

distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

- i. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,
- ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or
- iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others

is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENNAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENNAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENNAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENNAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENNAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENNAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY

Customer Information

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENV AND OF ALL OF TELENV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit

to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

Customer Information

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors.

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

Customer Information

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

Terms and Conditions

Permitted Use. You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

Customer Information

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such

export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

Customer Information

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425
West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois
60606

This Data is a commercial item as
defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to
these End-User Terms under which this
Data was provided.

© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal
government agency, or any federal official
refuses to use the legend provided herein,
the Contracting Officer, federal
government agency, or any federal official
must notify HERE prior to seeking
additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User
Terms for any Application containing
Data for the United States shall contain
the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license
from the United States Postal
Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4®
information."

"©United States Postal Service®
20XX. Prices are not established,
controlled or approved by the United
States Postal Service®. The following
trademarks and registrations are
owned by the USPS: United States
Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

B. Canada Data. The following provi-
sions apply to the Data for Canada,
which may include or reflect data from
third party licensors ("Third Party
Data"), including Her Majesty the Queen
in Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"),
Canada Post Corporation ("Canada
Post") and the Department of Natural
Resources of Canada ("NRCan"):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client
agrees that its use of the Third Party
Data is subject to the following provi-
sions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data
is licensed on an "as is" basis. The
licensors of such data, including Her
Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan,
make no guarantees, representa-
tions or warranties respecting such
data, either express or implied,
arising by law or otherwise, including
but not limited to, effectiveness,
completeness, accuracy or fitness
for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third
Party Data licensors, including Her
Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan,
shall not be liable: (i) in respect of
any claim, demand or action, irre-
spective of the nature of the cause
of the claim, demand or action
alleging any loss, injury or damages,
direct or indirect, which may result
from the use or possession of such
Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of
revenues or contracts, or any other
consequential loss of any kind
resulting from any defect in the
Data.

Customer Information

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data,

either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.

End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

Customer Information

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía ("INEGI"):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice:
"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Argentina	IGN "INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO"
Ecuador	"INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011" "source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®"
Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
Jordan	"© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre". The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client's license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE's database for the country of Jordan ("Jordan Data") for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, "Enterprise Applications" shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l'Équipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic

is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Customer Information

Austria	"© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"	Spain	"Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"
Croatia		Sweden	"Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."
Cyprus,		Switzerland	"Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.
Estonia,			
Latvia,			
Lithuania,			
Moldova,			
Poland,			
Slovenia			
and/or			
Ukraine	"© EuroGeographics"		
France	"source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"		
Germany	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"		
Great Britain	"Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"		
Greece	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."		
Hungary	"Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."		
Italy	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."		
Norway	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"		
Portugal	"Source: IgeoE – Portugal"		

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.pasma.com.au).

Customer Information

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelomatics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: "Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."

AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION "UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER" INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR

DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER'S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTY THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER'S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY. END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER

Customer Information

MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i)

view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

Customer Information

Customer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR

FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2's OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Customer Information

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDb are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers

("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide,

Customer Information

including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,

IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

Taiwan Territory

According to the "Technical Specifications for Low Power Radio Frequency Equipment" formulated by the National Communications and Communication Committee of the Executive Yuan: 3.8.2. For the low-power radio frequency equipment that has obtained the verification certificate, the company, firm or user shall not change the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

The use of low-power radio frequency equipment must not affect flight safety and interfere with legal communications: when the system detects interference, immediately stop using it until there is no interference.

The aforementioned legal communication refers to the wireless communication operated in accordance with the provisions of the Telecommunications Management Law. Low-power radio frequency equipment needs to endure the interference of legal communication or industrial, scientific and medical radio wave radiation electrical equipment.

Customer Information

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelmatics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelmatics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorized drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavors to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelmatics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the **“Suppliers”**)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or

Customer Information

Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

CONVERTING OR MODIFYING YOUR VEHICLE

If converting or modifying your vehicle from production specification, refer to the Body and Equipment Mounting Manual at <https://www.fordpro-specialvehicles.com>.

Appendices

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY



WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

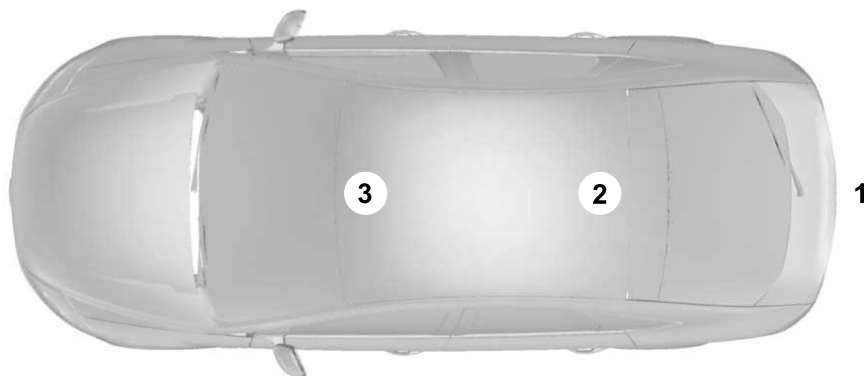


WARNING: Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm (4 in) from any electronic modules and airbags.

Note: We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start, **Bluetooth®** connectivity or satellite navigation.

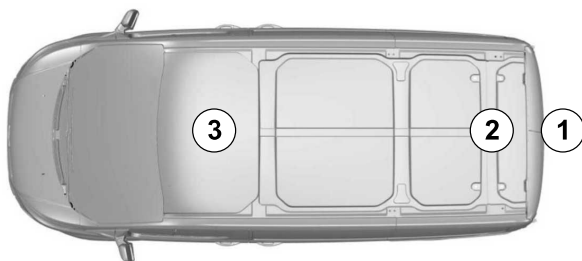
Note: Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle, such as, cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters, must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

Car

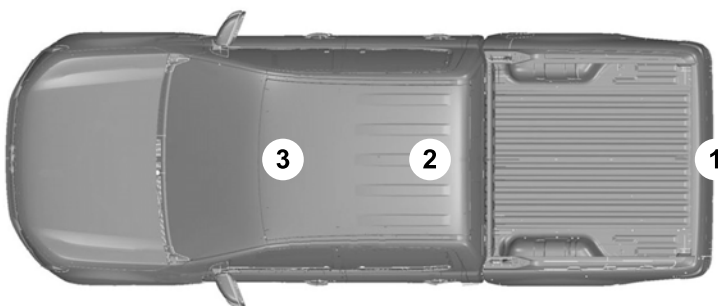


Appendices

Van



Truck



Appendices

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum Output Power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-88	50	2, 3
142-176	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

Index

1

12V Battery.....	465
12V Battery Precautions.....	465
Battery Management System	
Limitations.....	466
Changing the 12V Battery.....	466
Charging the 12V Battery.....	466
How Does the Battery Management	
System Work.....	465
Recycling and Disposing of the 12V	
Battery.....	466
What Is the Battery Management	
System.....	465
12V Battery – Troubleshooting.....	466
12V Battery – Information Messages.....	467
12V Battery – Warning Lamps.....	466
180 Degree Camera.....	335
180 Degree Camera Precautions.....	335

3

360 Degree Camera.....	336
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines.....	336
360 Degree Camera Limitations.....	336
360 Degree Camera Precautions.....	336

A

A/C

See: Climate Control – Vehicles With:	
Automatic Temperature Control.....	162
See: Climate Control – Vehicles With: Dual	
Automatic Temperature Control	
(DATC).....	155
See: Climate Control – Vehicles With: Manual	
Temperature Control.....	168
See: Climate Control – Vehicles Without: Air	
Conditioning.....	151
About This Publication.....	21
ABS	
See: Brakes.....	311
Accessing Navigation.....	568
Accessing the Passive Key Backup	
Position.....	222
Accessing the Trip Computer.....	147
AC Charging.....	275
Charging at Home.....	275

Charging in Public.....	277
Charging Using Your Public Charge	
Cord.....	279
Active Park Assist.....	339
Active Park Assist –	
Troubleshooting.....	340
Active Park Assist Precautions.....	339
Active Park Assist –	
Troubleshooting.....	340
Active Park Assist – Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	340
Active Park Assist – Information	
Messages.....	340
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	346
Adaptive Cruise Control –	
Troubleshooting.....	357
Predictive Speed Assist.....	354
Predictive Speed Assist –	
Troubleshooting.....	357
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic	
Cancellation – Vehicles With: Adaptive	
Cruise Control.....	349
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic	
Cancellation – Vehicles With: Adaptive	
Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	349
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators.....	354
Adaptive Cruise Control	
Limitations.....	347
Adaptive Cruise Control	
Precautions.....	346
Adaptive Cruise Control –	
Troubleshooting.....	357
Adaptive Cruise Control – Information	
Messages.....	357
Adaptive Front Lighting.....	117
How Does Adaptive Front Lighting	
Work.....	117
Adaptive Front Lighting –	
Troubleshooting.....	119
Adaptive Front Lighting – Information	
Messages.....	119
AdBlue® Capacity and	
Specification.....	256
AdBlue® Capacity and Specification –	
Diesel.....	541
Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors.....	130
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting	
Brightness.....	121

Index

Adjusting the Map.....	568	All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....	310
Changing the Format of the Map.....	568	All-Wheel Drive – Information	
Zooming the Map In and Out.....	568	Messages.....	310
Adjusting the Seatbelt Height.....	60	Ambient Lighting.....	121
Adjusting the Seatbelts During		Adjusting Ambient Lighting.....	121
Pregnancy.....	59	Switching Ambient Lighting On and	
Adjusting the Sound Settings.....	553	Off.....	121
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	98	Anti-Lock Braking System.....	311
Adjusting the Volume.....	552	Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations.....	311
Aid Mode.....	372	Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	94
How Does Aid Mode Work.....	372	Arming the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	95
What Is Aid Mode.....	372	Disarming the Anti-Theft Alarm	
Airbag Precautions.....	63	System.....	95
Airbags.....	62	How Does the Anti-Theft Alarm System	
Airbags – Troubleshooting.....	65	Work.....	94
Airbags – Troubleshooting.....	65	What Are the Inclination Sensors.....	94
Airbags – Audible Warnings.....	65	What Are the Interior Sensors.....	94
Airbags – Warning Lamps.....	65	What Is the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	94
Air Conditioning		What Is the Battery Backup Alarm.....	95
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With:		What Is the Perimeter Alarm.....	94
Automatic Temperature Control.....	162	Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....	95
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual		Setting the Alarm Security Level.....	95
Automatic Temperature Control		Switching Ask on Exit On and Off.....	96
(DATC).....	155	What are the Alarm Security Levels.....	95
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual		What Is Ask on Exit.....	95
Temperature Control.....	168	Appendices.....	652
See: Climate Control - Vehicles Without: Air		Applying the Electric Parking Brake -	
Conditioning.....	151	Automatic Transmission.....	314
Air Conditioning System Capacity and		Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an	
Specification - Battery Electric		Emergency.....	314
Vehicle.....	540	Applying the Electric Parking Brake -	
Air Conditioning System Capacity and		Manual Transmission.....	314
Specification - Diesel.....	539	App Precautions.....	566
Air Conditioning System Capacity and		App Requirements.....	566
Specification - Plug-In Hybrid Electric		Apps.....	566
Vehicle (PHEV).....	540	Audio System.....	552
Alert and Aid Mode.....	373	Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	554
How Does Alert and Aid Mode Work.....	373	FM Radio.....	553
What Is Alert and Aid Mode.....	373	Audio System Precautions.....	552
Alexa Built-In.....	559	Authorized Dealer Directory.....	575
Alexa Built-In Requirements.....	559	Auto Hold.....	322
Alexa Built-In Settings.....	559	Auto Hold Indicators.....	323
All-Wheel Drive.....	310	Autolamps.....	110
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....	310	Autolamp Settings.....	110
All-Wheel Drive Limitations.....	310	What Are Autolamps.....	110
All-Wheel Drive Precautions.....	310	Autolock.....	78
		Autolock Requirements.....	78
		Switching Autolock On and Off.....	78

Index

What Is Autolock.....	78	Automatic Transmission Positions.....	303
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	315	Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	309
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	430	Manually Shifting Gears - Diesel.....	307
Automatic Crash Shutoff Precautions.....	430	Temporary Neutral Mode.....	308
Re-Enabling Your Vehicle.....	430	Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	542
What Is Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	430	Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	543
Automatic Emergency Braking.....	396	Automatic Transmission Position Indicators - Battery Electric Vehicle/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	305
Switching Automatic Emergency Braking On and Off.....	396	Automatic Transmission Position Indicators - Diesel.....	305
What Is Automatic Emergency Braking.....	396	Automatic Transmission Positions.....	303
Automatic Engine Stop.....	221	Drive (D).....	304
How Does Automatic Engine Stop Work.....	221	Low (L).....	304
Overriding Automatic Engine Stop.....	222	Manual (M).....	304
Switching Automatic Engine Stop On and Off.....	222	Neutral (N).....	303
What Is Automatic Engine Stop.....	221	Park (P).....	303
Automatic High Beam Control.....	112	Reverse (R).....	303
Automatic High Beam Control Indicators.....	113	Automatic Transmission Precautions.....	303
Automatic High Beam Control Limitations.....	113	Automatic Transmission Shift Indicators.....	306
Automatic High Beam Control Precautions.....	112	Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	309
Automatic High Beam Control Requirements.....	113	Automatic Transmission – Information Messages.....	309
How Does Automatic High Beam Control Work.....	112	Auto Mode.....	158
Overriding Automatic High Beam Control.....	113	Auto Mode Indicators.....	158
Switching Automatic High Beam Control On and Off.....	113	Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....	158
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....	114	Switching Dual Mode On and Off.....	159
Automatic High Beam Control – Information Messages.....	114	Autorelock.....	79
Automatic Return to Park (P).....	308	How Does Autorelock Work.....	79
Automatic Return to Park (P) Limitations.....	309	Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning.....	232
How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work.....	308	Auto-Start-Stop.....	231
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings.....	306	Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	232
Automatic Transmission.....	303	Auto-Start-Stop Indicators.....	232
Automatic Return to Park (P).....	308	Auto-Start-Stop Precautions.....	231
		Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	232
		Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked Questions.....	233

Index

Auto-Start-Stop – Information	
Messages.....	232
Autounlock.....	78
Autounlock Requirements.....	78
Switching Autounlock On and Off.....	78
What Is Autounlock.....	78
Autowipers.....	103
Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Rain	
Sensor.....	104
Autowipers Settings.....	103
What Are Autowipers.....	103
Auxiliary Heater.....	175
Auxiliary Heater Indicators.....	175
Auxiliary Heater Precautions.....	175
AWD	
See: All-Wheel Drive.....	310

B

Battery Charge.....	145
Beginning a Voice Interaction.....	557
Blind Spot Assist.....	374
Blind Spot Assist Indicators.....	375
Blind Spot Assist – Information	
Messages.....	376
Blind Spot Assist Limitations.....	374
How Does Blind Spot Assist Work.....	374
What Is Blind Spot Assist.....	374
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer	
Coverage.....	376
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage	
Indicators.....	377
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage –	
Information Messages.....	378
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage	
Limitations.....	376
How Does Blind Spot Assist with Trailer	
Coverage Work.....	376
What Is Blind Spot Assist with Trailer	
Coverage.....	376
Blind Spot Information System.....	380
Blind Spot Information System –	
Troubleshooting.....	383
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer	
Coverage.....	382
Blind Spot Information System	
Indicators.....	383
Blind Spot Information System	
Limitations.....	380
Blind Spot Information System	
Precautions.....	380
Blind Spot Information System	
Requirements – Automatic	
Transmission.....	381
Blind Spot Information System	
Requirements – Manual	
Transmission.....	381
Blind Spot Information System –	
Troubleshooting.....	383
Blind Spot Information System –	
Information Messages.....	384
Blind Spot Information System – Warning	
Lamps.....	383
Blind Spot Information System With	
Trailer Coverage.....	382
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer	
Coverage Limitations.....	382
How Does Blind Spot Information System	
With Trailer Coverage Work.....	382
Selecting a Trailer.....	383
Setting a Trailer Length.....	383
What Is Blind Spot Information System with	
Trailer Coverage.....	382
Bluetooth®.....	565
Bonnet Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood -	
LHD.....	448
See: Opening and Closing the Hood -	
RHD.....	449
Booster Seats.....	57
Brake Coach.....	145
Brake Fluid Specification.....	312
Brake Over Accelerator.....	311
Brake Precautions.....	311
Brakes.....	311
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	311
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	312
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	312
Brakes – Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	313
Brakes – Warning Lamps.....	312
Breaking-In - Battery Electric	
Vehicle.....	422
Breaking-In - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid	
Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	422

Index

C

Canceling the Set Speed.....	345
Canceling the Set Speed Limit.....	366
Capacities and Specifications.....	532
Cargo Lamps.....	121
Resetting the Cargo Lamp Switch.....	122
Switching the Cargo Lamps On and Off.....	121
Catalytic Converter.....	260
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting.....	260
Catalytic Converter Precautions.....	260
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting.....	260
Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps.....	260
Center Display Limitations.....	555
Center Display Overview.....	555
Center Display Precautions.....	555
Changing a Flat Tire.....	523
Changing a Road Wheel.....	523
Changing the Backup Battery.....	69
Changing the Language.....	146
Changing the Measurement Unit.....	146
Changing the Parking Heater Remote Control Battery.....	178
Changing the Remote Control Battery.....	70
Changing the Set Speed Limit.....	366
Changing the Temperature Unit.....	146
Changing the Tire Pressure Unit.....	146
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password.....	550
Charge Coupler Manual Release – Battery Electric Vehicle.....	286
Charge Coupler Manual Release – Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	285
Charge Port Indicators.....	274
Charging a Device.....	204
Charging a Wireless Device.....	215
Charging Equipment Identification Symbols.....	297
Charging Equipment Indicators.....	270
Charging Equipment Overview.....	267
Charging Equipment Precautions.....	266
Charging Settings - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	292
Charging Settings - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	287
Charging Your Vehicle.....	266
AC Charging.....	275
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	299
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	299
Charging Your Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions.....	300
Charging Your Vehicle – Information Messages.....	299
Charging Your Vehicle – Warning Lamps.....	299
Checking Local Hazard Information Status.....	365
Checking the Brake Fluid.....	311
Checking the Clutch Fluid Level.....	301
Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Level.....	256
Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Status.....	256
Checking the Tire Pressures.....	490
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	105
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	35
Locating the Child Restraint Lower Anchor Points.....	35
Locating the Child Restraint Top Tether Anchor Points.....	41
What Are the Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	35
Child Restraints.....	48
Child Restraint Position Information.....	48
Child Restraints Recommendation.....	55
Installing Child Restraints.....	57
Child Safety.....	34
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	35
Child Restraints.....	48
Child Safety Locks - Excluding: Van.....	58
Child Safety Precautions.....	34
Cleaning the Exterior.....	478
Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors.....	479
Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless Steel.....	478

Index

Cleaning Headlamps and Rear Lamps.....	478
Cleaning Stripes or Graphics.....	479
Cleaning the Engine Compartment.....	479
Cleaning the Exterior Precautions.....	478
Cleaning the Underbody.....	479
Cleaning Wheels.....	478
Cleaning Windows and Wiper Blades.....	478
Cleaning the Interior.....	480
Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats.....	481
Cleaning Displays and Screens.....	480
Cleaning Fabric.....	480
Cleaning Leather.....	481
Cleaning Plastic.....	480
Cleaning Seatbelts.....	482
Cleaning Storage Compartments.....	482
Cleaning the Instrument Panel.....	480
Cleaning Vinyl.....	481
Climate Control.....	151
Auto Mode.....	158
Driver Focused Mode.....	159
Climate Control Hints - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	160
Climate Control Hints.....	153
Climate Control Hints - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	159
Closing the Liftgate.....	92
Closing the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle.....	92
Closing the Sliding Door.....	83
Closing the Hands-Free Sliding Door.....	83
Closing the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle.....	83
Closing the Sliding Door From Outside Your Vehicle.....	83
Closing the Sliding Door With the Remote Control.....	83
Clutch Fluid Specification.....	301
Cold Weather Precautions.....	422
Connected Vehicle.....	547
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	548
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	547
Connected Vehicle Data.....	26
Connected Vehicle Limitations.....	547
Connected Vehicle Requirements.....	547
Connected Vehicle Settings.....	548
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	548
Connected Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions.....	548
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device.....	565
Connecting a Trailer.....	414
Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting.....	415
Tow Ball.....	411
Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting.....	415
Connecting a Trailer – Information Messages.....	415
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	547
Connecting FordPass to the Modem.....	547
Enabling and Disabling the Modem.....	547
What Is the Modem.....	547
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	548
Connecting Your Phone.....	561
Converting or Modifying Your Vehicle.....	651
Coolant.....	461
Adding Coolant.....	462
Changing the Coolant.....	463
Checking the Coolant Level.....	461
Coolant – Information Messages.....	464
Coolant Precautions.....	461
Coolant – Warning Lamps.....	464
Managing the Coolant Temperature.....	463
Cooling System Capacity and Specification.....	538
Crash and Breakdown Information.....	427
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	430
Fail-Safe Cooling - 2.0L EcoBlue.....	432
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	427
Post-Crash Alert System.....	429
Recovery Towing.....	430
Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	550
Cross Traffic Alert.....	388
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....	391
Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage.....	390
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators.....	390
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations.....	389
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions.....	388

Index

Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....	391
Cross Traffic Alert – Information Messages.....	391
Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage.....	390
Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage Limitations.....	390
What Is Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage.....	390
Cruise Control.....	344
Cruise Control Indicators.....	345
Cup Holders.....	216
Cup Holder Precautions.....	216
Customer Information.....	582
Radio Frequency Certification Labels.....	583
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display.....	143
D	
Data Privacy.....	24
DC Charging - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	282
Declaration of Conformity.....	582
Delivery Assist.....	342
Delivery Assist – Troubleshooting.....	343
Delivery Assist Indicators.....	342
Delivery Assist Limitations.....	342
Delivery Assist Precautions.....	342
Delivery Assist Settings.....	342
Delivery Assist – Troubleshooting.....	343
Delivery Assist – Information Messages.....	343
Diesel Particulate Filter.....	249
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration.....	250
Diesel Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting.....	252
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration.....	250
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration Limitations.....	251
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration Precautions.....	250
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration Requirements.....	250
Starting Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration.....	251
What Is Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration.....	250
Diesel Particulate Filter Precautions.....	249
Diesel Particulate Filter Requirements.....	250
Diesel Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting.....	252
Diesel Particulate Filter – Information Messages.....	252
Diesel Particulate Filter – Warning Lamps.....	252
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	554
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Limitations.....	554
Selecting a Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Station.....	554
What Is Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	554
Digital Interior Mirror - Vehicles With: Interior Mirror With Camera Display.....	127
Digital Interior Mirror Limitations.....	127
Digital Interior Mirror Settings.....	127
Switching Between Normal View and Camera View.....	127
What Is the Digital Interior Mirror.....	127
Directing the Flow of Air.....	153
Distance Indication.....	395
Distance Indication Indicator.....	395
Switching Distance Indication On and Off.....	395
What Is Distance Indication.....	395
Door Lock Indicators.....	79
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings.....	79
Doors and Locks.....	74
Autolock.....	78
Autorelock.....	79
Autounlock.....	78
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	79
Mislock.....	79
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	76
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	74

Index

Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	79
Doors and Locks – Information	
Messages.....	80
Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps.....	79
Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap -	
Diesel.....	460
Drive Mode Control.....	359
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting -	
Diesel, Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In	
Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	363
Drive Modes – Battery Electric	
Vehicle.....	359
Drive Modes – Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric	
Vehicle (PHEV).....	359
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes	
– Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle	
(PHEV).....	360
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes	
– Troubleshooting - Plug-In Hybrid	
Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	362
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting -	
Diesel, Battery Electric Vehicle/Plug-In	
Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	363
Drive Mode Control – Information	
Messages.....	363
Drive Modes - Battery Electric	
Vehicle.....	359
Eco.....	359
Normal.....	360
Slippery.....	360
Sport.....	360
Tow/Haul.....	360
Drive Modes - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid	
Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	359
Eco.....	359
Normal.....	359
Slippery.....	359
Sport.....	359
Tow/Haul.....	359
Trail.....	359
Driver Alert.....	399
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	400
Driver Alert Indicators.....	400
Driver Alert Precautions.....	399
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	400
Driver Alert – Information Messages.....	400
Driver Focused Mode.....	159
Driver Focused Mode Limitations.....	159
How Does Driver Focused Mode	
Work.....	159
Switching Driver Focused Mode On and	
Off.....	159
Driver Identification.....	571
Driver Identification –	
Troubleshooting.....	571
Driver Identification –	
Troubleshooting.....	571
Driver Identification – Information	
Messages.....	571
Driving Economically.....	422
Driving Hints.....	422
Driving in Special Conditions.....	423
Electric Vehicle.....	425
Driving in Special Conditions.....	423
Driving In Sand.....	423
Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain.....	423
Driving Through Mud and Water.....	423
Driving on Snow and Ice.....	422
Driving Through Shallow Water - Battery	
Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric	
Vehicle (PHEV).....	424
Driving Through Shallow Water -	
Diesel.....	424
Drowsiness Monitor	
See: Driver Alert.....	399
E	
eCall.....	67
eCall – Troubleshooting.....	69
eCall – Troubleshooting.....	69
eCall – Information Messages.....	69
eCall User Information.....	623
Electric Economy.....	144
Electric Motor Temperature Gauge.....	136
Electric Parking Brake Audible	
Warning.....	315
Electric Parking Brake.....	314
Electric Parking Brake –	
Troubleshooting.....	315
Electric Parking Brake –	
Troubleshooting.....	315
Electric Parking Brake – Information	
Messages.....	316
Electric Parking Brake – Warning	
Lamps.....	315

Index

Electric Vehicle.....	425	Switching Evasive Steering Assist On and Off.....	397
Maximizing Your Driving Range.....	425	What Is Evasive Steering Assist.....	396
Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	652	EV Coach.....	144
Emergency Call Indicators.....	68	Event Data.....	25
Emergency Call Limitations.....	67	Exiting a Parking Space.....	340
Emergency Call Requirements.....	67	Exit Warning.....	385
Emergency Call System Data.....	27	Exit Warning – Troubleshooting.....	387
Emergency Equipment.....	438	Exit Warning Indicators.....	386
Emergency Towing - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	436	Exit Warning Limitations.....	385
Emergency Towing.....	434	Exit Warning Precautions.....	385
Emergency Towing - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	436	Exit Warning – Troubleshooting.....	387
Enabling Apps on an Android Device.....	566	Exit Warning – Information Messages.....	387
Enabling Apps on an iOS Device.....	566	Exterior Bulbs.....	468
Enabling Local Hazard Information.....	365	Changing a License Plate Lamp Bulb.....	475
Enabling Remote Start.....	148	Changing a Mirror Turn Signal Lamp Bulb.....	471
End User License Agreement.....	626	Changing an Entry Lamp Bulb.....	471
Energy Consumption Figures - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	265	Changing a Rear Fog Lamp Bulb.....	470
Energy Consumption Regulations - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	265	Changing a Rear Lamp Bulb.....	472
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	136	Changing a Rear Turn Signal Lamp Bulb.....	473
Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel.....	461	Changing a Reversing Lamp Bulb.....	474
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - Diesel.....	537	Changing a Stoplamp Bulb.....	473
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	537	Exterior Bulb Specification Chart.....	468
Engine Oil - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	458	Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly.....	470
Adding Engine Oil.....	459	Exterior Lamps.....	110
Checking the Engine Oil Level.....	458	Exterior Lamps On Audible Warning.....	111
Engine Oil Dipstick Overview.....	458	Switching the Daytime Running Lamps On and Off.....	111
Engine Oil – Information Messages.....	460	Switching the Parking Lamps On and Off.....	110
Resetting the Intelligent Oil Life Monitor.....	459	Using All Weather Lamps.....	111
Engine Specifications - Diesel.....	532	Using the Rear Fog Lamps.....	111
Engine Specifications - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	533	Using the Turn Signal Lamps.....	110
Entering a Parking Space.....	339	Exterior Lighting Control.....	108
Environment.....	28	Exterior Lighting.....	108
Evasive Steering Assist.....	396	Adaptive Front Lighting.....	117
Evasive Steering Assist Limitations.....	396	Adaptive Front Lighting – Troubleshooting.....	119
		Autolamps.....	110
		Automatic High Beam Control.....	112
		Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....	114
		Exterior Lamps.....	110
		Glare Free High Beam Control.....	114

Index

Glare Free High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....	117
Headlamps.....	108
Headlamps – Troubleshooting.....	109
Exterior Mirrors.....	130

F

Fail-Safe Cooling – 2.0L EcoBlue.....	432
Driving When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated.....	433
Fail-Safe Cooling Indicators.....	433
How Does Fail-Safe Cooling Work.....	432
What Is Fail-Safe Cooling.....	432
Fan	
See: Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel.....	461
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts.....	59
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank.....	254
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank in Cold Weather.....	254
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank Using a Fuel Station Pump.....	254
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank Using a Portable Container.....	255
Flat Tire	
See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	523
Floor Mats.....	425
FM Radio.....	553
FM Radio Limitations.....	553
Selecting an FM Radio Station.....	553
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Auto Fold Exterior Mirrors.....	130
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Manual Fold Exterior Mirrors.....	131
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Power Fold Exterior Mirrors.....	131
Forward Collision Warning.....	396
Adjusting the Sensitivity of Forward Collision Warning.....	396
What Is Forward Collision Warning.....	396
Front Parking Aid.....	327
Front Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	328
Front Parking Aid Limitations.....	328

Locating the Front Parking Aid Sensors.....	328
What Is the Front Parking Aid.....	327
Front Seat Precautions.....	182
Front Seats.....	182
Heated Seats.....	191
Manual Seats.....	183
Power Seats.....	187
Fuel and Refueling Audible Warnings.....	247
Fuel and Refueling.....	237
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting.....	247
Fuel Quality.....	238
Refueling.....	240
Running Out of Fuel.....	239
Fuel and Refueling Precautions.....	237
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting.....	247
Fuel and Refueling – Information Messages.....	247
Fuel and Refueling – Warning Lamps.....	247
Fuel Consumption Figures - Diesel.....	245
Fuel Consumption Figures - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	246
Fuel Consumption Regulations.....	245
Fuel Economy Display - Diesel.....	143
Fuel Economy Display - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	143
Fuel Filter Service Indicator Check - Diesel.....	477
Fuel Gauge.....	135
Fuel Gauge Limitations.....	135
Locating the Fuel Filler Door.....	135
What Is Distance to Empty.....	135
What Is the Fuel Gauge.....	135
What Is the Low Fuel Reminder.....	135
Fuel Quality.....	238
Selecting the Correct Fuel.....	238
Fuel Tank Capacity - Diesel.....	538
Fuel Tank Capacity.....	245
Fuel Tank Capacity - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	539
Fuse Precautions.....	439
Fuses.....	439
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	447
High Current Fuse Box.....	447
Interior Fuse Box.....	444

Index

Under Hood Fuse Box.....	439
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	447
Fuses – Frequently Asked Questions.....	447

G

Gasoline Particulate Filter.....	261
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting.....	261
Gasoline Particulate Filter Precautions.....	261
Gasoline Particulate Filter Requirements.....	261
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting.....	261
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Information Messages.....	262
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Warning Lamps.....	261
Glare Free High Beam Control.....	114
Glare Free High Beam Control Indicators.....	116
Glare Free High Beam Control Limitations.....	116
Glare Free High Beam Control Precautions.....	115
Glare Free High Beam Control Requirements.....	115
How Does Glare Free High Beam Control Work.....	114
Overriding Glare Free High Beam Control.....	116
Switching Glare Free High Beam Control On and Off.....	116
Glare Free High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....	117
Glare Free High Beam Control – Information Messages.....	117
Global Opening and Closing.....	124
Switching Global Closing On and Off.....	125
Switching Global Opening On and Off.....	125
Using Global Closing.....	125
Using Global Opening.....	124
What Is Global Opening and Closing.....	124

H

Headlamps.....	108
Adjusting the Level of the Headlamps.....	108
Headlamp Indicators.....	109
Switching Headlamp Exit Delay On and Off.....	108
Switching the Headlamps for Driving on the Left or Right-Hand Side of the Road.....	108
Using the High Beam Headlamps.....	108
Headlamps – Troubleshooting.....	109
Headlamps – Frequently Asked Questions.....	109
Heated Seats.....	191
Heated Seat Precautions.....	191
Switching the Heated Seats On and Off.....	191
Heated Steering Wheel.....	99
Heating	
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control.....	162
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC).....	155
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control.....	168
See: Climate Control - Vehicles Without: Air Conditioning.....	151
High Current Fuse Box.....	447
Accessing the High Current Fuse Box.....	447
Identifying the Fuses in the High Current Fuse Box.....	447
Locating the High Current Fuse Box.....	447
High Voltage Battery.....	263
High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting.....	265
High Voltage Battery Precautions.....	263
High Voltage Battery Temperature Gauge.....	136
High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting.....	265
High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps.....	265
Hill Start Assist.....	321
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....	321
Hill Start Assist Precautions.....	321

Index

Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....	321	How Does the Gasoline Particulate Filter Work.....	261
Hill Start Assist – Information Messages.....	321	How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work.....	368
Hood Lock		How Does the Lane Keeping System Work.....	371
See: Opening and Closing the Hood – LHD.....	448	How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work.....	201
See: Opening and Closing the Hood – RHD.....	449	How Does the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Work.....	253
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	346	How Does the Speed Limiter Work.....	366
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	346	How Does Traction Control Work.....	324
How Does a Hybrid Electric Vehicle Work.....	229	How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work.....	401
How Does All-Wheel Drive Work.....	310	How Does Trailer Sway Control Work.....	421
How Does Auto Hold Work.....	322	How Does Wrong Way Alert Work.....	404
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work.....	380	How Do the Front Airbags Work.....	62
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work.....	388	How Do the Side Airbags Work.....	62
How Does Delivery Assist Work?.....	342	How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work.....	63
How Does Driver Alert Work.....	399	Hybrid Electric Vehicle Driving Characteristics.....	229
How Does Driver Identification Work.....	571	Hybrid Electric Vehicle Indicators.....	229
How Does eCall Work.....	67	Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information.....	229
How Does Exit Warning Work.....	385	Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Troubleshooting.....	230
How Does Hill Start Assist Work.....	321		
How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	393	Identifying Fuse Types.....	447
How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work - Vehicles With: Cruise Control.....	393	Identifying the Rear Passenger Climate Control Unit - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control.....	172
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work.....	392	Identifying the Rear Passenger Climate Control Unit - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control.....	172
How Does Reverse Brake Assist Work.....	317	Inflating the Tires.....	490
How Does Stability Control Work.....	325	Information On Demand Screen.....	556
How Does the 180 Degree Camera Work.....	335	Inspecting the Tire for Damage.....	512
How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work.....	336	Instrument Cluster Display.....	142
How Does the Diesel Particulate Filter Work.....	249	Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu.....	142
		Instrument Cluster Indicators.....	139
		Instrument Cluster.....	132
		Fuel Gauge.....	135

Index

Instrument Cluster Overview - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	134
Instrument Cluster Overview - Diesel.....	132
Instrument Cluster Overview - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	133
Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps.....	137
Instrument Panel - Automatic Transmission, LHD.....	30
Instrument Panel - Automatic Transmission, RHD.....	31
Instrument Panel - Manual Transmission, LHD.....	32
Instrument Panel - Manual Transmission, RHD.....	33
Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings.....	370
Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators.....	369
Intelligent Speed Limiter.....	368
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting.....	370
Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions.....	368
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting.....	370
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Frequently Asked Questions.....	370
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit.....	367
Interior Air Quality.....	180
Interior Fuse Box.....	444
Accessing the Interior Fuse Box.....	444
Identifying the Fuses in the Interior Fuse Box.....	445
Interior Lamp Function.....	121
Switching the Interior Lamp Function On and Off.....	121
What Is the Interior Lamp Function.....	121
Interior Lighting.....	120
Ambient Lighting.....	121
Cargo Lamps.....	121
Interior Lamp Function.....	121
Interior Mirror.....	127
Digital Interior Mirror - Vehicles With: Interior Mirror With Camera Display.....	127
Interior Mirror Precautions.....	127
Introduction.....	21
J	
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	427
Jump Starting Precautions.....	427
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	428
Preparing the Vehicle.....	428
K	
Keyless Entry.....	89
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	90
Keyless Entry Limitations.....	89
Keyless Entry Settings.....	89
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	90
Keyless Entry – Frequently Asked Questions.....	90
Keys and Remote Controls.....	70
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	72
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	72
Keys and Remote Controls – Frequently Asked Questions.....	73
Keys and Remote Controls – Information Messages.....	72
L	
Lane Keeping System Indicators.....	373
Lane Keeping System.....	371
Aid Mode.....	372
Alert and Aid Mode.....	373
Blind Spot Assist.....	374
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....	376
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	379
Lane Keeping System Limitations.....	371
Lane Keeping System Precautions.....	371
Lane Keeping System Settings.....	372
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	379
Lane Keeping System – Information Messages.....	379
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft.....	418

Index

Liftgate.....	91
Closing the Liftgate.....	92
Liftgate – Troubleshooting.....	93
Opening the Liftgate.....	91
Liftgate Precautions.....	91
Liftgate – Troubleshooting.....	93
Liftgate – Information Messages.....	93
Liftgate – Warning Lamps.....	93
Load Carrying.....	406
Roof Rack - Vehicles With: Integrated Roof Rack.....	407
Roof Rack - Vehicles Without: Integrated Roof Rack.....	406
Load Carrying Precautions.....	406
Loading Your Trailer.....	418
Local Hazard Information Indicators.....	365
Local Hazard Information.....	365
Local Hazard Information Precautions.....	365
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras.....	336
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors.....	381
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir.....	311
Locating the Charge Port.....	273
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors.....	389
Locating the Exit Warning Sensors.....	386
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel.....	238
Locating the Outlets.....	209
Locating the Power Outlets.....	206
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	394
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles With: Cruise Control.....	394
Locating the Rear View Camera.....	332
Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	514
Locating the USB Ports.....	204
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger.....	214
Locating Your Vehicle.....	70
Locking the Steering Wheel - Manual Transmission, RHD, Vehicles With: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet.....	99

Locking the Steering Wheel - Manual Transmission, RHD, Vehicles Without: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet.....98

M

Maintenance.....	448
12V Battery.....	465
12V Battery – Troubleshooting.....	466
Coolant.....	461
Engine Oil – Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	458
Exterior Bulbs.....	468
Maintenance Precautions.....	448
Making and Receiving a Phone Call.....	563
Manually Dimming the Interior Mirror – Vehicles With: Interior Mirror.....	127
Manually Making an Emergency Call.....	67
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	315
Manually Shifting Gears – Diesel.....	307
Shifting Using the Buttons on the Column Shifter.....	307
Manual Seats.....	183
Accessing the Third Row Seats.....	195
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	183
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	186
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	186
Adjusting the Seat Cushion.....	185
Adjusting the Seat Height.....	186
Folding the Seat Armrest.....	186
Folding the Seat Backrest.....	194
Head Restraint Components.....	183
Installing the Head Restraint.....	184
Installing the Seats.....	198
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	184
Removing the Head Restraint.....	184
Removing the Seats.....	195
Rotating the Second Row Seats.....	197
Swiveling the Seat.....	187
Unfolding the Seat Backrest.....	195
Manual Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification.....	542

Index

Manual Transmission.....	301	Opening and Closing the Hood - RHD.....	449
Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	302	Opening and Closing the Rear Quarter Windows.....	126
Manual Transmission Precautions.....	301	Opening and Closing the Windows - Vehicles With: One-Touch Open and Close Driver Window.....	123
Manual Transmission Shift Indicators.....	301	Opening and Closing the Windows - Vehicles With: One-Touch Open and Close Front Windows.....	123
Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	302	Opening the Liftgate.....	91
Manual Transmission – Frequently Asked Questions.....	302	Opening the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle.....	91
Mislock.....	79	Opening the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle.....	92
How Does Mislock Work.....	79	Opening the Liftgate Using the Remote Control.....	92
Mislock Limitations.....	79	Opening the Sliding Door.....	81
Switching Mislock On and Off.....	79	Opening the Hands-Free Sliding Door.....	82
What Is Mislock.....	79	Opening the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle.....	81
Mobile Communications		Opening the Sliding Door From Outside Your Vehicle.....	81
Equipment.....	622	Opening the Sliding Door With the Remote Control.....	82
Mobile Device Data.....	26	Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	76
Muting the Audio.....	552	Opening the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	77
N		Opening the Rear Doors From Inside Your Vehicle in an Emergency.....	76
Navigation Map Updates.....	568	Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Central Locking.....	76
Navigation.....	568	Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	74
Adjusting the Map.....	568	Opening and Closing the Doors.....	75
Route Guidance.....	569	Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade.....	75
Setting a Destination.....	568	Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control.....	74
Waypoints.....	569	OTA	
O		See: Software Update Settings.....	572
Onboard Generator Indicators.....	210	See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	572
Onboard Generator.....	209	Overhead Storage.....	216
Onboard Generator – Troubleshooting.....	212	Locating the Overhead Storage.....	216
Onboard Generator Precautions.....	209	Overhead Storage Load Capacities.....	216
Onboard Generator – Troubleshooting.....	212	Overriding Reverse Brake Assist.....	318
Onboard Generator – Frequently Asked Questions.....	213	Overriding the Set Speed.....	354
Onboard Generator – Information Messages.....	212		
One Pedal Drive Indicators.....	364		
One Pedal Drive Limitations.....	364		
One Pedal Drive.....	364		
One Pedal Drive Precautions.....	364		
Opening and Closing the Hood - LHD.....	448		

Index

Over the air	
See: Software Update Settings.....	572
Over-the-air	
See: Software Update Settings.....	572
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	572
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	572

P

Parking Aid Indicators.....	330
Parking Aid Precautions.....	326
Parking Aids.....	326
Front Parking Aid.....	327
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	330
Rear Parking Aid.....	327
Side Parking Aid.....	328
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	330
Parking Aids – Information	
Messages.....	330
Parking Heater Limitations.....	176
Parking Heater.....	176
Parking Heater Settings.....	176
Parking Heater – Troubleshooting.....	179
Parking Heater Precautions.....	176
Parking Heater Remote Control	
Indicators.....	178
Parking Heater Settings.....	176
Setting the Parking Heater Timer.....	176
Switching Continue Heat On.....	176
Parking Heater – Troubleshooting.....	179
Parking Heater – Information	
Messages.....	179
Passenger Airbag Indicators.....	64
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	94
Arming the Passive Anti-Theft	
System.....	94
Disarming the Passive Anti-Theft	
System.....	94
What Is the Passive Anti-Theft	
System.....	94
Pedestrian Alert System.....	66
Pedestrian Alert System –	
Troubleshooting.....	66
Pedestrian Alert System –	
Troubleshooting.....	66
Pedestrian Alert System – Information	
Messages.....	66
Performing a System Reset.....	574
Personalized Settings.....	146
Phone Menu.....	561
Phone.....	561
Phone Precautions.....	561
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®.....	565
Playing Media Using the USB Port.....	204
Playing or Pausing the Audio	
Source.....	552
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive	
Modes – Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle	
(PHEV).....	360
Auto EV.....	360
EV Later.....	360
EV Now.....	360
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive	
Modes – Troubleshooting - Plug-In	
Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	362
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes	
– Information Messages.....	362
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle	
Information – Troubleshooting.....	230
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information	
– Information Messages.....	230
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information	
– Warning Lamps.....	230
Post-Collision Braking.....	430
Post-Crash Alert System.....	429
How Does the Post-Crash Alert System	
Work.....	429
Post-Crash Alert System	
Limitations.....	429
Switching the Post-Crash Alert System	
Off.....	429
What Is the Post-Crash Alert	
System.....	429
Power Gauge - Battery Electric	
Vehicle.....	135
Power Gauge - Plug-In Hybrid Electric	
Vehicle (PHEV).....	135
Powering Off.....	226
Power Outlet Indicators.....	206
Power Outlet Limitations.....	206
Power Outlet.....	206
Power Outlet Precautions.....	206
Power Seats.....	187
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	187
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	190
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	189

Index

Adjusting the Seat Height.....	189
Folding the Seat Armrest.....	190
Head Restraint Components.....	187
Installing the Head Restraint.....	188
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	189
Removing the Head Restraint.....	188
Power-Up	
See: Software Update Settings.....	572
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	572
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations.....	394
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions.....	393
Pre-Collision Assist.....	392
Automatic Emergency Braking.....	396
Distance Indication.....	395
Evasive Steering Assist.....	396
Forward Collision Warning.....	396
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting.....	397
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting.....	397
Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages.....	397
Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps.....	397
Predictive Speed Assist.....	354
Adjusting the Set Speed Tolerance.....	356
How Does Predictive Speed Assist Work.....	354
Predictive Speed Assist Alerts.....	356
Predictive Speed Assist Indicators.....	356
Predictive Speed Assist Limitations.....	355
Predictive Speed Assist Precautions.....	355
Switching Predictive Speed Assist Mode On and Off.....	356
Predictive Speed Assist – Troubleshooting.....	357
Predictive Speed Assist – Information Messages.....	357
Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	484
Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	483
Preserving Your High Voltage Battery - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	264
Preserving Your High Voltage Battery - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	263
Programming the Remote Control.....	72
Protecting the Environment.....	28
Puncture	
See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	523
Push Button Ignition Switch.....	218
R	
Radio Frequency Certification Labels.....	583
Antennas.....	583
Blind Spot Information System Sensors.....	584
Body Control Module.....	588
Cruise Control Module.....	590
Keys and Remote Controls.....	595
Radio Transceiver Module.....	598
SYNC.....	600
Telematics Control Unit.....	607
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Sensors.....	609
Wireless Accessory Charging Module.....	613
REACH.....	582
Rear Auto Mode.....	173
Switching Rear Auto Mode On and Off.....	173
Rear Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification - AWD.....	544
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Points.....	409
Locating the Rear Cargo Area Anchor Points.....	409
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Point Load Capacities.....	410
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Point Precautions.....	409
Rear Cargo Area.....	409
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Points.....	409
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings.....	203
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators.....	202
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations.....	201
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions.....	201

Index

Rear Occupant Alert System.....	201
Rear Occupant Alert System Settings.....	202
Rear Parking Aid.....	327
Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors.....	327
Rear Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	327
Rear Parking Aid Limitations.....	327
What is the Rear Parking Aid.....	327
Rear Passenger Climate Control Indicators.....	174
Rear Passenger Climate Control.....	172
Rear Auto Mode.....	173
Rear Seats.....	192
Heated Seats.....	199
Manual Seats.....	192
Rear Seats Videos - Bus.....	200
Rear View Camera Guide Lines.....	333
Rear View Camera Limitations.....	332
Rear View Camera Precautions.....	332
Rear View Camera.....	332
Rear View Camera Settings.....	333
Rear View Camera Settings.....	333
Switching Rear View Camera Delay On and Off.....	334
Switching Rear View Camera Object Distance Indicator On and Off.....	334
Zooming the Rear View Camera In and Out.....	333
Rebooting the Center Display.....	556
Recovery Towing.....	430
Accessing the Front Towing Point.....	430
Installing the Towing Eye.....	431
Locating the Towing Eye.....	431
Recycling and Disposing of the High Voltage Battery.....	264
Refueling.....	240
Manually Opening the Fuel Filler Door.....	244
Refueling System Overview.....	240
Refueling Your Vehicle.....	240
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge.....	315
Remote Control Limitations.....	70
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	149
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	148
Remote Start Limitations - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	148
Remote Start Limitations - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	148
Remote Start.....	148
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: Heated Steering Wheel.....	150
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles Without: Heated Steering Wheel.....	149
Removing the Key Blade.....	70
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	486
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	485
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	482
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	621
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	72
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter.....	180
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades.....	105
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades.....	105
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function.....	77
Resetting Driver Alert.....	399
Resetting Ground Fault Detection.....	211
Resetting the Power Sliding Door.....	84
Resetting the Trip Computer.....	147
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	520
Restarting the Engine.....	231
Restarting the Vehicle After Powering Off.....	226
Resuming the Set Speed Limit.....	366
Resuming the Set Speed.....	345
Reverse Brake Assist Indicators.....	318
Reverse Brake Assist Precautions.....	317
Reverse Brake Assist.....	317
Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting.....	319

Index

Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting.....	319
Reverse Brake Assist – Frequently Asked Questions.....	320
Reverse Brake Assist – Information Messages.....	319
Reverse Wipe.....	104
Reverse Wipe Settings.....	104
What Is Reverse Wipe.....	104
Rollover Warning.....	582
Roof Rack - Vehicles With: Integrated Roof Rack.....	407
Adjusting a Roof Rack Crossbar.....	408
Roof Rack Load Capacities.....	408
Roof Rack Precautions.....	407
Roof Rack - Vehicles Without: Integrated Roof Rack.....	406
Roof Rack Load Capacities.....	407
Roof Rack Precautions.....	406
Route Guidance.....	569
Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume.....	569
Canceling Route Guidance.....	569
Repeating an Instruction.....	569
Running-In	
See: Breaking-In - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	422
See: Breaking-In - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	422
Running Out of Fuel.....	239
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container.....	239
Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....	239
S	
Scrolling Through Menu Items.....	553
Seatbelt Precautions.....	59
Seatbelt Reminder.....	60
Checking Seatbelt Status.....	60
Seatbelt Reminder Audible Warnings.....	60
Seatbelt Reminder Indicators.....	60
Switching the Seatbelt Reminder On and Off.....	60
Seatbelts.....	59
Seatbelt Reminder.....	60
Seatbelts – Troubleshooting.....	61
Seatbelts – Troubleshooting.....	61
Seatbelts – Information Messages.....	61
Security.....	94
Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	94
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....	95
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	94
Security – Troubleshooting.....	96
Security – Troubleshooting.....	96
Security – Frequently Asked Questions.....	97
Security – Information Messages.....	96
Selecting a Drive Mode.....	359
Selecting a Menu Item.....	553
Selecting the Audio Source.....	552
Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Consumption.....	256
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Guidelines.....	253
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Precautions.....	253
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Requirements.....	253
Selective Catalytic Reduction System.....	253
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank.....	254
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Troubleshooting.....	257
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Troubleshooting.....	257
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Frequently Asked Questions.....	259
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Information Messages.....	257
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Warning Lamps.....	257
Service Data.....	25
Service Intervals.....	581
Setting a Destination.....	568
Setting a Destination Using a Point of Interest.....	569
Setting a Destination Using a Predictive Destination.....	568
Setting a Destination Using a Recent Destination.....	568
Setting a Destination Using a Saved Destination.....	569

Index

Setting a Destination Using the Map	
Screen.....	568
Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry	
Screen.....	568
Setting a Memory Preset.....	552
Settings Data.....	26
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap	
- Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise	
Control.....	351
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap	
- Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise	
Control With Stop and Go.....	352
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control	
Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise	
Control.....	350
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control	
Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise	
Control With Stop and Go.....	350
Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....	152
Setting the Clock and Date.....	553
Setting the Cruise Control Speed.....	344
Setting the High Voltage Battery Reserve	
Limit.....	211
Setting the Speed Limit.....	366
Setting the Temperature.....	152
Setting the Wake Word.....	557
Shifting Into Reverse.....	301
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of	
Park (P).....	306
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear - Battery	
Electric Vehicle/Plug-In Hybrid Electric	
Vehicle (PHEV).....	305
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear -	
Diesel.....	304
Side Parking Aid.....	328
Locating the Side Parking Aid	
Sensors.....	329
Side Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	329
Side Parking Aid Limitations.....	328
What is the Side Parking Aid.....	328
Signing In as a Driver.....	571
Signing In to Your Account.....	559
Sitting in the Correct Position.....	182
Sliding Door Precautions.....	81
Sliding Door.....	81
Closing the Sliding Door.....	83
Opening the Sliding Door.....	81
Sliding Door – Troubleshooting.....	85
Sliding Door – Troubleshooting.....	85
Sliding Door – Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	86
Sliding Door – Information Messages.....	85
Software Update Indicators.....	573
Software Update Settings.....	572
Software Update	
See: Software Update Settings.....	572
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	572
Special Notices - Turkey.....	22
Speed Control	
See: Cruise Control.....	344
Speed Limiter Audible Warnings.....	367
Speed Limiter Indicators.....	367
Speed Limiter Precautions.....	366
Speed Limiter.....	366
Speedometer.....	135
Stability Control Indicator.....	325
Stability Control.....	325
Starting and Powering Off	
Precautions.....	226
Starting and Powering Off.....	226
Starting and Powering Off –	
Troubleshooting.....	228
Vehicle Power Down Timer.....	227
Starting and Powering Off –	
Troubleshooting.....	228
Starting and Powering Off – Frequently	
Asked Questions.....	228
Starting and Stopping the Engine –	
Precautions.....	218
Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	218
Automatic Engine Stop.....	221
Starting and Stopping the Engine –	
Troubleshooting.....	222
Starting the Engine.....	219
Stopping the Engine.....	220
Starting and Stopping the Engine –	
Troubleshooting.....	222
Starting and Stopping the Engine –	
Frequently Asked Questions.....	224
Starting and Stopping the Engine –	
Information Messages.....	223
Starting and Stopping the Engine –	
Warning Lamps.....	222
Starting the Engine.....	219
Restarting the Engine After Stopping	
It.....	220

Index

Starting a Diesel Engine.....	219	Switching Delivery Assist On and Off.....	342
Starting a Hybrid Electric Vehicle System.....	219	Switching Driver Alert On and Off.....	399
Starting the Vehicle.....	226	Switching Exit Warning On and Off.....	386
Status Bar.....	555	Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control.....	354
Steering Wheel.....	29	Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter.....	370
Stopping the Engine.....	231	Switching Generator Mode On and Off.....	211
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving.....	221	Switching Hill Start Assist On and Off.....	321
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....	220	Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off.....	156
Stopping the Sliding Door Movement.....	84	Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off.....	168
Storage.....	216	Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Rear Window.....	151
Cup Holders.....	216	Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Rear Window.....	151
Overhead Storage.....	216	Switching One Pedal Drive On and Off.....	364
Under Seat Storage.....	216	Switching Parking Aid On and Off.....	326
Storing a First Aid Kit.....	438	Switching Recirculated Air On and Off.....	151
Storing a Warning Triangle.....	438	Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off.....	318
Storing Your Vehicle.....	483	Switching Stability Control On and Off.....	325
Suspension Specifications.....	534	Switching Text Message Notification On and Off.....	564
Switching Active Park Assist On and Off.....	339	Switching the 180 Degree Camera On and Off.....	335
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off.....	349	Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off.....	337
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off.....	155	Switching the 360 Degree Camera View.....	338
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off.....	120	Switching the Audio Unit On and Off.....	552
Switching Android Auto On and Off.....	567	Switching the Auxiliary Heater On and Off.....	175
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off.....	566	Switching the Display On and Off.....	554
Switching Auto Hold On and Off - Automatic Transmission.....	322	Switching the Electric Heater On and Off.....	156
Switching Auto Hold On and Off - Manual Transmission.....	322		
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off.....	231		
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off.....	381		
Switching Climate Control On and Off.....	151		
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off.....	389		
Switching Cruise Control On and Off.....	344		
Switching Defrost On and Off.....	151		

Index

Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off.....	120
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off.....	427
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Rear Window.....	152
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Rear Window.....	152
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off.....	152
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off.....	156
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off.....	368
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode.....	372
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off.....	372
Switching the Parking Heater On and Off With the Remote Control.....	177
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off.....	64
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off - Bus.....	120
Switching the Rear Outlet On and Off.....	210
Switching the Rear Passenger Climate Controls On and Off.....	172
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off.....	104
Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off.....	366
Switching Traction Control On and Off.....	324
Switching Wrong Way Alert On and Off.....	404
System Update	
See: Software Update Settings.....	572
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	572
T	
Tachometer - Diesel.....	134
Technical Specifications	
See: Capacities and Specifications.....	532
Temporary Neutral Mode.....	308
Entering Temporary Neutral Mode.....	308
Exiting Temporary Neutral Mode.....	308
How Does Temporary Neutral Mode Work.....	308
Temporary Neutral Mode Limitations.....	308
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment.....	582
Tire Care.....	490
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations.....	520
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions.....	520
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	520
Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Troubleshooting.....	521
Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Troubleshooting.....	521
Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Information Messages.....	522
Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Warning Lamps.....	521
Tire Pressure Specifications - Battery Electric Vehicle, Bus.....	505
Tire Pressure Specifications - Battery Electric Vehicle, Camper.....	510
Tire Pressure Specifications - Battery Electric Vehicle, Van.....	507
Tire Pressure Specifications - Diesel, Bus.....	490
Tire Pressure Specifications - Diesel, Camper.....	496
Tire Pressure Specifications - Diesel, Van.....	492
Tire Pressure Specifications - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), Bus.....	498
Tire Pressure Specifications - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), Camper.....	502
Tire Pressure Specifications - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), Van.....	500
Tire Rotation.....	512
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components.....	514

Index

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	
Precautions.....	514
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	514
Tow Ball.....	411
Deploying the Tow Ball Arm.....	413
Retracting the Tow Ball Arm.....	413
Tow Ball Arm Guidelines.....	411
Tow Ball Components.....	412
Tow Ball Limitations.....	411
Tow Ball Precautions.....	411
Towing a Trailer Limitations - Battery	
Electric Vehicle.....	417
Towing a Trailer Limitations - Diesel,	
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle	
(PHEV).....	417
Towing a Trailer Precautions.....	416
Towing a Trailer.....	416
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	418
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	418
Tow Bar Dimensions.....	420
Towing Weight Capacities.....	418
Towing Your Vehicle Precautions.....	434
Towing Your Vehicle.....	434
Towing Your Vehicle –	
Troubleshooting.....	437
Towing Your Vehicle –	
Troubleshooting.....	437
Towing Your Vehicle – Information	
Messages.....	437
Traction Control Indicator.....	324
Traction Control.....	324
Traction Control – Troubleshooting.....	324
Traction Control –	
Troubleshooting.....	324
Traction Control – Information	
Messages.....	324
Traction Control – Warning Lamps.....	324
Traffic Sign Recognition	
Indicators.....	402
Traffic Sign Recognition	
Limitations.....	401
Traffic Sign Recognition	
Precautions.....	401
Traffic Sign Recognition Settings.....	403
Traffic Sign Recognition.....	401
Traffic Sign Recognition –	
Troubleshooting.....	403
Traffic Sign Recognition –	
Troubleshooting.....	403
Traffic Sign Recognition – Information	
Messages.....	403
Trailer Lighting Check.....	414
Trailer Sway Control Precautions.....	421
Trailer Sway Control.....	421
Trailer Towing Hints.....	418
Trailer Towing Navigation.....	569
Transporting the Vehicle.....	432
Trip Computer.....	147
Trip Data.....	147
Trip Summary.....	145
Tyre Pressure Specifications	
See: Tyre Pressure Specifications - Battery	
Electric Vehicle, Bus.....	505
See: Tyre Pressure Specifications - Battery	
Electric Vehicle, Camper.....	510
See: Tyre Pressure Specifications - Battery	
Electric Vehicle, Van.....	507
See: Tyre Pressure Specifications - Diesel,	
Bus.....	490
See: Tyre Pressure Specifications - Diesel,	
Camper.....	496
See: Tyre Pressure Specifications - Diesel,	
Van.....	492
See: Tyre Pressure Specifications - Plug-In	
Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), Bus.....	498
See: Tyre Pressure Specifications - Plug-In	
Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV),	
Camper.....	502
See: Tyre Pressure Specifications - Plug-In	
Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), Van.....	500

U

Under Hood Fuse Box.....	439
Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	439
Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood	
Fuse Box.....	440
Under Hood Overview - Battery Electric	
Vehicle, LHD.....	456
Under Hood Overview - Battery Electric	
Vehicle, RHD.....	457
Under Hood Overview - Diesel,	
LHD.....	452
Under Hood Overview - Diesel,	
RHD.....	453

Index

Under Hood Overview - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), LHD.....	454
Under Hood Overview - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), RHD.....	455
Under Seat Storage.....	216
Locating the Under Seat Storage Compartment.....	216
USB Ports.....	204
Using Alexa Built-In.....	559
Using Auto Hold.....	322
Using Keyless Entry.....	89
Using Snow Chains - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	488
Using Snow Chains - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	487
Using Summer Tires.....	487
Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls.....	142
Using the Steering Wheel as a Table.....	99
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	515
Using This Publication.....	21
Using Winter Tires.....	487
Using Your Vehicle App and Charging.....	297

V

Vehicle Care.....	478
Cleaning the Exterior.....	478
Cleaning the Interior.....	480
Vehicle Charging Status.....	145
Vehicle Dimensions.....	536
Vehicle Identification Number.....	545
Locating the Vehicle Identification Number.....	545
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	545
Locating the Vehicle Identification Plate.....	545
Vehicle Identification Plate Overview.....	545
Vehicle Identification.....	545
Vehicle Identification Number.....	545
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	545
Vehicle Power Down Timer.....	227
How Does the Vehicle Power Down Timer Work.....	227

Overriding the Vehicle Power Down Timer.....	227
Switching the Vehicle Power Down Timer On and Off.....	227
What Is the Vehicle Power Down Timer.....	227
Vehicle Range Display.....	136
Vehicle Software Updates.....	572
Vehicle System Reset.....	574
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot - Troubleshooting.....	551
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot - Frequently Asked Questions.....	551
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	550
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot - Troubleshooting.....	551
Ventilation	
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control.....	162
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC).....	155
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control.....	168
See: Climate Control - Vehicles Without: Air Conditioning.....	151
Viewing the Tire Pressures.....	520
Visual Search.....	29
Voice Interaction Examples.....	557
Voice Interaction.....	557

W

Warnings and Notes Used in This Publication.....	21
Washer Fluid Specification.....	541
Washers.....	106
Adding Washer Fluid.....	106
Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off.....	106
Using the Rear Window Washer.....	106
Using the Windshield Washer.....	106
Washer Precautions.....	106
Washers	
See: Wipers and Washers.....	103
Waxing Your Vehicle.....	482
Waypoints.....	569
Adding a Waypoint.....	569

Index

Editing Waypoints.....	569
What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators.....	139
What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps.....	137
What Is a Connected Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	547
What Is a Connected Vehicle - Diesel, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	547
What Is Active Park Assist.....	339
What is a Hybrid Electric Vehicle.....	229
What is Alexa Built-In.....	559
What Is Auto-Start-Stop.....	231
What Is Blind Spot Information System.....	380
What Is Cross Traffic Alert.....	388
What Is Cruise Control.....	344
What Is Delivery Assist?.....	342
What Is Drive Mode Control.....	359
What Is Driver Alert.....	399
What Is eCall.....	67
What is Exit Warning.....	385
What Is Generator Mode.....	211
What Is Hill Start Assist.....	321
What Is Keyless Entry.....	89
What Is Local Hazard Information.....	365
What is One Pedal Drive.....	364
What Is Pre-Collision Assist.....	392
What Is Remote Start.....	148
What Is Reverse Brake Assist.....	317
What Is Stability Control.....	325
What Is the 180 Degree Camera.....	335
What Is the Auxiliary Heater.....	175
What Is the Cabin Air Filter.....	180
What Is the Catalytic Converter.....	260
What Is the Diesel Particulate Filter.....	249
What Is the Electric Parking Brake.....	314
What Is the Gasoline Particulate Filter.....	261
What Is the High Voltage Battery.....	263
What Is the Information Bar.....	137
What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter.....	368
What Is the Lane Keeping System.....	371
What Is the Onboard Generator.....	209
What Is the Parking Heater.....	176
What Is the Pedestrian Alert System.....	66
What Is the Power Outlet.....	206
What Is the Rear Occupant Alert System.....	201
What Is the Rear View Camera.....	332
What Is the Selective Catalytic Reduction System.....	253
What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	520
What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	514
What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger.....	214
What Is Traction Control.....	324
What Is Traffic Sign Recognition.....	401
What is Voice Interaction.....	557
What Is Wrong Way Alert.....	404
Wheel and Tire Information.....	487
Wheel Nuts.....	530
Wi Fi	
See: Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password.....	550
See: Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	548
See: Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	550
See: Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	550
Window Bounce-Back.....	125
Overriding Window Bounce-Back.....	125
Resetting Window Bounce-Back.....	125
What Is Window Bounce-Back.....	125
Windows.....	123
Global Opening and Closing.....	124
Window Bounce-Back.....	125
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....	107
Wipers and Washers – Frequently Asked Questions.....	107
Wipers and Washers – Warning Lamps.....	107
Wipers and Washers.....	103
Autowipers.....	103
Reverse Wipe.....	104
Washers.....	106
Wipers.....	103
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....	107

Index

Wipers.....	103
Switching Windshield Wipers On and Off.....	103
Wiper Precautions.....	103
Wireless Accessory Charger	
Precautions.....	214
Wireless Accessory Charger.....	214
Wrong Way Alert Limitations.....	404
Wrong Way Alert Precautions.....	404
Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting.....	405
Wrong Way Alert – Information Messages.....	405
Wrong Way Alert.....	404
Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting.....	405

Y

Your Authorized Dealer.....	575
-----------------------------	-----

